

Nazarene Judaism?

Jim Coetzee

Foreword.

This book is written to inform the reader about the original faith in Yahshua our Jewish Messiah, namely Nazarene Judaism. Not many believers in the churches of the world will admit that the One who came to save them from slavery of sin was born a Jew. In fact some insist that He taught against Judaism. But, is there any Scriptural record of Him renouncing the faith into which He was born? Did He become a Christian? We need to know what He, who was the Word of Elohim, before His 'human' birth, had to say about the Jewish faith. Yahshua was born a Jew with a Jewish mother. He was given a Jewish name, namely Yahshua as witnessed in Matthew 1: 21, in this way: ***“And she will bear a Son; and you shall call His name Yahshua, for it is He who will save His people from their sins.”*** In fact the meaning of His name is contained in the underlined section and the name Jesus does not convey the implication of His true name at all. Yahshua said to the woman at the well, as recorded in John 4: 22, ***“You worship that which you do not know; we worship that which we know, for salvation is from the Jews.”*** During His time on earth, there were two main Jewish sects in control of the Sanhedrin, namely the Pharisees and the Sadducees.

Which of these two sects did Yahshua authenticate? We read what He said about the Sadducees when some of them questioned Him in Matthew 22: 23 - 28, about the resurrection in which they did not believe, as recorded in verse 29, like this: ***‘But Yahshua answered and said to them, “You are mistaken, not understanding the Scriptures, or the power of Elohim.”’*** If we follow Yahshua, we should not believe what the Sadducees teach, as they do not understand the Scriptures. What did Yahshua say about the Pharisees? We read from Matthew 23: 1 - 3, ***‘Then Yahshua spoke to the multitudes and to His disciples, (2) saying, “The scribes and the Pharisees have seated themselves in the chair of Moses; (3) therefore all they tell you, do and observe, but do not do according to their deeds; for they say things, and do not do them.”’*** So, we should listen and believe what the Pharisees tell us, but should not do what they do, as they tell us to keep the Torah, but do not always do as they teach. Their problem was hypocrisy, in that they wanted to look better than what they really were, as we read from Matthew 23: 28. This is a typical problem with many 'pious' people, even today.

What about His original disciples – were they anti-Semitic? The original believers in Yahshua were from a sect of Pharisees (see Acts 15: 5) identified as Nazarenes in Acts 24: 5. Since the commencement of Nazarene Judaism evil forces determined to destroy it and because of sustained attacks, the movement almost vanished by the fourth century. However, it never totally died out, as there have always been Torah observant individuals who believed in Yahshua as their Messiah. This is in line with the words of Yahshua in Matthew 16: 18, where He told His disciples, that the ecclesia (a group of called-out believers) built upon the Rock (meaning Himself), shall remain and the gates of Hades (meaning death) shall not overpower it, until His return. The evil forces against us are the same forces that are against our Jewish brothers, namely lawlessness. Anti-Semitism is at the root of the destruction of any group who ever tried to return to their Hebrew roots; one such group was the World-wide Church of G-d and even to a lesser extent the Seventh Day Adventists, even though they were never fully Torah observant.

The fourth century “Church father” Epiphanius described the Nazarenes, as follows: *‘But these sectarians...did not call themselves Christians – but “Nazarenes,”...However they are simply complete Jews. They use not only the New Testament but the Old Testament as well, as the Jews do... They have no different ideas, but confess everything exactly as the Law proclaims it and in the Jewish fashion except for their belief in Messiah, if you please! For they acknowledge both the resurrection of the dead and the divine creation of all things, and declare that G-d is one, and that his son is Y’shua the Messiah. They are trained to a nicety in Hebrew. For among them the entire Law, the Prophets, and the ...Writings... are read in Hebrew, as they surely are by the Jews. They are different from the Jews, and different from Christians, only in the following. They disagree with Jews because they have come to faith in Messiah; but since they are still fettered by the Law...circumcision, the Sabbath, and the rest...they are not in accord with Christians...they are nothing but Jews.... They have the Goodnews according to Matthew in its entirety in Hebrew. For it is clear that they still preserve this, in the Hebrew alphabet, as it was originally written.’*

In harmony with this statement, our aim is to put Yahshua back into the context of first century Judaism. But, since not all of us are Jews by birth, we are also known as Nazarene Israelites, due to the law of inheritance recorded in Galatians 3: 26 to Galatians 4: 31, and Galatians 6: 16.

Nazarene Judaism?

By Jim Coetzee

This book is not to be sold, as we are told in the second part of Matthew 10: 8 “*freely you received, freely give.*” Published by the Nazarene Israelite Two House Congregation of Port Elizabeth. August 2010. All Scriptures used are from the ‘NEW AMERICAN STANDARD BIBLE’, unless otherwise indicated. Set-apart Names corrected in quotes from this Bible according to its ‘Principles of Translation’. Consequently the true name of our heavenly Father, namely (יהוה) commonly referred to as the Tetragrammaton is used in accordance with accepted Jewish custom as ‘YHVH’, instead of LORD, and Elohim is used instead of the title G-D, throughout the book. The Hebrew name of Yahshua our Messiah, who said in John 5: 43 that He came in His Father’s name, is also used throughout the book. The name (יהושע) Yahshua means the salvation of Yah, a short form of the name of YHVH. The Holy Spirit is referred to as the Set-apart Spirit, throughout this book. This book is written in US English as most of the audience, at which this book is aimed, are in the United States of America,

Acknowledgements.

Bless YHVH Elohim King of the universe who inspired me to put this book together, aimed at uniting the remnant of the 'lost ten tribes' of Israel and Judah, and to foster unity amongst the people of Elohim.

Thank you also to my wife Hannah, who helped me putting the material together and Annatjie van Graan who assisted with proof reading.

Chapter	Index	Page
Foreword.		2
1. Israel: from father Abraham until the world to come.		5
1.1 Two House Teaching in the Renewed Covenant.		15
1.2 What about the world to come?		16
2. The Kings of Israel.		20
3. Which is the one faith spoken about in Scriptures?		26
3.1 Doctrine of the great controversy between YHVH and Satan.		28
3.2 Doctrine of the immortality of the soul.		29
3.3 Doctrine that good people goes to heaven and the unsaved and wicked people go to hell.		29
3.4 Do we believe in a so-called rapture?		31
3.5 Are we the anti-Messiah?		33
3.6 Do we have the oracles of Elohim?		33
3.7 Jews believe the true gospel, but are blinded to the identity of Messiah.		34
3.8 The Scriptures is the word of Elohim.		36
3.9 Are we a sect?		36
3.10 Are we Nazarenes?		38
4. The Oneness of Elohim.		42
4.1 Introduction.		42
4.2 What is man?		43
4.3 Who or What is YHVH?		47
4.4 Who is the Anti-Messiah?		52
4.5 Why do we have to find the Identity of Elohim for ourselves?		55
5. The Feast Days or Sabbaths of Elohim.		59
5.1 The weekly Sabbath.		59
5.2 The annual Sabbaths.		59
5.3 The reason for keeping the Feast Days.		60
5.4 The first Passover.		61
5.5 The Passover today.		62
5.6 Did Yahshua partake His last Passover?		63
5.7 Timing of the Passover according to the Nazarene system.		65
5.8 Three days and three nights.		67
5.9 Days of Unleavened Bread.		68
5.10 Pentecost (Shavuot).		69
5.11 When do we start counting the Omer?		70
5.12 Feast of Trumpets.		72
5.13 Day of Atonement.		73
5.14 Feast of Tabernacles.		73
5.15 The Last Great Day		75
5.16 Timing of the Sabbath.		76
5.17 Has time been lost?		79
5.18 Is it important that we meet together?		80
5.19 Why don't all understand Elohim's plan of salvation for all mankind?		83
Diagram: The Genius of the Hebrew calendar.		86
6. How long are we going to condone paganism?		87
6.1 What about Xmas?		87
7. Clean and unclean foods.		91
7.1 Verses used to challenge clean food laws.		94
7.2 Other Scriptural Health Laws.		96
8. Circumcision remains valid for Nazarene Jews.		100
8.1 Circumcision, Immersion and the Passover.		105
9. Do we wear tzitzit?		109
10. Born again?		115
11. Who has the oracles of YHVH our Elohim?		120
11.1 Elohim's covenant promise about King David's throne.		124
11.2 Why are so many 'obsessed with watching the moon?		128
11.3 Are like-minded believers descendants of Waldenses?		132
12. Do you believe in Yahshua our Jewish Messiah?		133
12.1 Examples of our fathers in the faith.		135
13. The great falling away.		138
Bibliography and other sources of information.		141

Chapter 1 - Israel: from father Abraham until the world to come.

Our history starts with our father in the faith, Abraham. YHVH said to Abram in Genesis 12: 1 - 3, ***“Go forth from your country, and from your relatives and from your father’s house, to the land which I will show you; (2) And I will make you a great nation, and I will bless you, and make your name great; And so you shall be a blessing. (3) And I will bless those who bless you, and the one who curses you I will curse. And in you all the families of the earth shall be blessed.”*** According to the transliterated Hebrew words for ‘Go forth’ namely ‘*Lech lecha*’, Abram was told to get out of the land of his fathers, for his own good. YHVH commanded Abram and on the condition that he obeyed, he was made an eternal promise. From this point forward YHVH started the world with an individual person who obeyed Him.

When YHVH told Abram to leave, he did not argue at all, but as we read from Genesis 12: 4, ***“(So) Abram went forth.”*** YHVH established Abram, whose name He later changed to Abraham, as the father of Israel. However Abram had to obey and leave his country of origin, namely Ur of the Chaldeans, which was in the land of Babylon, as well as his family and friends behind. He had to go and start all over again in a country where YHVH told him to go. This is similar to the way that YHVH is calling us to come out of the false religious systems that we served in the past, in order to qualify to go and dwell in the land promised to our father in the faith. YHVH promised the land of Canaan to Abram and his descendants, for an everlasting possession. YHVH said to him in Genesis 16: 10 & 11: ***“This is My covenant, which you shall keep between Me and you and your descendants after you; every male among you shall be circumcised. (11) And you shall be circumcised in the flesh of your foreskin; and it shall be a sign of the covenant between Me and you.”***

YHVH said of this new nation that He started in Isaiah 43: 21, ***“The people, whom I formed for Myself, Will declare My praise.”*** This specific prophesy will only truly come to fruition in the foreseeable future, when a remnant of Israel will be saved. Few people today realize that there is a principle of duality which runs throughout the plan that YHVH is carrying out here on earth. There was the first Adam, physical and earthly, and there is Messiah, who is the second Adam, who is spiritual and eternal. YHVH made man mortal from the dust of the ground and of the human kind; but through Messiah we may be begotten immortal, spiritual and of the Elohim kind. Similarly there were two phases to the promises that YHVH made to Abraham; One being material and national, and the other spiritual and individual. Most students of the Scriptures are aware of the spiritual promise of Messiah and salvation through Him: Most realize that YHVH gave Abraham a spiritual promise of the Messiah to be born as his descendant, and that mankind will be saved through Him. Even so, most do not understand what salvation is, i.e. the promise that we receive through Messiah and how and when we receive it. But, we will discuss that truth later, as we are only focusing on the national and material promises that YHVH made to Abraham, at this time.

YHVH made a dual promise to Abram in Genesis 12: 2 & 3, saying: ***‘And I will make you a great nation (a promise of race), And I will bless you, And make your name great; And you shall be a blessing; (3) And I will bless those who bless you, And the one who curses you I will curse, And in you all the families of the earth shall be blessed (a promise of grace or unmerited pardon).’*** This last promise is repeated in Genesis 22: 18, as follows: ***“And in your seed all the nations of the earth shall be blessed, because you obeyed My voice.”*** It is at this point where Christianity has fallen into error, or spiritual blindness. As already mentioned, they understand the promise of spiritual salvation through Messiah, but miss the point that YHVH gave Abraham promises of both physical race and spiritual salvation. They incorrectly assumed that believers are promised eternal life in heaven after death. However, the promise of ‘*a great nation*’ refers to race and not only to the one ‘*seed*’ spoken about in Galatians 3: 16, in this way: ***‘Now the promises were spoken to Abraham and to his seed. He does not say, “And to seeds,” as referring to many, but rather to one, “And to your seed,” that is Messiah.’*** Yes, we know that Messiah was the Son of Elohim, but He was also a descendant of Abraham.

It was Elohim’s intention for Israel to become a multitude of nations. Observe and understand the promises given in Genesis 17: 1 - 5, as follows: ***‘Now when Abram was ninety-nine years old. YHVH appeared to Abram and said to Him, “I am Elohim Almighty; Walk before Me, and be blameless. (2) And I will establish My covenant between Me and you, And I will multiply you exceedingly.” (3) And Abram fell on his face, and Elohim talked to him, saying, (4) “As for Me, behold, My covenant is with you, And you shall be the father of a multitude of nations. (5) No longer shall your name be called Abram, But your name shall be Abraham; For I will make you the father of a multitude of nations.”*** Also understand that this promise was conditional upon Abraham’s obedience and blameless living. At this time the ‘*great nation*’ becomes a ‘*multitude of nations*’ and can definitely not refer to a single seed, namely Messiah only.

We read from verse 6 of Genesis 17, ***“And I will make you exceedingly fruitful, and I will make nations of you, and kings shall come forth from you.”*** This tells us that Abraham’s offspring will become many nations with a number of kings ruling them. We read further from verses 7 and 8 of Genesis 17, YHVH

saying: ***“And I will establish My covenant between Me and you and your descendants after you throughout their generations for an everlasting covenant, to be an Elohim to you and to your descendants after you. (8) And I will give to you and to your descendants after you, the land of your sojournings, all the land of Canaan, for an everlasting possession; and I will be their Elohim.”*** Please note that the land is promised to numerous descendants of whom YHVH is *‘their’* and not *‘his’* Elohim. The future of all the important nations of the world depended on the promises that YHVH made to Abraham. The hope of life after death for anyone, regardless of their race, depends upon the spiritual promise made to Abraham; the promise of mercy and favor through Messiah, the *‘one seed’* of Abraham.

Today, the children of Abraham have indeed become a multitude of nations. Even so, most of them have lost their identity because they started keeping the pagan holidays of the nations amongst whom they were scattered. They forgot the commandments of YHVH and He no longer considers them, to be His people. They have also forgotten the name of Elohim and even though some know that Yahshua died for their sins, they do not know His real name any longer. In addition they do not know that they are Israelites who should be keeping the Torah commands of YHVH, as a model to the nations in the world. Today they worship a three-headed deity whom they call G-d and do not keep the Feast Days of Elohim any more: It is for this reason, that they have forgotten Elohim’s plan of salvation for all mankind. This deception is Satan’s way to keep these Israelites from knowing their ultimate potential of becoming sons of Elohim in His everlasting Kingdom on earth.

The promises made to Abraham were very important and are foundational to the development of the greatest nations in the world. The original nation of Israel ruled by King David, split in two after King Solomon died, because of idolatry, forming the two nations, known as Judah and Israel. During the years 721 – 718 BCE the nation of Israel (consisting of ten tribes) were invaded by the Assyrians, after which they were exiled. Over time they migrated northwest into what is today known as Europe, but they lost their identity, their culture and language. People throughout the world, but mainly those in the Western world would be amazed if they knew that they are part of the lost ten tribes of the Scriptural nation of Israel. Only a few today are aware of this vitally important fact and because many believe that they are nothing but Gentiles, they are blinded to a great deal of what is written in the Scriptures about specifically the nation of Israel (and Judah). About two and a half thousand years ago YHVH, the Creator of the universe inspired Isaiah to quote Him in Isaiah 46: 9 & 10, saying: ***“Remember the former things long past, For I am Elohim, and there is no other; I am Elohim and there is no one like Me, (10) Declaring the end from the beginning And from ancient times things which have not been done, Saying, ‘My purpose will be established, And I will accomplish all My good pleasure.’”*** Ask yourself: What is the purpose of Elohim spoken about here?

Reading from Psalm 33: 10 – 15, YHVH said through David: ***‘YHVH nullifies the counsel of the nations; He frustrates the plans of the peoples. (11) The counsel of YHVH stands forever, The plans of His heart from generation to generation. (12) Blessed is the nation whose Elohim is YHVH, The people whom He has chosen for His own inheritance. (13) YHVH looks from heaven; He sees all the sons of men; (14) From His dwelling place He looks out on all the inhabitants of the earth, (15) He who fashions the hearts of them all, He who understand all their works.’*** YHVH created mankind for an incredible purpose, but even the wisest people on earth are totally unaware of His purpose for us. Why don’t these extremely talented and learned people understand the real meaning of what is happening in our world today? The reason for this is twofold, namely:

- (a.) They have been deceived by Satan through the false education (and religious) systems of the world, which appeal to the vanity of their intellect causing them to reject Scriptural knowledge that can only be understood by those who have the Set-part Spirit indwelling them; and
- (b.) The key to understanding Scriptural prophecies, namely the identity of the lost ten tribes of Israel, and the other nations in the catastrophic events soon to occur, has been lost.

We are almost at the end of 6,000 years of Scriptural history, about to enter the world to come (Olam Haba). Today, we face conditions which the world has not ever experienced before. After World War II, the nations of the world started developing weapons of mass destruction which can erase all life from our planet. Most nations are in deep financial trouble, and their citizens suffer from many incurable diseases. Soon a world-wide famine caused by natural disasters and inclement weather will result in millions starving to death. The major powers of the world, which used to turn to Science and Technology for help in the past, cannot find solutions to their problems any longer and have no-where to turn to. Even those who turn to the Scriptures; cannot find the answers, because they believe the Scriptures to be out-dated and only offered solutions to the ancient nation of Israel.

In fact a large portion of the prophecies in the Scriptures were never written for the ancient nation of Israel, but is about the people and nations alive today. We are also able to see from many of the prophecies in the Scriptures where the people of Israel will reside before Messiah’s return and the coming exodus back to the Promised Land, picturing them in captivity and slavery. Speaking first of ancient Israel, YHVH says in Ezekiel

20: 10 – 12, **“So I took them out of the land of Egypt and brought them into the wilderness. (11) And I gave them My statutes and informed them of My ordinances, by which, if a man observes them, he will live. (12) And also I gave them My Sabbaths to be a sign between Me and them, that they might know that I am YHVH who sanctifies them.”** Nevertheless we read in verse 21 of Ezekiel 20: **“But the children rebelled against Me; they did not walk in My statutes, nor were they careful to observe My ordinances, by which, if a man observes them, he will live; they profaned My Sabbaths. So I resolved to pour out My wrath on them, to accomplish My anger against them in the wilderness.”** Therefore, we see according to verse 23 that YHVH scattered ancient Israel in national captivity and slavery. Instead of becoming the model nation that YHVH wanted them to be, ancient Israel became trapped in the worship practices of the pagan nations around them.

This was the main reason why YHVH made them wander in the wilderness for forty years, where most of the older generation died out. When they eventually entered the Promised Land, it was a new generation, but they witnessed the miracle of the manna provided during their years in the wilderness, as well as Elohim’s presence in the pillar of cloud by day and the pillar of fire by night. This new generation of Israelites had a priesthood in operation to help them remember the many blessings that YHVH provided for them and should have forgotten the pagan gods of Egypt, but instead of driving out the pagan nations from among them in the Promised Land, they absorbed the heathen worship practices of their neighbors. Even after the nation split into two separate nations, they did not obey YHVH, as is witnessed in 2 Kings 17: 22 & 23, like this: **‘And the sons of Israel walked in all the sins of which he did; they did not depart from them, (23) until YHVH removed Israel from His sight, as He spoke through all His servants the prophets. So Israel was carried away into exile from their own land to Assyria until this day.’**

By studying the Scriptures we find that Jeroboam, the king who took over the kingdom of the house of Israel after King Solomon died, erected two golden calves in Israel, one in Dan and one in Bethel, and instituted a feast in the eighth month on the fifteenth of the month, **‘like the feast (of Tabernacles) which is in Judah’** (see 1st Kings 12: 28 – 33). Their idolatry resulted in the fact that YHVH no longer cared for them as a nation, as we read in Amos 9: 7, in this way: **“‘Are you not as the sons of Ethiopia to Me, O sons of Israel?’ declares YHVH. ‘Have I not brought up Israel from the land of Egypt, and the Philistines from Caphtor and the Arameans from Kir?’”** They became like every other nation in the world to YHVH, and lost their status of being His chosen people. Even so, as we continue to read this amazing prophesy we see from Ezekiel 20: 33 & 34 that this is in fact talking about the people of Israel today, as follows: **“‘As I live,’ declares YHVH Elohim, ‘surely with a mighty hand and with an outstretched arm and with wrath poured out, I shall be king over you. (34) ‘And I shall bring you out from the peoples and gather you from the lands where you are scattered, with a mighty hand and with an outstretched arm and with wrath poured out.’”**

During the early part of the last century there were religious groups, who started identifying some of the lost ten tribes of Israel. As time went on, the identity of the various nations making up the lost ten tribes became clearer. Today since the late 1990’s there are groups and even Jewish Rabbis in Israel who agree with and has in fact provided an even clearer opinion on the identity of the lost ten tribes. One source from Israel tells us that the descendants of the lost ten tribes are to be found throughout the world, but mainly amongst the so-called ‘gentile’ peoples of Northwest Europe, North America, Australia, New Zealand and South Africa. The Jews in Israel and those in the Diaspora are mainly descended from the tribe of Judah. The early Israelites are proven to have migrated to the west and over many years formed the nations of France, Holland, Belgium, Denmark, Switzerland, Norway, Sweden, Finland, The USA, Great Britain, Canada, Australia, New Zealand and South Africa. The most prominent tribes were Ephraim and Manasseh, the descendants of Joseph’s two sons, and are mainly to be found in the present day English-speaking nations; the tribe of Reuben became the forefather of the French; Benjamin the forefather of Belgium; Zebulon the forefather of the Dutch; Asher gave rise to the Scots; Issachar the Swiss; Dan contributed to the Welsh and Irish and fathered the Danes and so on. Issachar was dominating in Switzerland and Zebulon in Holland, but groups of both tribes were found in each country. The Scots and the Jews are amongst the most intelligent people in the world and many scientific breakthroughs may be attributed to both these groups.

It is commonly accepted that the aforementioned peoples have always been attached to the Scriptures, especially the original Hebrew Covenant. Abraham was the first ancestor of the Hebrew nation. The blessings of Abraham was passed on to his son Isaac and then onto Jacob. in the book of Genesis, where we will discover the identity of the lost tribes of Israel, not previously identified. Jacob lived seventeen years in Egypt. His family and his children’s families increased greatly in numbers during that time. Elohim changed Jacob’s name to Israel, and it is for that reason that his descendants are called Israelites, a nation that developed whilst they lived in Egypt. Jacob believed that his life was nearly over, so he sent for Joseph’s two sons, Ephraim and Manasseh, in order to bless them, as we read from Genesis 48: 11 – 20, in this way: **‘And Israel said to Joseph, ‘I never expected to see your face, and behold, Elohim has let me see your children as well.’ (12) Then Joseph took them from his knees, and bowed with his face to the ground.**

(13) And Joseph took them both, Ephraim with his right hand towards Israel's left, and Manasseh with his left hand towards Israel's right, and brought them close to him. (14) But Israel stretched out his right hand and laid it on the head of Ephraim, who was the younger, and his left hand on Manasseh's head, crossing his hands, although Manasseh was the first-born. (15) And he blessed Joseph, and said, "The Elohim before whom my fathers Abraham and Isaac walked, The Elohim who has been my shepherd all my life to this day, (16) The angel who has redeemed me from all evil, Bless the lads; and may my name live on in them, and may they grow into a multitude in the midst of the earth." (17) When Joseph saw that his father laid his right hand on Ephraim's head, it displeased him; and he grasped his father's hand to remove it from Ephraim's head to Manasseh's head. (18) And Joseph said to his father, "Not so, my father, for this one is the first-born. Place your right hand on his head." (19) But his father refused and said, "I know, my son, I know; he also shall become a people and he also shall be great. However, his younger brother shall be greater than he, and his descendants shall become a multitude of nations."(20) And he blessed them that day, saying, "By you Israel shall pronounce blessings, saying, 'May Elohim make you like Ephraim and Manasseh.'"

We learnt by comparing Scriptural prophesy to our world today, that Ephraim became a commonwealth of nations and Manasseh became a great nation. It is clear today that Joseph became the father of the English speaking nations of the world today. Ephraim is identified as Great Britain, Canada, Australia, New Zealand and South Africa and Manasseh as the United States of America. Even though out of sequence, we read the blessing that Jacob gave to Joseph, from Genesis 49: 22 – 26 as follows: **"Joseph is a fruitful bough, A fruitful bough by a spring; Its branches run over a wall. (23) The archers bitterly attacked him, And shot at him and harassed him; (24) But his bow remained firm, And his arms were agile, From the hands of the Mighty One of Jacob (From there is the Shepherd, the Stone of Israel), (25) From the Elohim of your father who helps you, And by the Almighty who blesses you with blessings of heaven above, Blessings of the deep that lies beneath, Blessings of the breasts and of the womb. (26) The blessings of your father have surpassed the blessings of my ancestors Up to the utmost bound of the everlasting hills; May they be on the head of Joseph, And on the crown of the head of the one distinguished among his brothers."**

Before identifying the rest of the lost ten tribes, I would like to make it clear that, in total agreement and as stated by Yair Davidy in his book entitled "The Tribes", we are by no means racist. I wish to insert a direct quotation from page 401 of his book, showing that we fully concur with Yair Davidy, a fellow Jewish Israelite: **"The Almighty created all mankind and everyone has free will to do right or wrong within the limitations imposed upon him by his surroundings and circumstance. Every person ideally should endeavor to do the best he can as well as he can with what he has which includes his inherited traits as well as his acquired ones. What applies to individuals is even more applicable to groups of common ancestry in which the communal effort reinforces and empowers all of its members. In the same way as propensities for music and the like are often inherited so too are tribal traits for better or for worse. This does not mean that any group has the right to feel itself racially or otherwise somehow "superior" to any other or to be prejudiced against those who are not family members. By the individual and his group or sub-tribe understanding to what Tribal unit within the overall Israelite framework they belong or are attached to so will they be enabled to consciously contribute in the desired direction.**

On the international level, this is a changing world, in which the same or similar forces and alignments periodically re-appear. It would help all concerned to be conscious of their ultimate familial connections as indicated in the BIBLE and what their interest should therefore be. More specifically, the Western peoples should know that the Jewish hold upon all of the Land of Israel is most desirable from the viewpoint of Scripture and is for the good of everybody. Also that as Israelites all Tribal members (especially those pertaining to the northern group headed by JOSEPH) have an obligation (beyond the duty incumbent on every human being) to do right and to regulate the affairs of humanity in a positive direction. It would pay us all to read the Bible more frequently and to strive for deeper understanding."

The Scriptures clearly show that YHVH is dealing with the various nations at different times, as is recorded for us in the following Scriptures:

- Deuteronomy 32: 8, **"When the Most High gave the nations their inheritance, when He separated the sons of man, He set the boundaries of the peoples According to the number of the sons of Israel."**
- Acts 17: 26 & 27, **'and He made from one (blood) every nation of mankind to live on all the face of the earth, having determined their appointed times, and the boundaries of their habitation, (27) that they should seek Elohim, if perhaps they might grope for Him and find Him, though He is not far from each one of us.'**

We read about the blessing which Jacob gave his twelve sons in Genesis 49: 1 & 2, as follows: ***‘Then Jacob summoned his sons and said, “Assemble yourselves that I may tell you what shall befall you in the days to come. (2) Gather together and hear, O sons of Jacob; And listen to Israel your father.”*** We are actually able to identify most of the sons of Israel, by the blessings each of them received from their father. Starting with his eldest son Reuben in Genesis 49: 3 & 4, we read: ***“Reuben, you are my first-born; My might and the beginning of my strength, Preeminent in dignity and preeminent in power. (4) Uncontrolled as water, you shall not have preeminence, because you went up to your father’s bed; Then you defiled it – he went up on my couch.”*** The French descend in the main from Jacob’s eldest son Reuben. They possess the dignity and finesse suitable for a first-born son. The Hebrew name Reuben (ראובן) pronounced as Ra-oo-ben. Ra-oo means ‘see’ and ben means ‘son’. Therefore the name Reuben means ‘see a son’.

We read in Joshua 22: 9, ***“And the children of Reuben and the children of Gad and the half tribe of Manasseh returned home and departed from the sons of Israel at Shiloh which is in the land of Canaan, to go to the land of Gilead, to the land of their possession which they had possessed, according to the command of YHVH through Moses.”*** The Galatians descended from the Israelite tribes of Reuben, Gad and half-Manasseh, had once been located in the land of Israel east of the Jordan River. The area used to be known as Gilead and Bashan. The name of the Galatians was sometimes tendered as ‘Galadi’ and is derived from the Hebrew Gilead. The Galatians had a tendency to join in alliance with the Goths¹. The Galatians were identifiable in Europe with both part of the Celts and Belgae and with early groups in Germany. Germany like Scandinavia received tribes from Scythia via Scandinavia and westward into Gaul and Britain. Gaul is the inclusive name for modern day France, Belgium, Switzerland and Holland. However, not all of the French were from the tribe of Reuben. The Huguenots identified as Calvinist Protestants from France, were according to Ruth Shecter, an Author and researcher from Beer Sheva University in Israel basically Hebraic in character and mindset.

Jews fled from Portugal and Spain during the Spanish inquisition, to France and Holland, Whilst Jews practiced their religion openly in France and Holland. Portugal and the Spanish colonies in the Americas, where the inquisition was imposed, lead to crypto-Jews secretly practicing Judaism. France, because it was next to Spain was a natural point of escape for Jews fleeing across the border. France was a Catholic country and expelled the Jews in 1394. Although Jews were expelled from France from the twelve through the fifteenth centuries, a large number of conversos remained behind in the south of France. The Sephardic remnant was quietly enlarged by ‘New Christians’ Judaizers or Marranos from Portugal and Spain. France officially opened its borders for fleeing conversos from Portugal and Spain in 1550. In 1615 Louis XIII published an edict insisting that all Jews leave France within a month, but the parliament in Bordeaux prevented the expulsion from occurring. In 1656, Louis XIV issued an edict confining all ‘New Christians’ to Bordeaux and its surrounds. As time past, the crypto-Jews or ‘New Christians’ of southern France were referred to as Jews. However, whilst there were Sephardic communities who openly practiced Judaism, most of the Sephardic Jews in France disappeared; some merged with Catholicism, whilst others later showed up in Holland.

The rise of Protestantism in France had a special attractiveness for the Jews. Protestantism had several positive factors that made it attractive for secret Jews, who wanted to appear to be Christian. The mutual enemy of Protestantism and Judaism was Catholicism. In addition Protestantism appealed to traders and the better educated and those who were better off financially. The Sephardic and Protestant or Huguenot areas overlapped. Huguenots were sometimes treated well, but were persecuted most of the time for not being Catholics. Thousands were killed or sent to prison. Because of persecution about 850,000 Huguenots converted to Catholicism and about 160,000 went into exile. Throughout the history of the Huguenots, the French Protestants had an affinity for the Jews. After 1685 about 400,000 Huguenots emigrated to Prussia, Holland, Britain, Switzerland and North America. Among the Dutch-dominated settlers in South Africa, were many of Huguenot origin. Many of the Huguenot family names that showed up in their host countries suggest a connection with Jewish origins. But a large number of crypto-Jews remained in the countries of their origins. Their Jewish names were changed when they were forced into baptism in Catholicism. Today there are many Portuguese names and surnames connected to trees, plants and animals which was a typical way in which crypto-Jews identified themselves after baptism, e.g. Pereira (pear tree), D’Almeida (Almond) or Da Costa (meaning from the coast). These names indicate ancestry going back to the hidden Jews of Portugal. It is for this reason that many Portuguese, as well as many of the French Huguenots and Dutch immigrants who fled Catholic persecution to the USA, Canada, the UK and South Africa, are in fact Jewish. The historian Arthur J. Zuckerman believed that Jews were referred to as ‘Goths’, because they often came from the region of Narbonne which was also known as ‘Gothia’.

¹ The name Gad in Hebrew could be pronounced as ‘Goth’ meaning the deity or god named ‘troop’ or Luck.

Continuing in Genesis 49: 5 - 7, we read: **“Simeon and Levi are brothers; Their swords are implements of violence. (6) Let my soul not enter into their council; Let not my glory be united with their assembly; Because in their anger they slew men, And in their self-will they lamed oxen. (7) Cursed be their anger, for it is fierce; And their wrath, for it is cruel. I will disperse them in Jacob, and scatter them in Israel.”** Many of the teachers in both houses of Israel are probably from the tribe of Levi, who were scattered in Israel. We also read about Levi in Deuteronomy 33: 8 – 11, **‘And of Levi he said, “Let Thy Thummim and Thy Urim belong to Thy godly man, Whom Thou didst prove at Massah, With whom Thou didst contend at the waters of Meribah; (9) Who said of his father and his mother, ‘I did not consider them’; And he did not acknowledge his brothers, Nor did he regard his own sons, For they observed Thy word, And kept Thy covenant. (10) “They shall teach Thine ordinances to Jacob, And Thy law to Israel. They shall put incense before Thee, and whole burnt offerings on Thine altar. (11) “O YHVH, bless his substance, And accept the work of his hands; Shatter the loins of those who rise up against him, And those who hate him, so that they may not rise again.”’**

We read in Genesis 49: 8 – 12, **“Judah, your brothers shall praise you; Your hand shall be on the neck of your enemies; Your father’s sons shall bow down to you. (9) Judah is a lion’s whelp; From the prey, my son, you have gone up. He couches, he lies down as a lion, And as a lion, who dares rouse him up? (10) The scepter shall not depart from Judah. Nor the ruler’s staff from between his feet, Until Shiloh comes, And to him shall be the obedience of the peoples. (11) He ties his foal to the vine, and his donkey’s colt to the choice vine; He washes his garments in the wine, and his robes in the blood of grapes. (12) His eyes are darker than wine, And his teeth whiter than milk.”** Judah will have the Oracles of Elohim, until Messiah comes to rule His people from Jerusalem. We may twist and turn as much as we like, YHVH does not change. Some insist that ‘YHVH has taken away the Oracles of Elohim, from the Jews, because of their unbelief’. However, Romans 3: 3 & 4, indicates that those who say so, are nothing but liars: **‘What then? If some did not believe, their unbelief will not nullify the faithfulness of Elohim, will it? (4) May it never be! Rather, let Elohim be found true, though every man be found a liar, as it is written, “THAT THOU MIGHTEST BE JUSTIFIED IN THY WORDS, AND MIGHTEST PREVAIL WHEN THOU ART JUDGED.”’** Jews usually have dark reddish-brown eyes and milk white teeth. Yehoshua our Messiah came in the form as a man, but was a Jew. I am positive that He looked nothing like some Christian Bibles portray him, i.e. with long blond hair and a refined European nose. There is no doubt that like the Jews of today, He was from the Tribe of Judah. However, as explained earlier, there might have been Jews amongst the Huguenots (French) and Dutch Protestants who fled Catholic persecution, as well as Spaniards and Portuguese peoples who fled the Catholic (Spanish) inquisition. Even so, the modern day Jews descend mainly from the two tribes of Judah and Benjamin.

Talking about Zebulon’s blessing in Genesis 49: 13, we read: **“Zebulon shall dwell at the seashore; And he shall be a haven for ships, And his flank shall be toward Sidon.”** Zebulon is identifiable with Holland, as only the Dutch dwell on the shores of the sea. The ship is the symbol of Holland. The Frisians are people who are concentrated in Northern Holland, but once spread along the coast from Scandinavia to Holland, Belgium and also into France. Moses blessed Zebulon in Deuteronomy 33: 18 & 19, saying: **“Rejoice, Zebulon, in your going forth, And, Issachar, in your tents. (19) They shall call peoples to the mountain; There they shall offer righteous sacrifices; For they shall draw out the abundance of the seas, And the hidden treasures of the sand.”** Many South Africans are descended from the Dutch. Both Holland and South Africa are somehow busy on the seashores. A large part of Holland is below sea level; on shores of the sea and South Africa finds a good portion of its diamond wealth from the sands of the sea. The stone of Zebulon (on the Chief Priest’s Breastplate) was a diamond. South Africa produces a large percentage of the world’s diamonds today, which are processed and traded in Belgium. Many of the white South Africans are from Dutch descent. The people of Flanders in Belgium also have a Dutch connection.

Before going on to another tribe, I would like to insert another quote from Yair Davidy’s book, entitled; “The Tribes” (pages 233 & 234) here, for the sake of my fellow South Africans: **“South Africa was colonized mainly by people of British and Dutch descent with others in addition to the presence of several different Negro nations. The white (and therefore also some colored²) peoples are those who (in this case) belong to Israel. The Coat of Arms features a lion (from Joseph - Britain), and two deer (a springbok and oryx). The deer was a symbol of Naphtali of whom it was prophesied that he would be greatly blessed and receive the “west and the south” (Deuteronomy 34: 23). The motto on the previous coat-of- arms of South Africa means “Strength from Unity”. The coat-of-arms shown is that of the previous regime. It was emphasized that though Naphtali was primarily to be found in Norway and Zebulon in Holland, Naphtali had also historical connections to the area of Holland and groups relating to Naphtali were to be found amongst the Dutch, many of whom settled in South Africa. In addition, Vikings from Norway had settled northwest England. Vikings from Denmark colonized northeast England. Vikings also settled in parts of Wales and Ireland, and the Tribes of Naphtali and Dan had given rise to the Viking movement. It may well be that amongst both the English and Dutch settlers of South Africa many are**

² Bracketed comments mine.

descended from Naphtali. On the whole, however, the land should be attributed to the domain of Joseph. Things have now changed in South Africa and it remains to be seen what the fate of white people there will be.”

We read in Genesis 49: 14 – 15, **“Issachar is a strong donkey, lying down between the sheepfolds. (15) When he saw that a resting place was good And that the land was pleasant, He bowed his shoulder to bear burdens, And became a slave at forced labor.”** The tribe of Issachar are to be found in present day Finland and Switzerland. Switzerland is a neutral republic, using its financial influence to ward off enemies and making it worth while for others to respect its neutrality. Finland also received settlers from Issachar, even though they are like Switzerland traditionally neutral, they defeated the Russians single-handedly in battle. The name Issachar in Hebrew connotes ‘rewards’ or ‘hire’. The Swiss are famous in the world for their banks which take commission for hiring out other people’s money. We also read in 1 Chronicles 12: 32, **‘And the sons of Issachar, men who understood the times, with knowledge of what Israel should do, their chiefs were two hundred; and all their kinsmen were at their command.’** Switzerland is famous for its reliable and accurate watches and in that sense they ‘understood the times.’ Finland also shows qualities relevant to Issachar and was also inhabited by the tribe of Issachar. (Even though Jacob called his son Issachar a strong donkey, he was actually paying him a compliment. Donkeys who are supposed to carry burdens have great strength. They do not easily fall under the burdens of life). However, we see in verse 14 of Genesis 49 that the donkey is lying down between two burdens. Things can get too much for us at times, even for the strongest among us. That is when we are required to lie down to rest. The two burdens spoken about here in the prophetic sense are the two main branches of the house of Israel, namely: Ephraim (a collective name for the ten lost tribes in Scriptures) and Judah. The two houses, are as we know, divided and must be made into one. The donkey sees a pleasant resting place, as we are told in verse 15. The resting place is the Land of Israel. This is where Ephraim and Judah will eventually be united as a physical and eventually a spiritual nation, and become one in faith and purpose, as we are told in Ezekiel 37. The donkey is a type of our determination to bear the burdens that YHVH gives us, without complaining. If we are called to do the work of YHVH we have no choice: We either serve Him 100% or perish.³

Continuing in Genesis 49: 16 - 18, we read: **“Dan shall judge his people, as one of the tribes of Israel. (17) Dan shall be a serpent in the way, a horned snake in the path, that bites the horse’s heels, So that his rider falls backward. (18) For Thy salvation I wait, O Elohim.”** We read in Jeremiah 31: 21 where YHVH tells Ephraim to: **“Set up for yourself roadmarks, place for yourself guideposts; direct your mind to the highway, the way by which you went.”** Throughout the Scriptures we find roadmarks or guideposts, which Israel set up along the way they traveled. In Genesis 49: 17, Jacob blessing Dan (mainly the Irish and Welsh nations), saying: **“Dan shall be a serpent in the way.”** Dan is one of the tribes who named every place, where they set foot. We read in Joshua 19: 47, **‘And the territory of the sons of Dan proceeded beyond them: for the sons of Dan went up and fought with Leshem and captured it. Then they struck it with the edge of the sword and possessed it and settled in it; and they called it Leshem Dan after the name of Dan their father.’** We read further in Judges 18: 11 – 12, **‘Then from the family of the Danites, from Zorah and from Eshtaol, six hundred men armed with weapons of war set out. (12) And they went up and camped at Kiriath-jearim in Judah. Therefore they called that place Mahaneh-dan to this day.’** Later the same group of Danites came to Laish and called the name of the city Dan (as per verse 29 of Judges 18).

Most of us are aware that vowels are not written in Hebrew: the English name Dan is simply written as Dn (דן) in Hebrew. Dn might be pronounced as Dan, but also as Den, Din, Don or Dun – all meaning the same Hebrew name. In Deuteronomy 33, just prior to his death, Moses blessed the sons of Israel. In verse 22 of Deuteronomy 33 we read: **‘And of Dan he said, “Dan is a lion’s whelp, that leaps forth from Bashan.”** It is believed that prior to 721 BCE when Assyria captured Israel, the Danites left the Promised Land struck in ships and sailed through the Mediterranean Sea and then on to Ireland. Irish history shows that new inhabitants of Ireland at that time were known as the ‘Tuatha de Danaan’ or the tribe of Dan. However the northern colony of the Danites was taken captive with the rest of the Israelites. They eventually migrated with the rest of the Israelites north west into Europe and left landmarks such as Denmark (Dan’s mark), and in the British Isles they left names like Dundee, Donegal City, Dingle, Dunsmor and Dunraven, amongst others.

Irish history tells of a strong colony of the tribe of Dan that arrived and settled in Ireland by ship, before 700 BCE. Later in King David’s days, a colony of the line of Zarah arrived in Ireland from the East. In the years 569 BCE, an elderly prophet (called a ‘saint’) came to Ireland and it is believed that he was none other than the prophet Jeremiah. He brought with him the princess daughter of a middle-eastern king, with the Hebrew name Tea-Tephi as well as a scribe named Shimon Baruch. His party included the king of Ireland who was in Jerusalem at the time of the siege. He got to know the princess and married her shortly after the fall of Jerusalem in 585 BCE. Jeremiah also brought an ark, musical instruments including a harp and a stone

³ The bracketed section at the end of the blessings given to Issachar even though not verbatim, comes from a Parasha given by Nazarene Yisraelite Rabbi T. Mordecai Mitchell.

called the 'stone of destiny' or 'Lia-fail', with him to Ireland. In fact many kings in the history of Ireland, Scotland and England, including Queen Elizabeth II have been coronated sitting over this stone. This stone used to be kept in Westminster Abbey in London, and the coronation chair built over it has the inscription 'Jacob's Pillar Stone' (Genesis 28: 18) on it. The stone was moved to Edinburgh Castle on 30 November 1996, the 700th Anniversary of its removal from Scotland. The stone came to Ireland with Jeremiah, where after it was taken to Scotland. In 1296 it was taken to England as the coronation stone of England. Ireland is but one of the nations belonging to the lost 10 tribes, which we are able to identify by following the roadmarks that they left along the way. Ireland has a harp on its coat of Arms and the flag of Wales depicts a dragon; another symbol of the tribe of Dan.

We read about Gad in Genesis 49: 19, as follows: **"As for Gad raiders shall raid him, but he shall raid at their heels."** The tribe of Gad dominated Sweden, whose major constituent divisions bear names reminiscent of Gad and his sons.

Jacob's blessing for Asher appears in Genesis 49: 20, like this: **"As for Asher, his food shall be rich, And he shall yield royal dainties."** The olive tree was the traditional symbol for the tribe of Asher. Asher was eventually found mainly in the northern part of England and Scotland where they intermarried with the descendants of Joseph. Moses blessed Asher in Deuteronomy 33: 24, saying: **"More blessed than sons of Asher; May he be favored by his brothers, And may he dip his foot in oil."** We know that this refers to the oil found in the North Sea area between Scotland and Norway. Asher is positively identified as being the Scots. They are also the only tribe liked (or favored) by most of the other tribes.

We read about Naphtali's blessing in Genesis 49: 21, as follows: **"Naphtali is a doe let loose, He gives beautiful words."** The Naphtalites were from the 10 Tribes of Israel and were reported to have migrated via the Russian Central Asia to Scandinavia. The Naphtalite Vikings eventually became the Norwegians.

Finally, we read about Benjamin's blessing in Genesis 49: 27, **"Benjamin is a ravenous wolf; in the morning he devours the prey, and in the evening he divides the spoil."** Part of the tribe of Benjamin became the basic stock of the so-called Normans. The Normans used the symbol of a wolf, which is the same symbol used by the tribe of Benjamin. The rest of the tribe of Benjamin, are found in the modern day nation of Belgium.

YHVH has from the time that He called Israel out of Egypt planned for them to be His model nation. He wanted them to show the other nations of the world how to live and serve Him. Because YHVH never changes His plan is still in force and will remain so for ever. The Scriptures are filled with references to the nation of Israel from Genesis to Revelation. (Even those who are not bloodline Israelites have the opportunity to become the Israel of Elohim, as we read in such scriptures as Galatians 3: 26 – 29, Galatians 6: 16 and Romans 9: 6). The Israelite seed of Abraham were European colonist from the eighteenth to twentieth centuries. The overall effects of colonialism were in the most beneficial, despite claims to the contrary. British, Dutch and French colonialism put an end to mutually destructive warfare, ended human sacrifice and slavery, founded and improved irrigation systems, reformed agricultural practices and public hygiene, built bridges, roads, public works and many other beneficial things in the nations that they colonized. The colonial powers made large investments and improved the lives of the population greatly. The investments benefited all parties – which is part of the blessing of Abraham, with which all the nations whom Israel came in contact with, were blessed.

The restoration of all Israel is based upon the unqualified promise of YHVH. Even though the House of Israel is scattered throughout the world and think of themselves as Gentiles, not a 'least grain' will be lost. In Hosea 1 we see that Hosea's wife bore him a child named Jezreel. Jezreel stands for Yisre'el, meaning Elohim sows in Hebrew. The word Yisre'el is very similar to Yisrael (Hebrew for Israel) with the prophetic meaning, as seen in chapter 2 of Hosea that Elohim is about to scatter or sow the House of Israel amongst the nations as punishment for their sins. We see that this punishment is specifically for the House of Israel, whilst YHVH will have compassion on the House of Judah, as recorded in Hosea 1: 7 as Follows: **"But I will have compassion on the house of Judah and deliver them by YHVH their Elohim, and will not deliver them by bow, sword, battle, horses and horsemen."**

The House of Judah consists of the majority of the Jewish People alive today. We know that there are only about 16 million Jews around the world today. They retained their identity, because they remained faithful to Torah for the past 2500 years. As mentioned before, the house of Israel consisting of ten tribes was carried away in captivity by Assyria around 721 - 718 BCE. They never returned (in great numbers) to rejoin their brothers Judah. It was during the time of their scattering amongst the nations that Hosea tells us that these Israelites would lose their identity. Hosea's second and third children were named Lo-ruchama (meaning not-pitied) and Lo-ammi (meaning not My People). This essentially meant that during their captivity amongst the nations, they would not receive any pity from YHVH and that they would no longer be known as His people.

Even though the Jews were also dispersed throughout the nations, they have always retained a relationship with YHVH their Elohim and have always kept their identity.

Fortunately YHVH does not want to leave the house of Israel scattered amongst the nations of the world. We also see that Hosea prophesied that at the time when the number of the descendants of Israel will be as *'the sand of the sea'*, this immeasurable group who used to be known as 'not My people' will again come to be known as 'sons of the Living El.' This means that they will regain their identity – they will realize that they are not Gentiles, but belong to the so called 'lost ten tribes of Israel.' We have seen this prophesy about this bringing back of the lost tribes of Israel, in Deuteronomy 30: 3 – 6, as follows: ***'Then YHVH your Elohim will restore you from captivity, and have compassion on you, and will gather you again from all the peoples where YHVH your Elohim has scattered you. (4) If your outcasts are at the ends of the earth, from there YHVH your Elohim will bring you back. (5) And YHVH your Elohim will bring you into the land which your fathers possessed, and you shall possess it; and He will prosper you and multiply you more than your fathers. (6) Moreover YHVH your Elohim will circumcise your heart and the heart of your descendants, to love YHVH your Elohim with all your heart and with all your soul, in order that you may live.'*** A second witness to this is found in Leviticus 26: 40 - 45.

We read further from Jeremiah 31: 10 where YHVH says: ***"He who scattered Israel will gather him, and keep him as a shepherd keeps his flock."*** In verse 27 and 28 we read: ***"Behold, days are coming," declares YHVH, "when I will sow the house of Israel and the house of Judah with the seed of man and with the seed of beast. (28) And it will come about that as I have watched over them to pluck up, to break down, to overthrow, to destroy, and to bring disaster, so I will watch over them to build and to plant," declares YHVH.'*** This is not only talking about the re-gathering of the house of Judah to the Land, but of joining the house of Judah with the whole house of Israel.

Let us now consider a few scriptures which confirm the above and also tell us what lies ahead for those of us who now know that we are part and parcel of the lost ten tribes of Israel:

1. We read in Isaiah 11: 11 – 12, ***'Then it will happen on that day that YHVH will again recover the second time with His hand the remnant of His people, who will remain, from Assyria, Egypt, Pathros, Cush, Elam, Shinar, Hamath, and from the coastlands of the sea. (12) And He will lift up a standard for the nations, will assemble the banished ones of Israel, and will gather the dispersed of Judah from the four corners of the earth.'*** This full gathering seems to come with the appearance of the standard (or Messiah), but many scriptures show that the initial stages of the reunion begin earlier in less notable ways.
2. Jeremiah 3: 6 - 18 states the following, ***'Then YHVH said to me in the days of Josiah the king, "Have you seen what faithless Israel did? She went on every high hill and under every green tree and she was a harlot there. (7) And I thought, 'After she has done all these things, she will return to Me'; but she did not return, and her treacherous sister Judah saw it. (8) And I saw that for all the adulteries of faithless Israel, I had sent her away and given her a writ of divorce, yet her treacherous sister Judah did not fear, but she went and was a harlot also. (9) And yet it came about because of the lightness of her harlotry, that she polluted the land and committed adultery with stones and trees. (10) And in spite of all this her treacherous sister Judah did not return to Me with all her heart, but rather in deception.' Declares YHVH. (11) And YHVH said to me, 'Faithless Israel has proved herself more righteous than treacherous Judah. (12) Go and proclaim these words toward the north and say, 'Return, faithless Israel,' declares YHVH; I will not look upon you in anger, For I am gracious,' declares YHVH; 'I will not be angry forever. (13) Only acknowledge your iniquity That you have transgressed against YHVH your Elohim And have scattered your favors to the strangers under every green tree, And you have not obeyed My voice.' Declares YHVH. (14) Return, O faithless sons, declares YHVH; 'For I am a master to you, And I will take you one from a city and two from a family, And will bring you to Zion.' (15) "Then I will give you shepherds after My own heart, who will feed you on knowledge and understanding. (16) And it shall be in those days when you are multiplied and increased in the land," declares YHVH, "they shall say no more, 'The ark of the covenant of YHVH.' And it shall not come to mind, nor shall they miss it, nor shall it be made again. (17) At that time they shall call Jerusalem 'The Throne of YHVH.' And all the nations will be gathered to it, to Jerusalem, for the name of YHVH; nor shall they walk anymore after the stubbornness of their evil heart. (18) In those days the house of Judah will walk with the house of Israel, and they will come together from the land of the north to the land that I gave your fathers as an inheritance."*** Judah has already gone back to the land and we see more and more Jews returning to the land. Both houses will eventually return, to be associated again with a Davidic king. This great return will rival the Exodus from Egypt, when the new covenant will come about with the restoration of all Israel. We read about this in Jeremiah 23: 3 - 6 as follows: ***'Then I Myself shall gather the***

remnant of My flock out of all the countries where I have driven them and shall bring them back to their pasture; and they will be fruitful and multiply. (4) I shall also raise up shepherds over them and they will tend them; and they will not be afraid any longer, nor be terrified, nor will any be missing,' declares YHVH. (5) "Behold the days are coming." Declares YHVH, 'When I shall raise up for David a righteous branch; And He will reign as king and act wisely And do justice and righteousness in the land. (6) In His days Judah will be saved, And Israel will dwell securely; And this is His name by which he will be called; 'YHVH our righteousness.'"

3. In Amos 9: 8 – 10 Israel lose contact with Elohim and are scattered, but in verses 11 and 12, their return is again linked with a restoration of a Davidic kingdom. The apostles understood these scriptures and immediately prior to Messiah ascended to heaven, they asked Him in the last part of Acts 1: 6 as follows: **"Master is it at this time You are restoring the kingdom to Israel?"**
4. In Zechariah 8: 13 we read: **'And it will come about that just as you were a curse among the nations, O house of Judah and house of Israel, so I will save you that you may become a blessing. Do not fear; let your hands be strong.'** If some of us are concerned for our children at this time, it is comforting to read Zechariah 10: 9 & 10 as follows: **"When I scatter them among the peoples, They will remember Me in far countries, And they with their children will live and come back. (10) I will bring them back from the land of Egypt, And gather them from Assyria; And I will bring them into the land of Gilead and Lebanon, Until no room can be found for them."**

However, we read (YHVH)'s warning through Hosea from Hosea 14: 2, in this way: **"Take words with you and return to YHVH. Say to Him. "Take away all iniquity, and receive us graciously, that we may present the fruit of our lips."** The prophet encourages Israel to take words, meaning Torah and to return to YHVH in repentance; to reflect on the commandments that they have transgressed; confess their sins and return to Him in obedience to His teachings. This is a call for all of modern day Israel to return to our heritage - It is time to realize that those who captured us, cannot save us, as we read from verse 3, as follows: **'Assyria will not save us, we will not ride on horses; nor will we say again, 'Our god,' to the work of our hands; for in Thee the orphan finds mercy.'** Not many years from today, the oil which we have come to rely upon so much will be depleted. The transport so essential to our economies will grind to a halt. So will all the gadgets that we came to depend on with our lives, come to and end. It is too late to turn around - even if we try to prevent it from happening. Mr. Al Gore, the man whom I believe should have become the President of the United States a few years ago, and was swindled out of victory by George Bush at that time, is doing a sterling job in trying to get world government leaders to work on a strategy, to at least try and preserve some of the blessings that we have experienced and destroyed, for our children. However, honorable as his attempts are, it is all in vain: YHVH has given mankind a period of six thousand years, to prove to ourselves that life without Him is meaningless. His plan of salvation, depicted by His annual Set-apart Days, tells us that He is about to intervene in our lives. Suddenly all of what we have become so accustomed to will disappear; we will not ride on horses, or on motorbikes, or in cars any longer. Our manmade idols will be useless, and cannot save us. Throughout the Scriptures, Elohim demands mercy for the orphan, consequently Israel is assured of His compassion.

We need to repent and return to the way of Elohim, because He is our Father and is prepared to forgive us, as we read from verses 4 to 8 of Hosea 14, in this way: **'I will heal their apostasy, I will love them freely, for My anger has turned away from them. (5) I will be like the dew to Israel; he will blossom like the lily, and he will take root like the cedars of Lebanon. (6) His shoots will sprout, and his beauty will be like the olive tree, and his fragrance like the cedars of Lebanon. (7) Those who live in his shadow will again raise grain, and they will blossom like the vine. His renown will be like the wine of Lebanon. (8) O Ephraim, what more have I to do with idols? It is I who answer and look after you. I am like a luxuriant cypress, from Me comes your fruit.'** The ultimate fulfillment of this prophecy will be millennial, since all of Israel has not repented at this time. YHVH is only calling a remnant from the lost ten tribes, scattered throughout the nations of the world, to repent and follow Him. If those of us called at this time, overcome Satan, the world and the self, we will become kings and priests under Yahshua to rule those who survive the great tribulation and live on during the millennium. Elohim's love for His people is beautifully expressed here in metaphors of the lily, the wine of the Lebanon and the olive tree. As explained in verse 8, YHVH and not idols will take care of the united Israel – He, and not Israel or Judah, is the tree providing both shelter and prosperity.

1.1 Two House Teaching in the Renewed Covenant:

Ephesians 2: 11 – 22 is considered a major two house teaching from the Renewed Covenant. We start reading from verses 11 & 12 of Ephesians 2, as follows: **"Therefore remember, that formerly you, the Gentiles in the flesh, who are called "Un-circumcision" by the so-called "Circumcision," which is**

performed in the flesh by human hands- (12) remember that you were at that time separate from Messiah, excluded from the commonwealth of Israel, and strangers to the covenants of promise (given to Abraham, Isaac and Jacob), **having no hope and without Elohim in the world.**' Before we were called out of the religions of the world, we were without Elohim in the world. The Scriptures inform us that YHVH is the One and Only Elohim, meaning that whatever most believed in before, were non-existent gods. In addition, we thought that we were Gentiles, and lived accordingly; we worshipped on Sunday and without even realizing it, we were worshipping the non existing sun god. We did not know that most of us are Israelites who lost our identity, religion and language. We read from verses 13 - 16, that whereas we were lost in the past, we have now been brought back by Yahshua, in this way: **'But now in Messiah Yahshua you who formerly were far off have been brought near by the blood of Messiah. (14) For He Himself is our peace, who made both groups** (the house of Judah and the house of Israel) **into one, and broke down the barrier of the dividing wall, (15) by abolishing in His flesh the enmity, which is the law of commandments contained in ordinances** (as per Galatians 3, Yahshua took away the curse or punishment due to law breaking, for those who become obedient - those who obey the law only reap its blessings), **that in Himself He might make the two into one new man** (the Israel of Elohim), **thus establishing peace, (16) and might reconcile them both in one body to Elohim through the cross, by it having put to death the enmity.'** Yahshua was sent to save those of us who have lost the way of Elohim, after we were dispersed among the nations. We adopted the false religious practices of the nations through which we traveled, as well of those amongst whom we live.

Continuing from verse 17 of Ephesians 2, we read: **'AND HE CAME AND PREACHED PEACE TO YOU WHO WERE FAR AWAY(us), AND PEACE TO THOSE WHO WERE NEAR** (the Jews); **(18) for through Him we both have our access in one Spirit to the Father. (19) So then you are no longer strangers and aliens, but you are fellow citizens with the saints, and are of Elohim's household, (20) having been built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Messiah Yahshua Himself being the corner stone, (21) in whom the whole building, being fitted together is growing into a holy temple in the Master; (22) in whom you also are being built together into a dwelling of Elohim in the Spirit.'**

Rav Shaul (Paul) is telling us here, that we from the lost ten tribes have by faith in the Jewish Messiah, become part of the community of Israel once again. It is our duty at this time to make our Jewish brothers jealous, by keeping the same Torah command that they are keeping, as we read from Romans 11: 11, as follows: **'I say then, they did not stumble so as to fall, did they? May it never be! But by their transgressions salvation has come to the Gentiles** (rather those Israelites from the lost ten tribes, who think that they are Gentiles, including some genuine Gentiles), **to make them jealous.'** It is as we read from the parable of the prodigal son in Luke 15: 11 – 32; we are the prodigal son who left our Father, whilst Judah remained with Him. But like we are told in the parable, as they see us returning they are becoming jealous.

1.2 What about the world to come (Olam Haba):

As mentioned earlier there are presently Jews in Israel, who know that we are part of the lost ten tribes of Israel and who are working zealously with the Israeli government in an effort to eventually allow some of us, who know that we are Israel, to return to the land. The foreword of the second edition of 'The Tribes' by Yair Davidy written by Rabbi Avraham Feld, says the following: **'We are blessed with another edition of The Tribes by Yair Davidy, where directions are given helping people find their way back home.'**

Our brother Judah in Israel is keen for us to return to full Torah observance so that we may join them and return to our homeland, but so is our Father YHVH. Ezekiel 37: 15- 28 is the most significant Scriptural passage about the re-unification of the Two Houses of Israel under the Greater David, who is Messiah Yahshua, as follows: **"The word of YHVH came again to me saying, (16) 'And you, son of man, take for yourself one stick and write on it, "For Judah and for the sons of Israel, his companions"; then take another stick and write on it, "For Joseph, the stick of Ephraim and all the house of Israel, his companions." (17) Then join them for yourself one to another into one stick, that they may become one in your hand. (18) And when the sons of your people speak to you saying, "Will you not declare to us what you mean by these?" (19) say to them, "Thus says YHVH ELOHIM, 'Behold, I will take the stick of Joseph, which is in the hand of Ephraim, and the tribes of Israel, his companions; and I will put them with it, with the stick of Judah, and make them one stick, and they will be one in My hand.'" (20) And the sticks on which you write will be in your hand before their eyes. (21) 'And say to them, "Thus says YHVH ELOHIM, 'Behold, I will take the sons of Israel from among the nations where they have gone, and I will gather them from every side and bring them into their own land; (22) and I will make them one nation in the land, on the mountains of Israel; and one king will be king for all of them; and they will no longer be two nations, and they will no longer be divided into two kingdoms. (23) And they will no longer defile themselves with their idols, or with their detestable things, or with any of their transgressions; but I will deliver them from all their dwelling places in which they have sinned, and will cleanse them. And they will be My people, and I will be their Elohim. (24) And My servant**

David will be king over them, and they will all have one shepherd; and they will walk in My ordinances, and keep My statutes, and observe them. (25) And they shall live on the land that I gave to Jacob My servant, in which your fathers lived; and they will live on it, they, and their sons, and their sons' sons, forever; and David My servant shall be their prince forever. (26) And I will make a covenant of peace with them; it will be an everlasting covenant with them. And I will place them and multiply them, and will set My sanctuary in their midst forever. (27) My dwelling place also will be with them; and I will be their Elohim, and they will be My people. (28) And the nations will know that I am YHVH who sanctifies Israel, when My sanctuary is in their midst forever.”

When reading these verses carefully, you come to the conclusion that this prophecy has yet to occur and the Two Houses of Israel have yet to be reunited. At the time of this prophesy neither the house of Judah nor the house of Israel; have returned to the Land of Israel. The Greater David, or Messiah Yahshua, is not reigning over United Israel, consisting of both houses from His throne in Jerusalem, yet. Messiah has not yet returned to earth, and Judah and Ephraim do not dwell securely in the land. All of Israel is not observing the statutes and judgments of YHVH and obeying Him like they should. The unification spoken about in Ezekiel will only occur later. However, I believe that a remnant of the two houses will also come together, to perform the role of two witnesses prior to Messiah's return.

There has been lots of speculation about the identity of the two witnesses spoken about in the Scriptures. Some believe that they will be Moses and Elijah, whilst others believe it could be Enoch and Elijah, or even John (one of Yahshua's disciples who are allegedly still walking the earth) and Elijah. However, let's see what the Scriptures have to say about this topic. Commencing in Revelation 11: 3 – 12, we read: **“And I will grant authority to my two witnesses, and they will prophesy for twelve hundred and sixty days (3½ years), clothed in sackcloth. (4) These are the two olive trees and the two lampstands that stand before YHVH of the earth. (5) And if anyone desires to harm them, fire proceeds out of their mouth and devours their enemies; and if anyone would desire to harm them, in this manner he must be killed (similar to the fire sent down by Elijah on the two arrogant captains of fifty sent by king Ahab to summon him to come and tell the king, whether he will survive his illness or not in 2 Kings 1). (6) These have the power to shut up the sky in order that rain may not fall during the days of their prophesying; and they have power over the waters to turn them into blood, and to smite the earth with every plague, as often as they desire (like the plagues unleashed by YHVH on Egypt through Moses). (7) And when they have finished their testimony, the beast that comes up out of the abyss will make war with them, and overcome them and kill them. (8) And their dead bodies will lie in the street of the great city which mystically is called Sodom and Egypt, where also their Master was crucified. (9) And those from the people and tribes and tongues and nations will look at their dead bodies for three and a half days, and will not permit their dead bodies to be laid in a tomb. (10) And those who dwell on the earth will rejoice over them and make merry; and they will send gifts to one another, because these two prophets tormented those who dwell on the earth. (11) And after the three and a half days the breath of life from Elohim came into them, and they stood on their feet; and great fear fell upon those who were beholding them. (12) And they heard a loud voice from heaven saying to them, “Come up here.” And they went up into heaven in the cloud, and their enemies beheld them.”**

We are told here that there are two witnesses, but we are not told whether they are two people, or two groups? I am of the opinion that these are two groups who will be Torah observant (or at least striving to be fully Torah observant). In addition, the second group has also recently started using the Set-apart Names of YHVH and Yahshua. The first group represents Moses, who are observing and teaching the Torah of Elohim, and the second group represents Elijah, who teaches that YHVH is our Elohim and are also moving towards full Torah observance. Both groups teach obedience to YHVH and His Torah and will for that reason be hated by the people of the world. We are admonished in Malachi 4: 4 - 6 to return to the faith of our fathers in the faith, as follows: **“Remember the law of Moses My servant, even the statutes and ordinances which I commanded him in Horeb for all Israel. (5) Behold, I am going to send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and terrible day of YHVH. (6) And he will restore the hearts of the fathers to their children, and the hearts of the children to their fathers, lest I come and smite the land with a curse.”** From the underlined section, we see that the fulfillment of this prophesy will occur just prior to and as Yahshua our Messiah returns.

Both Moses and Elijah are related to Abraham through faith: The two witnesses will be called out ones from both the 'so-called' gentiles (the Israelites who lost their identity, due to idolatry) and Jews. We read in Romans 9: 23 – 27: **‘And He did so in order that He might make known the riches of His glory upon vessels of mercy, which he prepared beforehand for glory, (24) even us, whom He also called, not from among Jews only, but also from among Gentiles. (25) As He says also in Hosea, “I WILL CALL THOSE WHO WERE NOT MY PEOPLE, ‘MY PEOPLE,’ AND HER WHO WAS NOT BELOVED, ‘BELOVED.’”(26) “AND IT SHALL BE THAT IN THE PLACE WHERE IT WAS SAID TO THEM, ‘YOU ARE NOT MY PEOPLE,’ THERE THEY SHALL BE CALLED SONS OF THE LIVING ELOHIM.” (27) And Isaiah**

cries out concerning Israel, "THOUGH THE NUMBER OF THE SONS OF ISRAEL BE AS THE SAND OF THE SEA, IT IS THE REMNANT THAT WILL BE SAVED."

Even so some modern day descendants of Israel believe that because our Jewish brothers rejected Yahshua, they are lost forever. But, we should not forget that Yahshua himself said in Matthew 15: 24, **"I was sent only to the lost sheep of the house of Israel."** This means that Yahshua came specifically to save the lost ten tribes of Israel, and not for the Jews: YHVH divorced Israel (see Jeremiah 3: 8) and even though Judah also sinned, He did not divorce them and they remained loyal to Him. Their role is primarily to preserve the oracles of Elohim, as well as the Hebrew language. The reason that YHVH has blinded them to the fact that Yahshua is the Messiah for the past 2000 years, is described in Romans 11: 1 – 12, as follows: **'I say then, Elohim has not rejected His people, has He? May it never be! For I too am an Israelite, a descendant of Abraham, of the tribe of Benjamin. (2) Elohim has not rejected His people whom He foreknew. Or do you not know what the Scripture says in the passage about Elijah, how he pleads with Elohim against Israel? (3) "YHVH, THEY HAVE KILLED THY PROPHETS, THEY HAVE TORN DOWN THINE ALTARS, AND I ALONE AM LEFT, AND THEY ARE SEEKING MY LIFE." (4) But what is the divine response to him? "I HAVE KEPT for Myself SEVEN THOUSAND MEN WHO HAVE NOT BOWED THE KNEE TO BAAL." (5) In the same way then, there has also come to be at the present time a remnant according to Elohim's gracious choice. (6) But if it is by grace, it is no longer on the basis of works, otherwise grace is no longer grace. (7) What then? That which Israel is seeking for, it has not obtained, but those who were chosen obtained it, and the rest were hardened; (8) just as it is written, "ELOHIM GAVE THEM A SPIRIT OF STUPOR, EYES TO SEE NOT AND EARS TO HEAR NOT, DOWN TO THIS VERY DAY." (9) And David says, "LET THEIR TABLE BECOME A SNARE AND A TRAP, AND A STUMBLING BLOCK AND RETRIBUTION TO THEM. (10) LET THEIR EYES BE DARKENED TO SEE NOT, AND BEND THEIR BACKS FOR EVER." (11) I say then, they did not stumble so as to fall, did they? May it never be! But by their transgression salvation has come to the Gentiles, to make them jealous. (12) Now if their transgression be riches for the world and their failure be riches for the Gentiles, how much more will their fulfillment be!"** YHVH wants both houses to repent and return to Torah so that we may once again be known as the United kingdom of Israel.

We read further in Romans 11: 15 – 21, like this **'For if their rejection be the reconciliation of the world, what will their acceptance be but life from the dead? (16) And if the first piece of dough be Set-apart, the lump is also; and if the root be Set-apart, the branches are too. (17) But if some of the branches were broken off, and you, being a wild olive, were grafted in among them and became partaker with them of the rich root of the olive tree, (18) do not be arrogant toward the branches; but if you are arrogant, remember that it is not you who supports the root, but the root supports you. (19) You will say then, "Branches were broken off so that I might be grafted in." (20) Quite right, they were broken off for their unbelief, but you stand by your faith. Do not be conceited, but fear; (21) for if Elohim did not spare the natural branches, neither will He spare you.'** The purpose of us being called at this time is to make our Jewish brothers jealous. The last thing that we can afford to do is to be arrogant. By blinding the Jews to Yahshua at this time, YHVH is calling the remnant from the lost ten tribes, so that we may provoke our Jewish brothers to jealousy, by keeping the same Torah commands that they do.

We have seen an example of what will happen to our Jewish brothers, when Yahshua returns in John 20, after His resurrection in verses 25 to 29, as follows: **'The other disciples therefore were saying to him, "We have seen the Master!" But he said to them, "Unless I shall see in His hands the imprint of the nails, and put my finger into the place of the nails, and put my hand into His side, I will not believe." (26) And after eight days again His disciples were inside, and Thomas with them. Yahshua came, the doors having been shut, and stood in their midst, and said, "Peace be with you." (27) Then He said to Thomas, "Reach here your finger, and see My hands; and reach here your hand, and put it into My side; and be not unbelieving, but believing." (28) Thomas answered and said to Him, "My Master and my Elohim!" (29) Yahshua said to him, "Because you have seen Me, have you believed? Blessed are they who did not see, and yet believed."** Yahshua did not rebuke Thomas for calling Him Elohim, instead He said that we who have not seen Him and believe that He is our Elohim, are indeed blessed.

We know that this is exactly what will happen to our Jewish brothers at Messiah's return to come and rule us from Jerusalem. We read accordingly in Zechariah 12: 9 – 14, **"And it will come about in that day that I will set about to destroy all the nations that come against Jerusalem. (10) And I will pour out on the house of David and on the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the Spirit of grace and of supplication, so that they will look on Me whom they have pierced; and they will mourn for Him, as one mourns for an only son, and they will weep bitterly over Him, like the bitter weeping over a first-born. (11) In that day there will be great mourning in Jerusalem, like the mourning of Hadadrimmon in the plain of Megiddo. (12) And the land will mourn, every family by itself; the family of the house of David by itself, and their wives by themselves; the family of the house of Nathan by itself, and their wives by themselves; (13) the family of the house of Levi by itself, and their wives by themselves; the family of the Shimeites by**

itself, and their wives by themselves; (14) all the families that remain, every family by itself, and their wives by themselves.’ This will happen on Yom Teruah (also known as Rosh Hashana), when Yahshua returns, finding our Jewish brothers observing this important Feast Day in their synagogues, with the men separate from their wives, as per their custom.

The two witnesses; one a Torah observant group and the other, a group honoring the Set-apart Names of Elohim, testify to the Oneness of Elohim, as may be read in Isaiah 43: 10 – 11, as follows: **“You are My witnesses,” declares YHVH, “And My servant whom I have chosen, In order that you may know and believe Me, And understand that I am He. Before Me there was no Elohim formed, And there will be none after Me. (11) “I, even I, am YHVH; And there is no savior besides Me.”** We as the remnant of Israel, together with the Torah observant Jews will witness that YHVH is our Elohim, that He is our savior and that there is no other god, besides Him. The two witnesses are the called out Israelites and Jews that will be preaching that YHVH is one; that His Torah is binding forever; and that He is our Savior.

At this time we are commanded by Yahshua to preach the gospel of the Kingdom of Elohim to the entire world as a witness to all nations (not to convert them), and then the end shall come, as per Matthew 24: 14. But, we need to understand, that by doing so, we will be persecuted, as explained in Matthew 24: 9 as follows: **“Then they will deliver you to tribulation, and will kill you, and you will be hated by all nations on account of My name.”** Are we prepared to die for our faith in Yahshua? We are going to be persecuted for using the name of Yahshua and for keeping the Torah of YHVH, as we read in Revelation 12: 17, **‘And the dragon (Satan) was enraged with the woman, and went off to make war with the rest of her offspring, who keep the commandments of Elohim and hold to the testimony of Yahshua.’** We are reminded that Moses recorded the Torah for us and Elijah showed Israel that YHVH is our Elohim.

According to Romans 11 we are known as an olive tree. As called out ones, it is our duty to keep the Torah teachings of YHVH to the best of our ability. We should be thankful that YHVH has at this time blinded our Jewish brothers, allowing those whom He has called from the lost ten tribes, as well as from some genuine gentile groups, to share our place in the olive tree. We are also warned in Romans 11 not to be conceited, but to fear, lest YHVH break us off as well. If we perform the function that we were called for well, then all Israel shall be saved as we read in Romans 11: 25 - 27, **‘For I do not want you, brethren, to be uninformed of this mystery, lest you be wise in your own estimation (those who believe that they have been given the authority of the Sanhedrin, to determine the Set-apart Days of YHVH, because our Jewish brothers were unfaithful), that a partial hardening has happened to Israel (talking about the Jews) until the fullness of the Gentiles (those of the lost ten tribes who have forgotten that they are Israel) has come in; (26) and thus all Israel will be saved; just as it is written, “THE DELIVERER WILL COME FROM ZION, HE WILL REMOVE UNGODLINESS FROM JACOB.”** (This is talking about Yahshua being a Jew, who removed the indebtedness, for breaking the Torah of YHVH, from both houses of Israel.) (27) **“AND THIS IS MY COVENANT WITH THEM, WHEN I TAKE AWAY THEIR SINS.”**

We read in Matthew 7: 16 – 19 that as part of the olive tree, we need to bear fruit, as follows: **“You will know them by their fruits. Grapes are not gathered from thorn bushes, nor figs from thistles, are they? (17) Even so, every good tree bears good fruit; but the bad tree bears bad fruit. (18) A good tree cannot produce bad fruit, nor can a bad tree produce good fruit. (19) Every tree that does not bear good fruit is cut down and thrown into the fire.”** We need to be serious about our calling, since we are being judged at this time, as per 1 Peter 4: 17. Revelation 11: 4 also mentions the two lampstands that stand before YHVH on the earth. Lampstands are supposed to give light. We read in Matthew 5: 14 – 16, Yahshua saying: **“You are the light of the world. A city set on a hill cannot be hidden. (15) Nor do men light a lamp, and put it under the peck-measure, but on the lampstand; and it gives light to all who are in the house. (16) Let your light shine before men in such a way that they may see your good works, and glorify your Father who is in heaven.”** Many in our faith have because of their past experience with false religions, become so inward turned, that they prefer to practice their faith in the privacy of their homes. The problem with so doing is that they do not let their lights shine before men, as Yahshua instructed.

According to Revelation 11: 6, the two witnesses will have the same powers that both Elijah and Moses had. Like Elijah, they will withhold rain during the days that they prophesy, and like Moses they will smite the earth with every plague, as often as is required. They will not be Moses and Elijah, but will be in the spirit of Moses and Elijah, and will eventually pay with their lives. This will all occur prior to the terrible day of YHVH. The two witnesses will be killed by the beast that comes out of the abyss. They will lie in the street of the city called Egypt and Sodom. I do not think that this is talking about Jerusalem. At Passover we came out of Egypt, which is a symbol of sin. Sodom is also a symbol of sin. The cities in which most Israelites dwell today are evil, and no better than Sodom was at the time of Abraham. It is for that reason that I believe the dead bodies of the two groups or two witnesses will lie in Israelite cities throughout the world. They will be killed but will be resurrected and taken up into heaven after 3½ days. They will be with the ones who had come off victorious

from the beast and from his image, standing on the sea of glass, holding harps of Elohim, mentioned in Revelation 15.

When Yahshua returns, the dead in Messiah will be resurrected as we read in Matthew 24: 29 & 30, as follows: ***“But immediately after the tribulation of those days THE SUN WILL BE DARKENED, AND THE MOON WILL NOT GIVE ITS LIGHT, AND THE STARS WILL FALL from the sky, and the powers of the heavens will be shaken, (30) and then the sign of the Son of Man will appear in the sky, and then all the tribes of the earth will mourn, and they will see the SON OF MAN COMING ON THE CLOUDS OF THE SKY with power and great glory.*** We also read in Zechariah 14, that when Elohim comes to the earth He will bring back the Set-apart ones with Him. These are the two witnesses, as well as those resurrected and changed at Messiah’s return. Continuing on in Matthew 24: 31, we read: ***“And He will send forth His angels with A GREAT TRUMPET and THEY WILL GATHER TOGETHER HIS elect from the four winds, from one end of the sky to the other.”***

The two witnesses are two groups representing Moses and Elijah, and to become part of the two witnesses we will eventually have to join our brother Judah. However, to be able to join them, we will first have to become fully Torah observant. It will be then when our Father YHVH will inform them about our return, as we read in Isaiah 66: 20 & 21, as follows: ***“Then they shall bring all your brethren from all the nations as a grain offering to YHVH, on horses, in chariots, in litters, on mules, and on camels, to My holy mountain Jerusalem,” says YHVH, “Just as the sons of Israel bring their grain offering in a clean vessel to the house of YHVH. (21) “I will also take some of them for priests and for Levites,” says YHVH.*** Here we have confirmation that those of us whom YHVH is calling out of the world at this time, may if we qualify, by overcoming our sins; returning to full Torah observance; and have faith in Yahshua, become kings and priests with our Jewish brothers, during the millennium rule of Yahshua.

Many Christians do not want to accept the fact that they are Israel and that the Jews were destined to preserve the Oracles of Elohim for all Israel, over the past 2000 years. They preserved the Hebrew language, the timing of the Sabbath, Set-apart days of Elohim and the oral Torah regarding the Koshering of food, etc. Similarly there are also some Nazarene Jews/Israelites who do not want to accept that the Rabbinical Jews of today have the Oracles of Elohim, and by so doing they contradict (or deny) the Word of Elohim. I pray that by this exposure of the identity of the Tribes of Israel, many will begin to realize the value of the Word of Elohim in their lives and will as a result determine to obey the Word of Elohim, rather than the doctrines of men.

During the millennium both houses of Israel, of those who will survive the great tribulation will come together and live together as the United Israel of Elohim. After the millennium those of the two houses of Israel who never knew Yahshua and kept Torah, will be resurrected and be shown the way of Elohim. Those who out of their own free will accept Yahshua as their savior and are willing to follow the way of Elohim, will be changed into Spiritual children of Elohim. We read from Revelation 21 & 22 when the New Jerusalem will come down to earth it will only have 12 gates; one for each of the twelve tribes of Israel. There will be no gates for the various denominations of Christianity or for any other religion for that matter. The laws applicable in the Kingdom of Elohim will be the same ones given to Moses at Mount Sinai. We will keep the Feast Days as given in Leviticus 23 and the Kosher Laws given in Leviticus 11, Deuteronomy 14, Genesis 32: 32 and Leviticus 3: 16 & 17. That will truly be the restored Israel of Elohim, otherwise known as the Kingdom of Elohim.

Fellow Israelites this is wonderful news and it seems that YHVH is calling us back to return to Him and His way in our generation. He is calling hundreds of Israelites who previously thought that they were Gentiles and have only known their G-d through the watered down faith called Christianity, to return to Him. If we heed His call, then He will restore us together with Judah to be His United Israel again. However, we will have to return fully to Torah to start this walk with our Father YHVH: We will have to keep the weekly and annual Sabbaths; eat Kosher; believe that YHVH is One and only One; call on His Name and be circumcised in both heart and flesh. It is clear from the afore-going that this is the will of our heavenly Father. Let us therefore do our small part in restoring the two Houses of Israel, which we know will only come about fully, when Yahshua returns to usher in the Kingdom of Elohim!

Most of the material about the 12 tribes of Israel used in this chapter comes from Yair Davidy’s book and web page. I believe that each and every one of us should make an in depth study of his books and the material available on his web page. Yair Davidy may be contacted at:

Brit-Am Israel, P.O. Box 595, Jerusalem. 91004. Israel. E-mail: britam@netvision.net.il

Chapter 2 - The Kings of Israel.

To fully understand why the ten tribes of Israel, became lost, we also need to consider the influence their kings had in their lives, which finally resulted in their captivity and scattering amongst the nations. Even though Saul was the first king of Israel we start with king David, because YHVH promised David, saying in 2 Samuel 7: 12 & 13, ***“When your days are complete and you lie down with your fathers, I will raise up your descendant after you, who will come forth from you, and I will establish his kingdom. (13) He shall build a house for My name, and I will establish the throne of his kingdom forever.”*** We know that verse 12 and the first part of verse 13 talks about Solomon, but according to the last part of verse 13, it would be the coming Messiah who would establish David's kingdom forever.

YHVH the Elohim of Israel called David a man after His own heart, even though we know that he was not perfect. David honestly wanted to follow the way of Elohim, but he did not always succeed. We know from the Scriptures that David committed adultery and had Uriah, Bathsheba's husband killed, by letting him fight in the front line during a fierce battle, then withdrawing all support from him. Even though David repented and asked Elohim for forgiveness, he still had to pay the penalty for his sins. YHVH punished him in different ways; the first was to cause the child born to Bathsheba to die. David was grief-stricken when the prophet Nathan informed him that Elohim was going to take the life of the child. He prayed and fasted for seven days, hoping that YHVH would change His mind and let the child live, but the child died.

Nathan also told David that YHVH will punish him in other ways as well, as we read from 2 Samuel 12: 10 – 12, in this way: ***“Now therefore, the sword shall never depart from your house, because you have despised Me and have taken the wife of Uriah the Hittite to be your wife. (11) Thus says YHVH, ‘Behold, I will raise up evil against you from your own household: I will even take your wives before your eyes, and give them to your companion, and he shall lie with your wives in broad daylight. (12) Indeed you did it secretly, but I will do this thing before all Israel, and under the sun.’”*** Later YHVH allowed David's son Absalom to rebel against him, when Absalom took over his father's throne and forced him to flee for his life. By so doing Absalom transgressed the fifth commandment, which resulted in the punishment which followed. He assembled an army to fight against his own father, but YHVH supported King David and he defeated Absalom's army. Absalom fled away on a mule through the woods, and as he rode under a giant oak tree, his hair caught in the tree branches and he hung helplessly in the air. King David instructed Joab the commander of his army to capture Absalom, but to spare his life, but Joab did not obey and killed Absalom.

When David was told about Absalom's death, he grieved for his son, because he loved his son dearly, even though Absalom was trying to kill him. This is one of Elohim's character traits that David had and which all true believers should eventually develop. King David had yet another valuable lesson that YHVH wanted him to learn. When King David was only a young boy, he trusted in YHVH when he faced and killed Goliath, but later in life, YHVH had to remind him forcefully that He is Israel's defender and deliverer. When King David numbered the men in his army, to determine the power of his kingdom. he trusted in his own arm of flesh. YHVH was not pleased with him, because he had forgotten that it was YHVH who defeated Israel's enemies and not the strength of his army. YHVH had to punish King David again, but allowed him to choose between one of three punishments. We read about the three choices that David was given in 2 Samuel 24, namely:

- 7 years of famine;
- Flee from his foes for three months; and
- 3 days pestilence in the land of Israel.

David chose the 3 days pestilence, as he did not want to fall into the hands of another man, but would rather be punished by YHVH. In this case King David, but also the nation had to learn to put their trust in YHVH, so his choice was most appropriate in this case. When he saw the effect of his choice, he responded as we read from 2 Samuel 24: 17, as follows: ***‘Then David spoke to YHVH when he saw the angel who was striking down the people, and said, “Behold, it is I who have sinned, and it is I who have done wrong; but these sheep, what have they done. Please let Thy hand be against me and against my father's house.”’*** David was willing to pay for his own sin and was also prepared to give his life so that others need not die. YHVH heard David's prayer to Him and stopped killing the people under David's rule. King David saw the angel over the threshing floor of Ornan the Jebusite, where grain was sorted out. The angel of YHVH said to Gad, King David's seer that he should buy the threshing floor from the owner and build an altar to YHVH on it. So David bought the threshing floor from Ornan for 600 shekels of gold and sacrificed burnt and peace offerings to YHVH. This is the same location on which the Temple of Elohim was later built.

It was King David's desire to build a temple to Elohim, but Elohim would not allow it, as we read from 1 Chronicles 28: 3, as follows: ***“But Elohim said to me (David), ‘You shall not build a house for My name because you are a man of war and have shed blood.’”*** Even though Elohim loved David very much, He did not want His Temple to be associated with war. The fruits of Elohim's Spirit do not include war and killing.

YHVH wanted peace and prosperity during the time that His Temple was built. Since David knew that he could not build the Temple, he stored the materials for his son, Solomon, who would build it. In this way YHVH allowed David to at least make preparations for building His Temple.

Solomon was a young man when his father died. He soon realized the enormous responsibility that was before him, when he was appointed king over the united Israel. So when YHVH appeared to him in a dream one night, YHVH told Solomon that he could have anything he asked for. We read Solomon's reply to YHVH from 1 Kings 3: 9, as follows: **"So give Thy servant an understanding heart to judge Thy people to discern between good and evil. For who is able to judge this great people of Thine?"** This was most pleasing to YHVH and we read His reply to Solomon from verses 11 & 12 of 1 Kings 3, in this way: **"Because you have asked this thing and have not asked for yourself long life, nor have asked for riches for yourself, nor have you asked for the life of your enemies, but have asked for yourself discernment to understand justice, (12) behold, I have done according to your words. Behold I have given you a wise and discerning heart, so that there has been no one like you before you, nor shall one like you arise after you."** Because of Solomon's right attitude, he did not make a selfish request and as a result YHVH did not only make him the wisest man on earth, but also the richest. In addition YHVH gave Solomon peace during his 40 year reign and promised him long life, but as we read from 1 Kings 3: 14, there was a condition to the last part of Elohim's promise, as follows: **"And if you walk in My ways, keeping My statutes and commandments, as your father David walked, then I will prolong your days."**

Solomon was not selfish at all and wanted to be able to judge the nation of Israel fairly, so that they remain happy and content. Because of his wisdom and riches his fame spread throughout the then known world. YHVH was pleased with him and renewed the promise that He had made to David, saying in 1 Kings 9: 5: **"then I will establish the throne of your kingdom over Israel forever, just as I promised to your father David, saying, 'You shall not lack a man on the throne of Israel.'" Even so, Solomon did not stay close to Elohim all his life. He had 700 wives and 300 concubines, many of whom were of different races and religions. These women turned Solomon to believe in their gods and to please his wives he built altars for them to worship their gods. Because of Solomon's sins Elohim took most of the kingdom away from his son, Rehoboam.**

YHVH used Rehoboam's lack of wisdom to bring about the punishment He promised Solomon, after his death. The people asked Rehoboam to relieve them from the extreme taxes that they had to pay during his reign. When he counseled with the old men who assisted his father Solomon, they told him that a reduction in taxes will ensure that the people will follow him. However, this did not appeal to him, so Rehoboam went to his peers for their input on the issue. They told him what he wanted to hear, saying that since he was the king, he had to show his authority in the kingdom and increase the taxes. This is similar to our modern culture today, since few young people are prepared to listen to the advice of their elders. Like Rehoboam, they rather listen to their peers, resulting in dire consequences most of the time. YHVH is our Creator and knows what is best for us and we should learn to follow His sound advice. But as we read in 1 Kings 12: 14, Rehoboam did not, as we understand from his answer to the nation, as follows: **"and he spoke to them according to the advice of the young men, saying, 'My father made your yoke heavy, but I will add to your yoke; my father disciplined you with whips, but I will discipline you with scorpions.'"**

The people of Israel revolted against Rehoboam's rule and as a direct result of this, ten of the twelve tribes of the nation chose to be ruled by a king named Jeroboam. Only Judah and Benjamin, and some of Levi, remained under Rehoboam's rule. Instead of only one nation, there were the kingdom of Judah in the south with Jerusalem as their capital, and the kingdom of Israel composed of 10 tribes in the north. These two kingdoms never united again; Jeroboam became king over the 10 tribes of Israel, but he was afraid that they will go back to Rehoboam when they had to return to Jerusalem annually, to keep the Set-apart Days of Elohim. For this reason he decided to take matters into his own hands and set up idols in two cities of his own kingdom; One was in Bethel in the south and the other in Dan in the north. In addition Jeroboam established his own festivals. He ordained feasts at the time of his own choosing (much like some believers do today) and told Israel to worship the idols he had set up. He also did not any longer use the Levites as ordained priests, but instead selected his own priests.

Elohim was not in the least pleased with Rehoboam's actions, as they were directly opposed to Elohim's commandments which stated specifically that Israel were not to have other elohim or worship idols. In addition Elohim has given whoever sits in the seat of Moses, authority to determine the annual Set-apart Day calendar⁴. Because Jeroboam caused Israel to sin, Elohim said that He would take the kingdom from him and

⁴ In Leviticus 23: 4: YHVH told Moses: **"These are the appointed times of YHVH, Set-apart convocations which you shall proclaim at the times (or seasons) appointed for them."** ; In Mathew 23: 1 & 2 Yahshua showed that the Pharisees have the authority to proclaim the times of the annual Feast Days of YHVH. Also study Romans 3: 1 - 4; Romans 9: 1 - 5; Psalm 147: 19 & 20; Nahum 1: 15; Malachi 2: 1 - 8 and Jeremiah 23: 32 - 36 & 39.

cut off all his heirs to the throne. Two years later Jeroboam's son took the throne and the prophecy that Elohim gave Jeroboam was fulfilled, all the male children of Jeroboam was eventually killed. The people of the northern kingdom of Israel soon forgot YHVH the Elohim of their fathers and followed after the false god named Baal⁵. Several kings came and went; each more wicked than the previous one. When Omri became the king over Israel, he did more evil than any king before him. However, his son Ahab was worse.

When Ahab became king over Israel, he married the daughter of the king of the Zidonians, named Jezebel. Ahab and his wife Jezebel caused Israel to sin more than before. Jezebel had all the prophets of Elohim killed and chose her own priests and prophets to serve Baal. YHVH saw the Idolatry in Israel and sent His prophet Eliyahu (Elijah) to king Ahab with a message. We read the message in 1 Kings 17: 1, as follows: ***'Now Elijah the Tishbite, who was of the settlers of Gilead, said to Ahab, "As YHVH, the Elohim of Israel lives, before whom I stand, surely there shall be neither dew nor rain these years, except by my word.'*** From that time on there was no more rain. The wells began to dry up and without water the crops failed. Soon their food became scarce and the nation of Israel was feeling Elohim's punishment.

At this time Elijah had to trust Elohim for his food. YHVH sent Elijah to stay with a certain widow and her son. When he arrived the woman was making a fire to cook the last meal for her and her son. Elijah called the widow asking her to bring him water in a jar to drink. He also asked for a piece of bread to eat. We read in 1 Kings 17: 12 ***'But she said, "As YHVH your Elohim lives, I have no bread, only a handful of flour in the bowl and a little oil in a jar; and behold, I am gathering a few sticks that I may go in and prepare for me and my son, that we may eat it and die."*** We see Elijah's answer to her in verse 13 & 14, as follows: ***"Do not fear; go, do as you have said, but make me a little bread cake from it first, and bring it out to me, and afterward you may make one for yourself and for your son, (14) For thus says YHVH Elohim of Israel, 'The bowl of flour shall not be exhausted, nor shall the jar of oil be empty, until the day that YHVH sends rain on the face of the earth.'*** The widow trusted Elohim and did as Elijah asked and the flour and oil lasted until the end of the drought. Three years later Elijah went back to Ahab to tell him that the drought was over. Elohim was going to send rain, but He first wanted king Ahab to know that He was the true Elohim.

Elijah initially feared that Ahab would kill him if he saw him again. But we read in 1 Kings 18: 18 & 19 what Elijah said to Ahab when he saw him: ***'And he said, "I have not troubled Israel, but you and your father's house have, because you have forsaken the commandments of YHVH, and have followed the Baals. (19) Now then send and gather to me all Israel at Mount Carmel, together with 450 prophets of Baal and 400 prophets of the Asherah who eat at Jezebel's table."*** The time came and both the prophets of Elohim and those of Baal stood in the sight of Israel. Elijah stepped forward and challenged Ahab and all the people, as we read in the second part of 1 Kings 18: 21, as follows: ***"How long will you hesitate between two opinions? If YHVH is Elohim, follow Him; but if Baal, follow him."*** But the people did not answer him a word.' Then Elijah had the people bring two bullocks to offer for a sacrifice. One he gave to the prophets of Baal, and the other he kept to offer to YHVH the true Elohim. Each side had to prepare an altar and sacrifice the animal, but they were not allowed to set fire to it. The god who answered by fire to consume the sacrifice would be known as the only true Elohim.

Baal's prophets began to cry out to their pagan god, from early in the morning until evening, but there was no answer. We read in 1 Kings 18: 27 how Elijah mocked the people calling for Baal, saying: ***"Call out with a loud voice, for he is a god; either he is occupied or gone aside, or is on a journey, or perhaps he is asleep and needs to be awakened."*** So they cried with a loud voice and cut themselves according to their custom with swords and lances until blood gushed out of them. But all their efforts were in vain. That evening when it was time for the evening sacrifice, Elijah began to prepare his sacrifice to Elohim. He prepared the altar, carefully placing 12 stones, one for each tribe of Israel. Then He put the animal on the wood which he put on the altar. He next dug a trench around the altar and had four barrels of water poured over the animals and the wood. He poured water over the altar three more times, until the whole altar and sacrifice were soaked.

Elijah prayed to YHVH and we see in 1 Kings 18: 38 that He responded, as follows: ***'Then the fire of YHVH fell, and consumed the burnt offering and the wood and the stones and the dust, and licked up the water that was in the trench.'*** When the people saw it, they fell on their faces, saying (in verse 39): ***'YHVH, He is Elohim; YHVH, He is Elohim.'*** Elijah had the prophets of Baal killed and as YHVH promised it soon began to rain. If you think that this strong witness would have moved Ahab and Jezebel to serve YHVH, it did not! Instead Jezebel send people to have Elijah killed. Elijah fled for his life. Eventually he became very despondent and tired of running and hiding. He felt all alone and was at the point to give up. This is when

⁵A dictionary definition of Baal is: A deity worshipped among the Canaanites and supposed to represent the sun. A deity still worshipped (be it unknowingly) by those who keep Sunday, Xmas and Easter.

YHVH came to Elijah to encourage him. He gave Elijah food to eat and told him that there were still 7,000 in Israel who worship Him.

However, Ahab refused to follow YHVH. Next to the palace was a vineyard, which belonged to a man called Naboth. Ahab offered Naboth money for the vineyard, but Naboth would not sell it to Ahab, as it was part of his inheritance. Ahab was very sorry for himself, because he could not get the vineyard. Jezebel came to hear about this and devised a plan to get the vineyard. She ordered men to give an evil report against Naboth. The people believed the lies and stoned Naboth to death. Jezebel then gave the vineyard to Ahab, telling him how she obtained it. Ahab did not correct Jezebel for the evil deed. He took Naboth's vineyard. When Elijah approached Ahab, he knew that he was in trouble. Elijah gave Ahab a message from Elohim, telling him that all his children would be killed and Jezebel his wife would be eaten by dogs at the gate of Jezreel (as per 1 Kings 21: 20 – 24). Upon hearing this Ahab humbled himself. He sinned greatly, but Elohim showed compassion on him and said that he would only fulfill the prophecy after Ahab's death. Soon afterwards Ahab went to war against Syria and was killed.

King Ahaziah, Ahab's son became ill shortly after he began to rule. He wondered whether he would get well again. So he decided to ask a prophet for the answer. Instead of asking a prophet of Elohim, he sent messengers to inquire of Baal-zubub, the god of Ekron, to see if he would be healed. The reason Ahaziah inquired of a false god was that his prophets would tell him what he wanted to hear. YHVH told Elijah what Ahaziah had done. Elijah went to the messengers saying (as is recorded in 2 Kings 1: 3): ***'Is it because there is no Elohim in Israel that you are going to inquire of Baal-zebub, the god of Ekron?'*** Elijah told the messengers to go and tell the king that he would die of his sickness. King Ahaziah did not like the answer and sent his captains of 50 to bring Elijah to him. The captain went as Ahaziah ordered him and approached Elijah. However, the captain did not show the proper respect due to a prophet of Elohim and fire came down from heaven and consumed him and his men. So the king sent another captain of 50 to Elijah, but again the same thing happened. A third time the king sent a captain and his 50 men to Elijah. This time the captain came with a different attitude. We read in 2 Kings 1: 13, ***'When the third captain of fifty went up, he came and bowed down on his knees before Elijah, and begged him and said to Him, "O man of Elohim, please let my life and the lives of these fifty servants of yours be precious in your sight.'*** This captain did not give Elijah orders, but showed the proper respect. The captain's life was spared and Elijah went with him to deliver his message personally to the king. Soon after, the king died of his sickness.

Israel would not obey the prophets that YHVH sent to them. Instead they continued in their idolatry. The prophets had warned and now YHVH was going to act. As in the past YHVH used other nations to punish Israel. This time YHVH used the nation of Assyria to punish Israel. The Assyrians lived north of Israel. Israel had been paying taxes to Sennacherib, king of Assyria. Much of Israel had already been conquered and the kingdom was weak. The king ruling in Israel at this time was Hoshea. Hoshea went to Egypt for help against Assyria, instead of going to YHVH. The Assyrians attacked Israel and destroyed their cities. They took the people of Israel captive and moved the nation of Israel to far distant countries. Over time the Israelites lost their identity, their language and their culture and became known as the lost tribes of the house of Israel.

After Rehoboam, Judah also had a number of kings. Some of their kings were good and some evil. After the last king in Judah, namely King Josiah died, Judah returned to its evil ways, and YHVH allowed King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon to attack Jerusalem. His army broke down the city walls and destroyed the city, including the Temple that Solomon built; The Babylonians took the nation of Judah captive to Babylon in 586 BCE, where they remained for 70 years. However, the Babylonians did not attempt to take away the identity of the Jews. They retained their language, culture and Laws and after 70 years, the king of Persia, named Cyrus allowed them to return to their homeland, to rebuild the Temple.

There are many Nazarene Jews/Israelites and likeminded believers today, who insist that the USA is the latter day Babylon. But as explained earlier, the USA is Manasseh. Nevertheless, like their namesake Manasseh one of the kings of Judah, who did much evil and spilled much innocent blood during his rule, modern day Manasseh will as a result of their decisions regarding the division of the land of the modern day nation of Israel in the middle east; as well as their recent implementation of a National Health Scheme, where every American pays for the nations health benefits and becomes responsible for those who want abortions on demand, suffer dire consequences. We read from 2 Kings 21: 3 - 7 that Manasseh build altars for Baal, and like modern day America, a leader of nations, worshipped Astarte and offered his own son to Molog; a hollow god made from copper. The victim is offered by putting him in the arms of Molog, whilst a fire is made in the hollow statue. Jewish history, describes this time of Manasseh's rule, as a terrorist government.

Similar to the banning of the title G-d in Law courts and public Schools in America today, the name of YHVH was removed from all public notices as well as from all Scriptures, before the nation of Judah also went into captivity. Many worshippers including the prophets of YHVH were killed during Manasseh's time. We read how Isaiah's life came to an end at the age of ninety years, when he was sawn into pieces according to the

Talmud, as confirmed in Hebrews 11: 37 & 38, as follows: ***'They were stoned, they were sawn in two, they were tempted, they were put to death with the sword; they went about in sheepskins, in goatskins, being destitute, afflicted, ill treated (38) (men of whom the world was not worthy), wandering in deserts and mountains and caves and holes in the ground.'*** It is clear from a number of Scriptures that the sins of Manasseh was the direct cause of the captivity of Judah, as may be seen by reading from 2 Kings 23: 26, in this way: ***'However, YHVH did not turn from the fierceness of His great wrath with which His anger burned against Judah, because all the provocations with which Manasseh had provoked Him.'*** This is confirmed in 2 Kings 24: 3 & 4, as follows: ***'Surely at the command of YHVH it came upon Judah, to remove them from His sight because of the sins of Manasseh, according to all that he had done, (4) and also for the innocent blood which he shed, for he filled Jerusalem with innocent blood; and YHVH would not for give him.'*** Because of the duality principle that runs throughout the Scriptures, those who say that the USA is modern day Babylon, fail to see that because of the sins of modern day Manasseh who is supposed to be a world leader, latter day Judah and Israel, will again be taken into captivity. By them leading the rest of Israel into sin, they will be the direct cause of the coming tribulation, which has already started, when the whole world was adversely affected by the recession resulting from the mismanagement of the economy in the USA.

Chapter 3 - Which is the one faith spoken about in Scriptures?

Yahshua our Messiah never started a 'church'⁶, as a second group of called-out believers. The original ecclesia or congregation of called-out believers were established in the wilderness of Sinai, as we are told in Acts 7: 38, in this way: ***"This is the one who was in the congregation in the wilderness together with the angel who was speaking to him on Mount Sinai, and who was with our fathers; and he received living oracles to pass on to you."*** Yahshua primarily came to restore the people of Israel as attested by Him in Matthew 15: 24, where He said: ***"I was sent only to the lost sheep of the house of Israel."*** We read further in Acts 1, where Yahshua's disciples questioned Him about the restoration of the kingdom of Israel (which in effect also means the Kingdom of Elohim), after His resurrection in verses 6 – 8, as follows: ***'And so when they had come together, they were asking Him, saying, "Master, is it at this time You are restoring the kingdom of Israel?" (7) He said to them, "It is not for you to know times or epochs which the Father has fixed by His own authority; (8) but you shall receive power when the Set-apart Spirit has come upon you; and you shall be My witnesses both in Jerusalem, and in all Judea and Samaria, and even to the remotest part of the earth."*** The lost ten tribes also referred as Ephraim in the Scriptures are presently being called out from the religions of the world to return from their exile. Together with Judah they will again become the Israel of Elohim, under the leadership of Yahshua, once they all come to believe in Him.

When we answer the call to follow Yahshua, we should start following Him from that day forward. But, many have a variety of reasons for not doing so immediately, or to follow Him on their own terms. We read an example of this from Matthew 8: 19 - 22, as follows: ***'And a certain scribe came and said to Him, "Teacher, I will follow You wherever You go."*** (20) ***And Yahshua said to him, "The foxes have holes, and the birds of the air have nests; but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay His head."*** Yahshua was saying that He did not have a place or religion on the earth where He is presently welcome: Christianity preaches about another savior, who came to abolish His Father's laws; Ishmael preaches about another god and Judaism will only accept Him at His return. We should therefore not look back at the religions of the world where most of us come from. In fact, we should not be deterred by anything, as may be understood from the answer that Yahshua gave a disciple in verses 21 & 22, in this way: ***'And another of the disciples said to Him, "Master, permit me first to go and bury my father."*** (22) ***But Yahshua said to him, "Follow Me; and allow the dead to bury their own dead."*** Talking about those who follow a false Messiah, as well as those who among us who base their faith on the doctrines of men rather than the Word of Elohim⁷, Yahshua said in John 5: 43 & 44, ***'I have come in My Father's name (YHVH), and you do not receive Me; if another (talking about those who follow leaders who decide for themselves, when and how to serve Elohim) shall come in his own name, you will receive him. (44) How can you believe, when you receive glory (honor and fame) from one another, and you do not seek the glory that is from the one and only Elohim? YHVH has not forgotten the lost ten tribes of the house of Israel, as we are assured in Jeremiah 31: 20, as follows: "'Is Ephraim My dear son? Is he a delightful child? Indeed, as often as I have spoken against him, I certainly still remember him, Therefore My heart yearns for him; I will surely have mercy on him," declares YHVH.'***

We read about Elohim's great purpose with Messiah from Ephesians 2: 11 - 22, as follows: ***'Therefore remember, that formerly you, the Gentiles in the flesh, who are called "Un-circumcision" by the so-called "Circumcision," which is performed in the flesh by human hands- (12) remember that you were at that time separate from Messiah, excluded from the commonwealth of Israel, and strangers to the covenants of promise (given to Abraham, Isaac and Jacob), having no hope and without Elohim in the world. (13) But now in Messiah Yahshua you who formerly were far off have been brought near by the blood of Messiah. (14) For He Himself is our peace, who made both groups into one, and broke down the barrier of the dividing wall, (15) by abolishing in His flesh the enmity, which is the law of commandments contained in ordinances, that in Himself He might make the two into one new man, thus establishing peace, (16) and might reconcile them both in one body to Elohim through the cross, by it having put to death the enmity. (17) AND HE CAME AND PREACHED PEACE TO YOU WHO WERE FAR AWAY(us), AND PEACE TO THOSE WHO WERE NEAR (the Jews); (18) for through Him we both have our access in one Spirit to the Father.(19) So then you are no longer strangers and aliens, but you are fellow citizens with the saints, and are of Elohim's household, (20) having been built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Messiah Yahshua Himself being the corner stone, (21) in***

⁶ The word church is according to C J Koster's book: "Come out of her My people", traced back to the Anglo-Saxon root, namely Circe. This same book tells us that Circe was the goddess-daughter of the mythological Sun-god, Helios. The word Circe is related to circle, as well as circus. The Old English word Circe was pronounced as Kirke. The word church is known in Scotland as Kirk, in German as Kirche, and in Dutch as Kerk meaning a building, where religious services are conducted. The Hebrew word qahal means an assembly or congregation and the Greek word ekklesia means an assembly of called-out ones. The word 'church' is therefore a mistranslation in most Bibles. Neither the Hebrew word qahal nor the Greek word Ekklesia means a building or church.

⁷ We read from Proverbs 21: 16, "A man who wanders from the way of understanding will rest in the assembly of the dead."

whom the whole building, being fitted together is growing into a holy temple in the Master; (22) in whom you also are being built together into a dwelling of Elohim in the Spirit.' Yahshua came, so that the two houses may be united again, but also to reconcile us to the Father.

Yahshua employed a method of teaching, which He taught His disciples and by implication us His modern day disciples to follow. We see in the first four books of the Renewed Covenant, that Yahshua taught in the Temple courts and synagogues during the weekly and annual Sabbaths. Like John the Immerser⁸, Yahshua was a first century Rabbi and used the Rabbi-disciple method of teaching Torah and the knowledge of Elohim to His disciples. This method of teaching was originally instituted by Moses, when he taught Joshua. The teachers of each generation were delegated to raise-up disciples and future teachers for the next generation. The purpose of a first century Rabbi like Yahshua, dedicated to teaching the Torah or teachings of Elohim, was to explain the Torah in practical terms and to convey the knowledge of Elohim to future generations.

Like other Rabbis before Him, Yahshua raised-up disciples who would later become teachers, to immerse and teach new believers or disciples to observe all that their Master taught and commanded them. Yahshua raised-up many disciples during His ministry of three and a half years. He raised-up the original twelve disciples and many others who were immersed by the apostles after His resurrection and ascension to heaven. This is also the commission that Yahshua gave His disciples after His resurrection in Matthew 28: 18 – 20, as follows: **'And Yahshua came up and spoke to them, saying, "All authority has been given to Me in heaven and on earth. Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations, immersing them in the name (singular) of the Father and the Son and the Set-apart Spirit, teaching them to observe all that I commanded you; and lo I am with you always, even to the end of the age."**' Because we are the modern day students or disciples of Yahshua, we should continue to follow our Master Yahshua, in the same methodology.

This methodology of teaching/studying Torah ensures that there will always be people who will teach new generations, and that the knowledge of Elohim and His Torah would not be lost. Without teachers we will continue to stumble as we read in Romans 10: 13 & 14: **'for "WHOEVER WILL CALL UPON THE NAME OF YHVH WILL BE SAVED."** (14) **How then shall they call upon Him in whom they have not believed? And how shall they believe in Him whom they have not heard? And how shall they hear without a preacher?'** Following Yahshua and His discipleship program, we will know and trust our teachers, as they will have been trained by others in the faith before them. As a result, we will not easily be lead astray by people who did not go through the same training program themselves. Self study is essential, but it is certain that even if you read the Scriptures through many times, without guidance you will not understand much, on your own. This is described in Isaiah 28: 9 – 13, in this way: **"To whom would He teach knowledge? And to whom would He interpret the message? Those just weaned from milk? Those just taken from the breast? (10) "For He says, 'Order on order, order on order, Line on line, line on line, A little here, a little there.' (11) Indeed, He will speak to this people Through stammering lips and a foreign tongue, (12) He who said to them, "Here is rest, give rest to the weary," And, "Here is repose," but they would not listen. (13) So the word of YHVH to them will be, "Order on order, order on order, Line on line, line on line, A little here, a little there," That they may go and stumble backward, be broken, snared, and taken captive."** Without teachers we will go back into captivity where we came from. After our immersion into Yahshua's saving Name, we need to grow in grace and knowledge (as we read in 2 Peter 3: 18), else we will be backsliding.

As prophesied in Jeremiah 16: 19, we need to repent from being deceived, into believing the falsehood that we were taught in the past, in this way: **'O YHVH, my strength and my stronghold, And my refuge in the day of distress, To Thee the nations will come From the ends of the earth and say, "Our fathers have inherited nothing but falsehood, Futility and things of no profit."**' Yes, knowing the truth is profitable for us; It is for our own good and will set us free. The point is YHVH has an educational system and He calls people who obey Him: YHVH does not reveal His teachings to those who refuse to cooperate with Him. In addition He does not exalt a novice who may use His education unwisely.

However, there are those who set themselves up outside of the education system of Elohim, being deceived themselves, and deceiving new-comers in our faith, to be enslaved into falsehood once again. They are simply agents of Satan, who try to mislead believers in Messiah. Yahshua warned that this deception will be widespread as we read from Matthew 24: 11, as follows: **"And many false prophets will arise and will mislead many."** In fact the identity of these false teachers are given in 2 Corinthians 11: 13 - 15, as follows: **'For such men are false apostles, deceitful workers, disguising themselves as apostles of Messiah. (14) And no wonder, for even Satan disguises himself as an angel of light. (15) Therefore it is not surprising if his servants also disguise themselves as servants of righteousness; whose end shall be according to their deeds.'** This deception to win converts to help teaching falsehood will continue right up to

⁸ Yes John the Immerser was a Rabbi, and called so by his disciples, as may be read in John 3: 26.

the time when Yahshua will return, as we read in Matthew 24: 24, like this: **“For false Messiahs and false prophets will arise and will show great signs and wonders, so as to mislead, if possible, even the elect.”** Even so, we are told by Yahshua that despite all this deception, we need to continue to proclaim the Gospel of the Kingdom of Elohim in verse 14 of Matthew 24, as follows: **“And this gospel of the kingdom shall be preached in the whole world for a witness to all nations, and then the end shall come.”**

Satan is a master counterfeiter and has taken every doctrine to be found in the word of Elohim and changed it only ever so slightly to make it into a counterfeit of the original. Have you ever seen counterfeit money? Are you able to recognize counterfeit money when you see it? Some counterfeits are so close to the original, that it takes an expert to detect that it is a counterfeit. Satan being the master counterfeiter is able to make a counterfeit to look so close to the real thing that most people are not able to detect it. There are many false teachings in modern Christianity and other religions about Satan the devil: Some say that he is merely the embodiment of all that is evil, and not a real being; Others believe that Satan appears as a red monster with horns, a tail and a pitchfork, but is that the truth? The Scriptures reveal that Satan is the god of this present world, as we read from 2 Corinthians 4: 4 as follows: **“in whose case the god of this world has blinded the minds of the unbelieving, that they might not see the light of the gospel of the glory of Messiah, who is the image of Elohim”**

In an attempt to defeat Messiah, Satan claimed in Luke 4: 6 **“I will give you all this domain and its glory; for it has been handed over to Me, and I give it to whomever I wish. Therefore if you worship before Me, it shall be yours.”** The present world belongs to Satan - If he made this statement falsely, Messiah would certainly have told him so. However, Yahshua did not refute Satan's claim about the kingdoms of this world, instead, He rebuked him verse 8, saying: **“It is written, ‘You SHALL WORSHIP YHVH YOUR ELOHIM AND SERVE HIM ONLY.’”** In Mathew 7: 13 Yahshua warned His disciples, saying: **“Enter by the narrow gate; for the gate is wide, and the way is broad that leads to destruction, and many are those who enter by it.”** Yahshua told his disciples that the majority of mankind would be misled to follow the easy broad way – the way to destruction. We read a second witness in Matthew 24: 5, **“For many will come in My name, saying, ‘I am the Messiah, and will mislead many.’”** According to Ephesians 2: 2 Satan is also known as the prince of the power of the air – He continually broadcasts his deception into the minds of those who are tuned into his ways. After Satan and his angels attempted to take over the throne of Elohim in the third heaven, they were thrown down to Earth. We read Yahshua's report in this regard in Luke 10: 18, in this way: **‘And He said to them, “I was watching Satan fall from heaven like lightning.”’**

In Isaiah 14: 12 (KJV) Satan was called Lucifer, son of the morning before his fall, but today he is known as Satan and his angels are now known as demons. The question on our lips is: How did Satan become the god of this world? Many people have falsely assumed that the devil is the god of this world against Elohim's will, but we read from 1 John 5: 19, **‘We know that we are of Elohim, and the whole world lies in the power of the evil one.’**

Before Satan's rebellion, he was perfect in all his ways (as recorded in Ezekiel 28: 12 – 15). Satan a spirit being, sinned with full knowledge and can therefore not repent. In Luke 20: 36 Yahshua said that angels cannot die and Satan as a spirit being, even though he is a fallen angel is also immortal. The Scriptures refer to angels as stars in Revelation 1: 20. Satan and his angels sinned and they are now known as fallen angels (demons) or wandering stars as may be seen in Jude 13, as follows: **“wild waves of the sea, casting up their own shame like foam, wondering stars, for whom the black darkness has been reserved forever.”** Satan and his demons will be tormented day and night forever. Their torment will essentially be the fact of knowing what they've had before their rebellion against the Most High, and what they lost.

3.1 Doctrine of the great controversy between YHVH and Satan:

Most people have mistakenly followed one of Satan's great false doctrines; i.e. that there is a great controversy between YHVH and Satan. This doctrine assumes that Satan is much more powerful than YHVH our Elohim; Despite all the work that the missionary workers have done throughout the past centuries, we must admit that, there appear to be far more human souls 'lost' than what there are 'saved'. Considering the so-called contest between YHVH and Satan, we must concede that YHVH seems to be on the losing side, as it is clear that most people are totally bogged down by sin, today. It raises the question: If YHVH our Elohim is OMNIPOTENT, why have so few people who ever lived during the past ages heard the good news of salvation? Is this doctrine of Satan true? The answer may be found in Romans 11: 32, as follows: **“For YHVH has shut them all up to disobedience, in order to have compassion on all.”**

According to Elohim's plan of salvation, depicted by His annual Set-apart Days, there will be two resurrections or harvests of souls. This is similar to the harvest periods in the Land of Israel. The first harvest in the Land of Israel is a smaller harvest and takes place at the end of Spring close to the Feast of Weeks (or Shavuot), and is also known as the harvest of the first fruits. The second harvest which is much bigger takes

place during autumn or the fall season, after the Feast of Tabernacles. Accordingly the first resurrection is for those people who are called during this age to be a kind of first fruits. Those who make it into the first resurrection will become first fruits unto YHVH and will be made into the Spiritual sons and daughters of Elohim. We read fittingly from Revelation 20: 6 **'Blessed and holy is the one who has a part in the first resurrection; over these the second death has no power, but they will be priests to Elohim and of Messiah and will reign with Him for a thousand years.'**

But before we think that YHVH called us because we are so clever, let us remind ourselves of the facts recorded for us in 1 Corinthians 1: 26 – 31, in this way: **'For consider your calling brethren, that there were not many wise according to the flesh, not many mighty, not many noble; (27) but Elohim has chosen the foolish things of the world to shame the wise, and Elohim has chosen the weak things of the world to shame the things which are strong, (28) and the base things of the world and the despised, Elohim has chosen, the things that are not that He might nullify the things that are, (29) that no man should boast before Elohim. (30) But by His doing you are in Yahshua, who became to us wisdom from Elohim, and righteousness and sanctification, and redemption, (31) that, just as it is written, 'LET HIM WHO BOASTS, BOAST IN YHVH.'**

The second harvest of souls will occur after the millennium rule of Yahshua Messiah, as it says in the last part of Revelation 20: 4 and in verse 5: **"and they came to life and reigned with Messiah for a thousand years. (5) The rest of the dead did not come to life until the thousand years were completed."** At this time, YHVH is calling out first fruits to assist Yahshua to rule the earth during the Millennium and onto eternity. The majority of blinded people, who lived and died throughout the ages, will be brought back to life during the Great White Throne Judgment. At that time YHVH will call them to spiritual understanding and will fill those who are willing with His Set-apart Spirit. He will grant them salvation in His kingdom. Those not willing to serve Him from the heart will be burnt to ashes, together with the wicked ones who sinned willfully after being called, during this age. The point is, even if we tell the truth to someone who does not understand it, Satan comes and snatches away what is sown in his heart, as we read from Matthew 13: 19 and 2 Corinthians 4: 3 & 4.(more about this later)

3.2 Doctrine of the immortality of the soul:

Satan introduced the doctrine that man has an immortal soul to Eve, when he spoke to her in Genesis 3: 4 as follows: **'And the serpent said to the woman, "You surely shall not die!"'** He did this despite the fact that YHVH told Adam in Genesis 2: 17 **"but from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil you shall not eat, for in the day that you eat from it you shall die."** Many believe that since Adam and Eve did not die during the first day after eating of the forbidden fruit that YHVH lied to them. However, we should not forget that according to 2 Peter 3: 8, one day is like a thousand years to YHVH, like this: **"But do not let this one fact escape your notice, beloved, that with YHVH one day is as a thousand years, and a thousand years as one day."** We also know according to The Scriptures in Genesis 5: 5 **"So all the days that Adam lived were nine hundred and thirty years, and he died."** The question therefore is: Who was the liar here? It was the father of lies, namely Satan. Induced by Satan's lies and temptation Adam and Eve sinned and ever since that time all human beings have sinned and fall short of Elohim's esteem. As a result death spread to all mankind through the sins of our first parents. YHVH allowed all of mankind to be led into sin by Satan, thus allowing us to see for ourselves where a life of sin leads us. We read from the first part of Romans 6: 23 that **'the wages of sin is death.'** So contrary to Satan's lie, that after disobeying YHVH our forefathers would not die, people started dying.

3.3 Doctrine that good people go to heaven and the unsaved and wicked people go to hell:

Satan has succeeded in selling his own aspirations as well as his final destination to his deceived audience, as their most important teaching. Satan wanted to go to heaven to take over Elohim's throne in rebellion, as we read from Isaiah 14: 13 & 14 as follows: **"But you said in your heart, 'I will ascend to heaven; I will raise my throne above the stars of Elohim, and will sit on the mount of assembly in the recesses of the north. I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will make myself like the Most High.'"** Christianity, Moslems, Hindus and other religions believe that 'good' people go to heaven, beholding the face of Elohim for all eternity, at the time of their death. The question is: Do you believe that you are going either to heaven or to hell when you die one day? Are those the options open to you? Many believers, even their teachers, pastors, and elders have been deceived to believe this false doctrine.

Are they correct in believing this doctrine, which is nowhere to be found in The Scriptures? Or are they simply deceived regarding this very important matter? We read from Revelation 12: 9, **'And the great dragon was thrown down, the serpent of old who is called the devil and Satan, who deceives the whole world; he was thrown down to earth, and his angels were thrown down with him.'** Have you ever considered this statement carefully? Is it possible for Satan to have deceived all the inhabitants of the earth? How is this

possible? Do you realize that most of the doctrines taught by most religions of the world, including Christianity are the exact opposite of what the word of Elohim teaches?

Do you know that Yahshua himself said in John 3: 13: **“(And) no one has ascended into heaven, but He who descended from heaven, even the Son of Man.”** Do you believe Yahshua the Word of Elohim, who became flesh? But, I hear you asking: is our father Abraham not in heaven? What about David? We read in the faith chapter in the Renewed Covenant in Hebrews 11: 8 – 10, **‘By faith Abraham, when he was called, obeyed by going out to a place which he was to receive for an inheritance; and he went out, not knowing where he was going. (9) By faith he lived as an alien in the land of promise, as in a foreign land, dwelling in tents with Isaac and Jacob, fellow heirs of the same promise; (10) for he was looking for the city which has foundations, whose architect and builder is Elohim.’** But these our fathers in the faith did not receive what they were promised. We read accordingly in verses 39 & 40 of Hebrews 11, **‘And all these, having gained approval through their faith, did not receive what was promised, (40) because Elohim had promised something better for us, so that apart from us they should not be made perfect.’** We read the same thing about king David, in Acts 2: 26, 34 & 35, Rav Kepha (Peter), saying: **“Brethren, I may confidently say to you regarding the patriarch David that he both died and was buried, and his tomb is with us to this day. (34) For it was not David who ascended into heaven, but he himself says: ‘YHVH SAID TO MY MASTER (or MarYah in Aramaic), “SIT AT MY RIGHT HAND, (35) UNTIL I MAKE THINE ENEMIES A FOOTSTOOL FOR THY FEET.””** The question is: Do you believe in the resurrection of the dead? If you do then why do you want to go to heaven - if Yahshua is coming back to resurrect the dead?

Nevertheless, some hold that Yahshua was teaching that up to the time that He was resurrected and ascended to heaven, no one ascended to heaven. Afterwards all those who were kept in Abraham’s bosom went up to heaven (something they imagine Yahshua to have taught in the parable of Lazarus and the rich man). However, what did Elohim promise Abraham? He did not promise Abraham and his children an abode in heaven, did He? We read about the promise in Genesis 17: 7 - 8 as follows: **“And I will establish My covenant between Me and you and your descendants after you throughout their generations for an everlasting covenant, to be Elohim to you and to your descendants after you. (8) And I will give to you and to your descendants after you, the land of your sojournings, all the land of Canaan, for an everlasting possession; and I will be their Elohim.”** The land of Canaan is on earth and not in heaven. Abraham’s seed through faith in Messiah is therefore promised to inherit the land of Canaan and not everlasting life in heaven.

What about Elijah? The Scriptures clearly show that Elijah was taken up into heaven. However, I would like to point out that there are three heavens mentioned in The Scriptures. The first is the atmosphere surrounding earth to a depth of about forty miles, in the lower part of which birds fly and we read about it in Genesis 1: 20, in this way: **‘Then Elohim said, “Let the waters teem with swarms of living creatures, and let birds fly above the earth in the open expanse of the heavens.”’** The second heaven is the space of the whole universe, the starry expanse that is billions and billions of miles across, spoken about in Genesis 1: 14 – 16, as follows: **‘Then Elohim said, “Let there be lights in the expanse of the heavens to separate the day from the night, and let them be for signs and for seasons, and for days and years; (15) and let them be for lights in the expanse of the heavens to give light on the earth; and it was so. (16) And Elohim made the two great lights, the greater light to govern the day, and the lesser light to govern the night; He made the stars also.’** A second witness to this is given in Ezekiel 32: 8, **‘All the shining lights in the heavens I will darken over you and will set darkness on your land, declares YHVH Elohim.’** The third heaven is the unseen place or throne from which Elohim controls the whole universe, as we read from Isaiah 66: 1, in this way: **‘Thus says YHVH, “Heaven is My throne, and the earth is My footstool. Where then is a house you could build for Me? And where is a place that I may rest?’** We read further about it from 2 Corinthians 12: 2, as follows: **‘I know a man in Messiah who fourteen years ago – whether in the body I do not know, or out of the body I do not know, Elohim knows – such a man was caught up to the third heaven.’** Deuteronomy 10: 14 and Psalm 148: 4 refers to it as *‘the highest heaven’*; and Ephesians 4: 10 refers to it, as *‘above all the heavens’*.

The first heaven, or atmosphere, is the one into which Elijah was taken. We live and move in it (that heaven), inasmuch as we need oxygen (or air) to breath. Elijah was taken up to a high altitude, but still remained in the first heaven. He was taken from his previous dwelling in Israel, but he did not die at that time. He was taken to a place where he was not known, to peacefully live out the rest of his life there. Even so, Elijah kept in touch with the happenings both in Israel and Judah. Four years after his departure, when Jehoram, an evil man was king of Judah, Elijah wrote to Jehoram, warning him that he would soon become diseased and die because of the terrible things he had done, as we read from 2 Chronicles 21: 12, like this: **‘Then a letter came to him from Elijah the prophet saying, “Thus says YHVH Elohim of your father David, “Because you have not walked in the ways of Jehoshaphat your father and the ways of Asa king of Judah.’** Some Bible commentaries try to hide this fact, by writing that Elijah must have written this letter before he went to ‘heaven’. We are not told in the Scriptures how long did Elijah live after sending this letter, but we will

one day be able to ask him personally, when he is resurrected at Yahshua's return. That is when all of those who were called-out of the world at this time, and who qualified will be resurrected and be taken into the clouds or the first heaven, to meet Yahshua coming down from the third heaven to rule earth for a thousand years.

Satan inspired this doctrine that good people go to heaven and the unsaved and wicked go to hell, but it cannot be found anywhere in the Scriptures. Satan is a fallen angel and like all other angels cannot die, as we read from Matthew 22: 30, like this: **"For in the resurrection they neither marry, nor are given in marriage, but are like angels in heaven."** Satan as a spirit being is immortal and has deceived mankind to believe they are also immortal. We know that Satan the devil finally will be thrown into the lake of fire and will be tormented day and night forever and ever, as we read from Revelation 20: 10, in this way: **"And the devil, who deceived them, was thrown into the lake of fire and brimstone, where the beast and the false prophet are (had been thrown) also; and they will be tormented day and night for ever and ever."** Many in Christianity and some other religions teach accordingly, that the wicked will be tormented in an everlasting fire.

But, human beings are made from physical matter and without having received the Set-apart Spirit of Elohim at repentance and immersion; they do not have eternal life in them and are not immortal. When any thing physical is thrown into a fire, it burns until it becomes ashes. This is exactly what will happen to the wicked, who will not accept Yahshua as their Savior in the end, according to Malachi 4 :1 – 3, **"For behold, the day is coming, burning like a furnace; and all the arrogant and every evildoer will be chaff; and the day that is coming will set them ablaze."** says YHVH of hosts. **"so that it will leave them neither root nor branch."** (2) **But for you who fear My name the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings: and you will go forth and skip about like calves from the stall. (3) And you will tread down the wicked, for they shall be ashes under the soles of your feet on that day which I am preparing,"** says YHVH of hosts." A second witness to this is found in Isaiah 26: 14 as follows: **"The dead will not live, the departed spirits (spirits in man – without the Spirit of Elohim given at immersion into Yahshua's saving Name) will not rise; Therefore Thou hast punished and destroyed them, And thou hast wiped out all remembrance of them."**

This tells us that when the wicked are thrown into the fire, after the second resurrection, they will be wiped out from remembrance. So we see eternity in an ever-lasting fire cannot be the fate of un-repented people. After the second resurrection, those who refuse to repent and go Elohim's way, after He opened the Scriptures to their understanding, will be thrown into the lake of fire, an all consuming fire that will completely destroy them from all memory. By examining the word "Hell", which is according to the traditional view a place of everlasting torment, where sinners will be punished for eternity, we will come to understand that it simply refers to a place of burial, or grave, where even our Master Yahshua the Messiah spent three full days and three full nights. (More on this subject later.)

3.4 Do we believe in a so-called rapture?

At this point we also need to touch on another related subject that is equally misunderstood and has been taught about Yahshua's return; many believe in a so-called rapture into heaven, to occur when Yahshua returns one day. This erroneous belief stems from the fact that most understand the presence of YHVH on Mount Sinai to be the Father as a distinct being from the Son. Most in Churchianity thinks of YHVH as being the YHVH of the 'Old Testament' and Yahshua as being the YHVH of the 'New Testament'. But we see according to the song that Moses and the sons of Israel sang in Exodus 15: 2, **"YHVH is my strength and song and He has become my salvation (or Yahshua)."** This is confirmed in Isaiah 43: 10 & 11 and 63: 8, where YHVH says through Isaiah, **"You are My witnesses." Declares YHVH, "And My servant whom I have chosen, in order that you may know and believe Me, and understand that I am He. Before Me there was no Elohim formed, and there will be none after Me. (10) I, even I, am YHVH; and there is no savior besides Me."** Isaiah 63: 8, **'For He said, "Surely, they are My people, sons who will not deal falsely." So He became their Savior.'** We can therefore say that Yahshua was the manifestation of YHVH, who revealed Himself to Moses (as may be read in Numbers 12: 8) and the same One who gave the Torah to both houses of Israel on Mount Sinai. It must have been Yahshua who came to earth on Mount Sinai, appearing as fire. Yahshua is the visible image of the invisible Elohim (as per Colossians 1: 15), whom no one has ever seen as we read from First Timothy 6: 16. When Yahshua appeared on Mount Sinai, He did not appear as a flesh and blood 'Human Being' as He did when He was incarnated as the Son of Elohim, but as fire.

We need to understand that Moses' ascent and descent on Mount Sinai was a type or pattern of Yahshua's ascension to heaven, from where He is about to return. Rav Shaul understood Moses' descent from Mount Sinai, as a pattern of Yahshua's second coming as may be understood by comparing Exodus 19: 18 - 20 with 1 Thessalonians 4: 16 & 17, as follows: (18) **'Now Mount Sinai was all in smoke because YHVH**

descended upon it in fire; and its smoke ascended like the smoke of a furnace, and the whole mountain quaked violently. (19) When the sound of the trumpet grew louder and louder Moses spoke and Elohim answered him with thunder. (20) And YHVH came down on Mount Sinai, to the top of the mountain; and YHVH called Moses to the top of the mountain, and Moses went up.' 1 Thessalonians 4: 16 & 17, **'For the Master Himself will descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trumpet of Elohim; and the dead in Messiah shall rise first. (17) Then we who are alive and remain shall be caught up to meet the Master in the air, and thus we shall always be with the Master.'** We see the words 'YHVH descended' in Exodus 19: 18 and 'the Master Himself will descend from heaven' in 1 Thessalonians 4: 16. We read 'the sound of the trumpet grew louder and louder' in Exodus 19: 19 and 'the voice of the archangel and the trumpet of YHVH', in 1 Thessalonians 4: 16. In Exodus 19: 20, we read: 'Moses went up' and in 1 Thessalonians 4: 17, 'Then we who are alive and remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds to meet the Master in the air.' Rav Shaul who was familiar with the Torah and how Moses went up to Mount Sinai and returned 40 days later, knew that the pattern of Yahshua's second coming was laid by Moses many years before.

There are additional patterns of Yahshua's return, when Moses came down from Mount Sinai. Moses ascended and descended Mount Sinai 8 times, and each time left additional details about Yahshua's second coming. We read accordingly from Exodus 24: 13 – 18, **'So Moses arose with Joshua his servant, and Moses went up to the Mountain of Elohim. (14) But to the elders he said, "Wait here for us until we return to you. And behold, Aaron and Hur are with you; whoever has a legal matter, let him approach them." (15) Then Moses went up to the mountain, and the cloud covered the mountain. (16) And the glory of YHVH rested on Mount Sinai, and the cloud covered it for six days; and on the seventh day He called to Moses from the midst of the cloud. (17) And to the eyes of the sons of Israel the appearance of the glory of YHVH was like a consuming fire on the mountain top. (18) And Moses entered the midst of the cloud as he went up to the mountain; and Moses was on the mountain forty days and forty nights.'** These incidents gave us a pattern of Yahshua's resurrection, ascension, and second coming. Before Moses went up to the Mountain of Elohim, he said to the elders, 'Wait here for us until we return to you.' This is almost similar to the words that Yahshua used in Luke 24: 46, as follows: 'you are to stay in the city until you are clothed with power from on high.' We also see from Acts 1: 9, **'And after He had said these things, He was lifted up while they were looking on, and a cloud received Him out of their sight.'**

Moses ascended the mountain and remained there for 40 days, a prophetic view of the 40 Jubilees that Yahshua has remained in heaven, since His ascension (40 Jubilees = 40 times 50 years = 2000 years). The resurrected dead in Messiah and those believers who are alive and will be changed at Yahshua's return to meet Him in the air (as per 1 Thessalonians 4: 17), is a picture of the ancient Hebrew wedding ceremony, when the bridegroom returns, as we read in Matthew 25: 6, **"But at midnight there was a shout, 'Behold, the bridegroom! Come out to meet him.'** We see from Acts 1: 10 - 12, **'And as they were gazing intently into the sky while He was departing, behold, two men in white clothing stood beside them; (11) and they also said, "Men of Galilee, why do you stand looking into the sky? This Yahshua, who has been taken up from you into heaven will come in just the same way as you have watched Him go into heaven." (12) Then they returned to Jerusalem from the mount called Olivet, which is near Jerusalem, a Sabbath day's journey away.'** Yahshua will return to the Mount of Olives (a Sabbath day's journey from Jerusalem) on Yom Teruah, an annual Sabbath. We see further from Matthew 24: 30 that Yahshua will return in or on the clouds of heaven, as follows: **'And then the sign of the Son of Man will appear in the sky, and all the tribes of the earth will mourn, and they will see the SON OF MAN COMING ON THE CLOUDS OF THE SKY with power and great glory.'**

We also read about Yahshua's return to the Mount of Olives from Zechariah 14: 4, in this way: **'And in that day His feet will stand on the Mount of Olives, which is in front of Jerusalem on the east; and the Mount of Olives will be split in its middle from east to west by a very large valley, so that half of the mountain will move toward the north and the other half toward the south.'** Those who will meet Yahshua in the clouds will be with Him forever where He is. We read further from Revelation 5: 10 and 20: 6 that those resurrected and changed at Messiah's return, will rule under Him for a thousand years, right here on earth. So, we see that if we qualify, we will be with Yahshua right where He is here on earth. We also see that those who will see His return in the clouds on the Mount of Olives, will be gathered together from one end of the sky to the other, as recorded in verse 31 of Matthew 24, like this: **"And He will send forth His angels with A GREAT TRUMPET and THEY WILL GATHER TOGETHER HIS elect from the four winds, from one end of the sky to the other."** The angels will bring the elect from all over the world to Jerusalem, from where they will meet up with our Master Yahshua on the Mount of Olives, which will be covered by clouds.

In addition we see that in every case where people are taken away, before those that remain are saved in the Scriptures, that it was not (and will also not) be faithful believers who will be taken (or raptured) away, but the sinners, as witnessed in:

- Isaiah 57: 13, ***“When you cry out, let your collection of idols deliver you. But the wind will carry all of them up, and a breath will take them away, but he who takes refuge in Me (YHVH) shall inherit the land (of Israel), and possess My holy mountain.”***
- Matthew 24: 37 - 39, ***“For the coming of the Son of Man will be just like the days of Noah. (38) For as in those days which were before the flood they were eating and drinking, they were marrying and giving in marriage, until the day that Noah entered the ark, (39) and they did not understand until the flood came and took them all away; so shall the coming of the Son of Man be.”***

3.5 Are we the Anti-Messiah?

Nazarene Jews/Israelites generally believe that YHVH is one, but, there are some who believe that YHVH consists of three persons in one; another group believes that Yahshua was an Angel before His human birth; and groups like the Assemblies/congregation of YHVH believe that Yahshua is also YHVH, but that He is the lesser YHVH. Groups believing in two (YHVH)'s cite Jeremiah 23: 6 and 33: 16, which clearly speaks about Yahshua being called YHVH, in support of this doctrine. In addition, they quote Genesis 19: 24, as follows: ***‘Then YHVH rained on Sodom and Gomorrah brimstone and fire from YHVH out of heaven.’*** They hold that this proves without a doubt that there are two beings called YHVH. But, what does YHVH our Elohim say about this? We read in Deuteronomy 4: 39, YHVH talking to Moses, saying: ***“Know therefore today, and take it to your heart, that YHVH, He is Elohim in heaven above and on earth below; there is no other.”*** There are numerous witnesses to this statement in Isaiah, one of which appears in Isaiah 45: 21, as follows: ***“Declare and set forth your case; Indeed, let them consult together. Who has announced this from of old? Who has long since declared it? Is it not I, YHVH? And there is no other Elohim besides Me. A righteous Elohim and a Savior; There is none except Me.”***

Because of our belief in the Oneness of Elohim, some say that we are the anti-Messiah, based on what is written in the second part of 1 John 2: 22, in this way: ***‘This is the anti-Messiah, the one who denies the Father and the Son.’*** But, to find out if this assertion is correct, let's consider the test Scripture in 1 John 4: 2 ***‘By this you know the Spirit of Elohim: every spirit that confesses that Yahshua Messiah has come in the flesh is from Elohim.’*** We believe that Yahshua is the Messiah, but do we believe that Messiah came in the flesh? What does it mean? This is indeed a mystery, the answer of which is given in 1 Timothy 3: 16, as follows: ***‘And by common confession great is the mystery of godliness: He who was revealed in the flesh (as we are told in John 1: 14), Was vindicated (justified) in the Spirit, Beheld by angels, Proclaimed among the nations, Believed on in the world, Taken up in glory.’*** We also read in Isaiah 7: 14 ***‘Therefore YHVH Himself will give you a sign; Behold a virgin will be with child and bear a son, and she will call His name Immanuel.’*** - meaning Elohim with us. Yes, Yahshua is Messiah, but He is also YHVH in the flesh. Do you now understand what it means to confess that Yahshua Messiah has come in the flesh? Yahshua is Elohim in the flesh and it is this very fact about Him which tests the spirit of believers. In addition, we who confess Yahshua as our Master and Savior, have the Father also, as we read from 1 John 2: 23, in this way: ***‘Whoever denies the Son does not have the Father; the one who confesses the Son has the Father also.’***

3.6 Do we have the Oracles of Elohim?

There are some Nazarene/Messianic Israelites and like-minded believers, who like the Roman Catholics believe that their ecclesia was built upon Peter and the other disciples of Yahshua, who later became the apostles. They believe that *‘having been given’* the Oracles of Elohim, they have the right to proclaim the Feast Days of Elohim, including doing away with the postponement rules that the Rabbinical Jews introduced. They, like the Catholic Church, base this teaching on Matthew 16: 18, where Yahshua said to Peter: ***“And I also say to you that you are Peter (Petros in Greek, meaning a pebble), and upon this rock (Petra in Greek, meaning a rock) I will build My ecclesia; and the gates of Hades shall not overpower it.”*** They assume that Yahshua was referring to Peter as the rock upon whom the ecclesia is to be built. However we know that He was saying to Peter that His ecclesia will be build upon Him, the rock of our salvation. This is confirmed by Yahshua in Matthew 7: 24 & 25 , as follows: ***“Therefore everyone who hears these words of Mine, and acts upon them, may be compared to a wise man, who built his house upon the rock. (25) And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew (winds of change and false doctrines), and burst against that house; and yet it did not fall for it had been founded upon the rock.”*** Who or what is this rock. We read in 1 Corinthians 10: 4 ***‘And all drank the same spiritual drink, for they were drinking from a spiritual rock which followed them; and the rock was Messiah.’*** We need to make sure that the fellowship which we follow is built upon Yahshua the rock of our Salvation, and not on Peter, whom the Catholic church also claim to have been the first pope.

Yes we are Yahshua's disciples; He is our Master (Rabbi) and has commissioned us to continue with His rabbi/discipleship program, until He comes back to rule the world from Jerusalem. Evidently Peter (Rav Kepha) knew what Yahshua meant in Matthew 16, as he explains in Acts 4: 11 & 12, **"He (Yahshua) is the stone which was rejected by you, the builders, but which became the very corner stone. (12) And there is salvation in no one else; for there is no other name (the name Yahshua means the salvation of YHVH) under heaven that has been given among men, by which we must be saved."**

Rav Kepha confirmed that He knew who Yahshua was, adding that those who stumble over these facts were appointed for this doom. as we read in 1 Peter 2: 7 & 8, as follows: **'This precious value, then, is for you who believe. But for those who disbelieve, "THE STONE WHICH THE BUILDERS REJECTED, THIS BECAME THE VERY CORNER stone," (8) and, "A STONE OF STUMBLING AND A ROCK OF OFFENSE": for they stumble because they are disobedient to the word, and to this doom they were also appointed.'** Those who built their house on the pope or on the Apostles alone are bound to come crashing down in the near future. Rav Shaul was also fully aware of what Yahshua meant. To this end he confirmed that our Jewish brothers were given the Oracles of Elohim. They preserved the Sabbath, the annual Feast Days of Elohim, Koshering of meats (extracting all the blood), as well as the Hebrew language for us. Rav Shaul confirmed this in Roman 3: 1 - 4, **'Then what advantage has the Jew? Or what is the benefit of circumcision? (2) Great in every respect. First of all, that they were entrusted with the oracles of Elohim. (3) What then? If some did not believe, their unbelief will not nullify the faithfulness of Elohim, will it? (4) May it never be! Rather, let Elohim be found true, though every man be found a liar, as it is written, "THAT THOU MIGHTEST BE JUSTIFIED IN THY WORDS, AND MIGHTEST PREVAIL WHEN THOU ART JUDGED."** Rav Shaul also confirmed that Yahshua is the foundation upon which His ecclesia is built in 1 Corinthians 3: 11, in this way: **'For no man can lay a foundation other than the one which is laid which is Yahshua Messiah.'** The teachings of both Rav Kepha (Peter) and Rav Shaul (Paul) witnessed to the fact that Yahshua is the foundation of His ecclesia, and those who assume otherwise, are simply deceived.

We know that YHVH will always remain the same, as is confirmed in Malachi 3: 6, **"For I, YHVH, do not change; therefore you, O sons of Jacob, are not consumed."** Judah will remain the lawgiver of YHVH, until Yahshua returns to rule the world from Jerusalem. This is confirmed in Genesis 49: 10, as follows: **"The scepter shall not depart from Judah, Nor the ruler's staff from between his feet, Until Shiloh comes, And to him shall be the obedience of the peoples."** When Yahshua returns, He is not coming back as a baby in a manger; but He is coming to put down the misguided governments of this world. The question is: What did Yahshua give to the ecclesia, which is built upon the rock (Him)? We read His conversation with Peter in Matthew 16: 19, where He said: **"I will give you the keys of the kingdom of heaven; and whatever you shall bind on earth shall be bound in heaven, and whatever you shall loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven."** Both Rav Kepha and Rav Shaul knew what Yahshua meant, by saying this. We read in Acts 2: 38, where Rav Kepha explains to the brethren how to obtain the gift of the Set-apart Spirit, as follows: **"Repent, and let each of you be immersed in the name of Yahshua Messiah for the forgiveness of your sins and you shall receive the gift of the Set-apart Spirit."** Rav Shaul further explains in Romans 8: 11, **'But if the Spirit of Him who raised Yahshua from the dead dwells in you, He who raised Messiah Yahshua from the dead will also give life to your mortal bodies through His spirit who indwells you.'** This is one of the keys to the Kingdom of Elohim. A second key is the understanding that we have regarding Elohim's plan of salvation for all mankind. We understand this second key better, by observing the annual Feast Days of Elohim, given in Leviticus 23.

3.7 Jews believe the true gospel, but are blinded to the identity of Messiah.

Judah believes in the resurrection of the dead and the coming of a Messiah to rule the world from King David's throne. In fact they basically believe the good news of the coming Kingdom of Elohim. Did you know that the majority of Christianity believes in the person of Messiah, but do not understand what the true gospel is? The true gospel is what Messiah preached in Mark 1: 14 & 15, as follows: **'And after John (the Immerser) had been taken into custody, Yahshua came into Galilee, preaching the gospel of Elohim, (15) and saying, "The time is fulfilled, and the Kingdom of Elohim is at hand; repent and believe the gospel."** So whilst Judah believes the true gospel, as well as in a Messiah who is coming to rule the world from Jerusalem, they do not know the identity of Yahshua the true Messiah. They also do not believe that Yahshua 'fulfilled the time' by qualifying to eventually take over the rulership of the world, by overcoming Satan's temptation in the wilderness, after His immersion by John. In addition we know from reading Romans 11 and especially verse 32, that YHVH has blinded their minds to the identity of the true Messiah, until the fullness of the Gentiles (a remnant of those Israelites who lost their identity and now believe that they are Gentiles) have come in, at which time all Israel will be saved. After Yahshua's resurrection and ascension to heaven, most of Christianity became deceived due to false teachings as well as the false names that the Bible translators used, to hide the true name of YHVH our Elohim. They believed in a Savior who came to do away with His

Father's Torah and as a result they are allowed to eat unclean meat, such as pork meat, crayfish, crabs and octopus (or calamari as they call it).

This is another reason why we and all Jews reject Jesus as the Messiah, because the Torah teaches against someone who is able to do signs and wonders, but who teaches against obedience to Elohim's Torah teachings, as we read from Deuteronomy 13: 1 - 3, in this way: ***“if a prophet or a dreamer of dreams arises among you and gives you a sign or a wonder, (2) and the sign or the wonder comes true, concerning which he spoke to you saying, ‘Let us go after other gods (whom you have not known) and let us serve them, (3) you shall not listen to the words of that prophet or that dreamer of dreams; for YHVH your Elohim is testing you to find out if you love YHVH your Elohim with all your heart and with all your soul.’”*** Understanding this commandment, makes it abundantly clear why we should not follow a savior who came to do away with the Torah teachings of Elohim. The mere fact that the words of a prophet or dreamer comes true, is not evidence enough that such a prophet or dreamer is legitimate at all. YHVH wants to see what we will do if we have alternative options. We should therefore be very suspicious of a 'Messiah' who teaches that the Torah is abolished. We read in verse 4 of Deuteronomy 13 that we should follow YHVH our Elohim, keep His commandments, listen to His voice (word), serve Him and cling to Him. We also read that the prophet or dreamer of dreams shall be put to death, because he has counseled rebellion against YHVH.

An added problem is clearly the name which Christianity decided to assign to the Savior. There is not one dependable source which agrees that the original name of our Savior was Jesus. Most authorities admit that the original name of our Savior was Yehoshua or the short form Yeshua, as used in the recent big screen movie entitled 'The Passion of the Christ' by Mel Gibson. We prefer to use the name Yahshua, because our Master Himself said that He came in His Father's name in John 5: 43. We know from Psalm 68: 4 (KJV) the Jah or more correctly Yah (as there is no letter J in Hebrew) is the short form of our Father's Name. This is also confirmed in the transliterated Hebrew word HalleluYah, which is translated in English as Praise Yah (or sometimes Hallelujah). It is strange that the transliterated name for the adversary namely Satan, is known as such in any language in the world today, but the name of our Savior is changed to Jesus to, as some say avoid confusion. It is common knowledge that names of people are not changed by translation, from one language or nation to another – Bill might be short for William, but the surname Clinton remains the same in any language, and even though it might be pronounced differently, Bill Clinton is known in the USA, Africa, Russia and throughout the world by that very name. The name of Benjamin Netanyahu, the Israeli Prime Minister is known by that name throughout the world. So should the original name given to our Savior by His parents, namely Yahshua be the same, even after the almost 2000 years since His ascension to heaven.

As mentioned before we, like all Jews, do not accept a Savior named Jesus who came to do away with His Father's strict laws. In addition we know that Yahshua said in Matthew 5: 17 – 19, ***“Do not think that I came to abolish the Law or the Prophets; I did not come to abolish, but to fulfill (or make it more binding). For truly I say to you, until heaven and earth pass away, not the smallest letter or stroke shall pass away from the law, until all is accomplished. Whoever then annuls one of the least of these commandments, and so teaches others, shall be called least in the kingdom of heaven; but whoever keeps and teaches them, he shall be called great in the kingdom of heaven.”*** Yahshua came to get the lost ten tribes, to return to the original faith once delivered to His people, namely Scriptural Judaism. He was a Jew and did not give up His faith to become a Christian. He questioned some of the man-made customs which the Pharisees introduced, which were never Torah requirements, such as the ceremonial washing of hands, however, He did not question the Torah teachings of Elohim – He kept both the oral and written Torah and never abolished it, as He confirmed in Matthew 5.

Most believers agree that Yahshua was impaled on a Wednesday (in the middle of the week – as prophesied in Daniel 9: 26 & 27) the 14th of Aviv, immediately prior to the First Day of Unleavened Bread the 15th of Aviv (the 1st Annual Sabbath of the year), which fell on a Thursday that year, as may be understood from John 19: 31, as follows: ***‘The Jews therefore, because it was the day of preparation, so that the bodies should not remain on the cross on the Sabbath (for that Sabbath was a high day {an annual Feast Day as discussed later in the book}), asked Pilate that their legs might be broken, and that they might be taken away.’*** He rose exactly three days later at the end of the weekly Sabbath. We know that Yahshua kept the Passover 24 hours before our Jewish brothers of His day did. Yahshua kept the Passover in the night during which He was betrayed; we keep it annually on the same evening, i.e. the 14th of Aviv as the 13th of Aviv ends, in remembrance of Him. Yahshua did not change any of the other Feast Days of YHVH during His 1st advent, else Rav Shaul (or one of His other apostles) would have recorded it for us, as he (Rav Shaul) did the Passover in 1 Corinthians 11: 23 - 26. Instead of a major change, we notice in Acts 2: 1, ***‘And when the day of Pentecost was fully come, they were all with one accord in one place.’*** Wow, this is rare! Nobody argued about the calendar like we do today and this was only days after Yahshua's ascension recorded in Acts 1: 9. The Sunday Pentecost factions hold that 1 Corinthians 15: 20 proves that Messiah was indeed the wave sheaf. Let's read it for ourselves: ***‘But now Messiah has been raised from the dead, the first fruits***

(aparche) **of those who are asleep.**' The Greek word 'aparche' translated 'first fruits' in 1 Corinthians 15 is singular, not plural and should read first fruit. Messiah Yahshua is 'the first fruit' not 'the first fruits'. The wave sheaf represents the first fruits (plural).

Those of us who are called during this age, will, if we make it, be resurrected when Messiah returns. We are those called and chosen, the ecclesia of RENEWED COVENANT ISRAELITES as recorded in Revelation 14: 4 as follows: **"These are the ones who have not been defiled with woman, for they have kept themselves chaste. These are the ones who follow the Lamb wherever He goes. These have been purchased from among men as first fruits to Elohim and to the Lamb."** We who believe that we are the first fruits, count the Omer from the day after the 1st day of Unleavened Bread on the night of the 15th becoming the 16th Aviv.

3.8 The Scriptures is the word of Elohim:

We believe the Word of YHVH consists of all the Scriptures from Genesis to Revelation and those who reject the writings of Rav Shaul or as some recently asserted: that the book of Hebrews, is Anti-Torah; are simply part of the ones whom we are warned about in Jude 4 - those contradicting (or denying) our only Master Yahshua Messiah. They are no different from those who add their own interpretation to parts of the Scriptures. An example of this is where in Genesis 3: 21 we are told that after the fall of man in the Garden of Eden, YHVH dressed them in skin. Some add that this was the first animal sacrifice for sin, as YHVH killed a lamb to make clothes for Adam and Eve. But, the Scriptures do not say that, in addition we know that the sacrificial system was only introduced after the golden calf incident. YHVH simply covered our forefathers in skin, which resulted in them becoming mortal. How do you prove that, I hear you asking? Let us turn to 2 Corinthians 5: 1 - 4, where we read the following explanation: **'For we know that if the earthly tent (our skin) which is our house is torn down, we have a building from Elohim, a house not made with hands, eternal in the heavens. (2) For indeed in this house we groan, longing to be clothed with our dwelling from heaven; (3) inasmuch as we, having put it on, shall not be found naked. (4) For indeed while we are in this tent, we groan being burdened, because we do not want to be unclothed, but to be clothed, in order that what is mortal may be swallowed up by life.'** Nevertheless, we should refrain from adding our own interpretations to any parts of the Scriptures as we are admonished in 2 Peter 1: 20 & 21, as follows: **'But know this first of all, that no prophecy of Scriptures is a matter of one's own interpretation, (21) for no prophesy was ever made by an act of human will, but men moved by the Set-apart Spirit spoke from Elohim.'** In addition we read in Revelation 22: 18 & 19, in this way: **'I testify to everyone who hears the words of the prophecy of this book: if anyone adds to them, Elohim shall add to him the plagues which are written in this book; (19) and if anyone takes away from the words of the book of this prophesy, Elohim shall take away his part from the tree of life and from the set-apart city, which are written in this book.'**

3.9 Are we a sect?

Recently in a magazine sent me by some assemblies of YHVH, the publisher of the magazine claimed that they are the (only and) original assembly of YHVH. They hold that other than with all other groups, they do not consider themselves to be a sect of anything. Does their statement make theirs the one true faith? By the same token, does the fact that the queen of England calls Xmas and Easter official holidays of the English people make it right? The original ecclesia started in the wilderness (according to Acts 7: 38), was Scriptural Judaism (Judaism mean those who worship YHVH – see Genesis 29: 35). This is also why Rav Shaul states in an unequivocal manner in Acts 23: 6 that he is a Pharisee. The word Pharisee simply means the 'separated ones' or 'Perushim' in Hebrew. We the called-out ones are today also known as the set-apart ones.

The ecclesia that continued after Yahshua's resurrection and ascension to heaven, were according to Acts 24: 5 & 14 the sect of the Nazarenes, with Rav Shaul (or Paul) as the ring-leader. Rav Shaul states clearly in Ephesians 4: 4 – 6, that: **"There is one body and one Spirit, just as also you were called in one hope of your calling; (5) one Master, one faith, one immersion, (6) one Elohim and Father of all who is over all and through all and in all."** So yes, we are a sect of the original Pharisees as much as all Christian Churches are sects of the Roman Catholic Church. However, according to Yahshua our Messiah, our righteousness should surpass that of the Pharisees, if we want to make it into the Kingdom of Elohim, as may be read from Matthew 5: 20. But, the problem today is the same as it was in Yahshua's time, since most believe the traditions and teachings of men, rather than the Word of Elohim.

Does this questioning of some spiritual Leaders make you uneasy? If you, like some believe that we teach hatred, then consider Yahshua's own words in Matthew 10: 34, as follows: **"Do not think that I came to bring peace on the earth; I did not come to bring peace but the sword."** Our purpose is only to convince all to repent and return to full Torah observance. We read fittingly in Hebrews 4: 12, **'For the Word of Elohim**

is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword, and piercing as far as the division of soul and spirit, of both joints and marrow, and able to judge the thoughts and intentions of the heart. We need to know that there are no half measures with our heavenly Father. We cannot compromise to please the world, as the way of Elohim is a narrow, lonely road, only those who remain on that road will eventually become kings and priests under our Master and Savior Yahshua Messiah.

At this point let's answer the question asked at the beginning of this chapter: *'Which is the one faith spoken about in Scriptures?'* The one true faith or bride of Messiah will be the ones who wash their robes in the word of truth; i.e. who keep the commandments of Elohim and their faith in Yahshua Messiah (as we read from Revelation 14: 12). Let us determine to rid ourselves of all false doctrines as well as the impulse to add or take away from what is written in the Scriptures. Let's determine to build the ecclesia of Elohim on the rock of our salvation, Yahshua. As Nazarene Israel, we believe:

1. That there is only one Elohim, which is Almighty YHVH, as is confirmed in Deuteronomy 6: 4, as follows: ***"Hear, O Israel – YHVH is your Elohim – YHVH is ONE (ECHAD)."*** A second witness to this may be read from Deuteronomy 32: 39, where YHVH says: ***"See now that I am HE, AND there is no Elohim besides Me"***. YHVH reveals Himself in many ways, which include the Heavenly Father, Yahshua the Son, the Word, the Angel or Messenger of YHVH⁹ and the Set Apart Spirit. Yahshua is the visible image of the invisible Elohim YHVH.¹⁰ He is the Messiah who died for the sins of the world and rose from the dead to give assurance of both our forgiveness and everlasting life. In John 8: 24 Yahshua says: ***"I said therefore to you, that you shall die in your sins; for unless you believe that I am HE, you shall die in your sins."*** He also said in John 10: 30 that ***"I and the Father are one"***. In 1 Tim 3: 16 we read ***"And without controversy great is the mystery of godliness: Elohim was manifest in the flesh, justified in the Spirit, seen of angels, preached unto the Gentiles, believed on in the world, received up into glory"***. Yahshua was born of a virgin and lived a sinless life in accordance with the (Torah) Commandments of Elohim. He was crucified for the atonement of His people and was resurrected on the third day, ascended to heaven from where He will return to usher in the Kingdom of Elohim and to rule the world from Jerusalem.
2. That the Scriptures which include both the Tanach and the Renewed Covenant, is the divinely inspired and literal Word of Elohim as originally written. The Law, which includes the 613 laws stipulated in the first five books of the Scriptures, known as the Torah, should be obeyed by all those who worship YHVH our Elohim. The Torah is the teachings of Elohim and is considered the rules according to which we live our lives. Keeping of the Law can not bring us salvation, as we know that salvation is the free gift of YHVH our Elohim, given to those that love and obey Him. We show our love and obedience to YHVH by keeping His Commandments. These laws regulate moral precepts; dietary regulations; agricultural science; financial success; sexual behavior and religious practice.
3. That; as part of the commandments we keep the biblical Sabbath, being the seventh day of the week or Saturday according to the Gregorian calendar in use today. We also keep the annual Sabbaths or Feast Days of Elohim, ordained by YHVH in Leviticus 23. These Set-apart Days depict Elohim's plan of salvation for all mankind and are commanded to be kept forever. We also obey the Commandments regarding clean and unclean foods as specified by YHVH in Leviticus 11 and Deuteronomy 14. We do this to show our obedience to YHVH and to remain set apart or holy, as YHVH stated in Leviticus 11: 45 ***"You shall be Holy for I am Holy."***
4. That we are commissioned by Yahshua to proclaim the good news of the Kingdom of Elohim as a witness to all nations, before the return of Yahshua our Messiah to come and rule His people from Jerusalem for a thousand years. Those who believe and practice what Yahshua taught and who overcome, will rule with Yahshua for a thousand years.
5. That; we are watchmen over the people of Israel and specifically over Judah.¹¹ As watchman we must let the light of Yahshua shine through us. We need to watch over the souls given into our care by YHVH and should always praise Him and make intercession for His people, asking Him to save the remnant of Israel. As watchmen we are duty bound to declare to Elohim's people their transgressions, and to the house of Jacob their sins (as we read from Isaiah 58: 1). And most of all, we should continue to remind YHVH to establish Jerusalem as a place of praise in the earth (as per Isaiah 62: 6 & 7).

⁹ Gen 48: 16 (Amplified Bible) the redeeming Angel (not a created being, but YHVH Himself).

¹⁰ Yahshua is the Image/likeness of Elohim – see 2 Corinthians 4: 4 & Col. 1: 15.

¹¹ Proclaiming Messiah Yahshua has to do with the gospel and as Rav Shaul puts it in Romans 1: 16 ***'For I am not ashamed of the gospel, for it is the power of Elohim for salvation to everyone who believes, to the Jew first and also to the Greek.'*** In addition we read in Zechariah 12: 7 that Judah will be saved first, as follows: ***"YHVH also will save the tents of Judah first in order that the glory of the house of David and the glory of the inhabitants of Jerusalem may not be magnified above Judah."***

3.10 Are we Nazarenes?

There are many today who profess to be Nazarenes, but who are doing more harm to our community than what they do good. We know from history, that like today, many Jews in Yahshua's time were waiting for the coming of the Messiah. Yahshua's ministry commenced after His immersion by John the Immerser in 27 CE. The first Nazarenes were Torah observant Jews, who also believed that Yahshua was the Messiah. They were originally known as 'the Way' (see Acts 19: 9 and 24: 14) and eventually became known as 'Nazarenes' as may be seen in Acts 24: 5. The Hebrew word for Nazarene is Notsrim, meaning branches. We know that many prophecies in the Scriptures used the word Netzer or branch to refer to Messiah (examples are in Isaiah 11:1 and 60: 21; Jeremiah 23: 5 & 15; Zechariah 3: 9 and 6: 12). It is believed that many of those who believed in Yahshua often quoted these verses and became known as 'branch people' or Notsrim. They, like the Pharisees who lived during the time of Yahshua, believed in a Messiah, the resurrection of the dead, angels, spirits and Satan. They accepted all the customs of Judaism, but in addition believed that Yahshua was the Messiah, divine (something that the Essenes did not believe) and eternal.

We have seen that Nazarenes were simply Jews who also believed that Yahshua was the Messiah, similar to the Messianic Jews of today. Today we refer to ourselves as Nazarene Israelites because not all of our members are Jewish, but are now as believers in Messiah Yahshua part of the commonwealth of Israel (see Ephesians 2: 11 – 14), known as the Israel of Elohim (see Galatians 6: 14 - 16). Galatians 3: 28 & 29 puts it as follows: ***“There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither slave nor free man, there is neither male nor female; for you are all one in Messiah Yahshua. (29) And if you belong to Messiah, then you are Abraham’s offspring, heirs according to the promise.”*** Even though some use these Scriptures to preach against Torah observance, the last verse actually implies that if we are offspring of Abraham, and heirs according to the promise, then we will honor the covenant that YHVH made with Abraham and his (male) descendants throughout their generations, and be circumcised in the flesh.

Now that we know what or who Nazarene Israel is, I would like to ask the following question: If we call ourselves Nazarene Israelites, after our Master Yahshua, are we good examples of what a Nazarene should be? Are we true followers of the way of the Nazarene? Think about it. Once we accept Yahshua as our Savior and are immersed in His Name, we accept a tremendous responsibility. We become representatives of Yahshua on earth. We become Ambassadors of Messiah and the Kingdom of Elohim, as proclaimed by Yahshua in Mark 1: 14 & 15. We know that Yahshua was an example for us, as we read in John 13: 15 where He said: ***“For I gave you an example that you also should do as I do.”*** A second more obvious witness to this may be found in 1 Peter 2: 21, as follows: ***‘For you have been called for this purpose, since Messiah also suffered for you, leaving you an example for you to follow in His steps.’*** All of us, but especially our Elders and Teachers should follow Yahshua's example, setting an example for new believers and outsiders, like perhaps non-believing spouses and children, etc.

We believe that we Nazarenes have been called out of the world by Elohim, to be first fruits of the Spirit, according to Romans 8: 23, 28 & 29: ***‘And not only this, but also we ourselves, having the first fruits of the Spirit, even we ourselves groan within ourselves, waiting eagerly for adoption as sons (and daughters), the redemption of our body. (28) And we know that Elohim causes all things to work together for the good to those who love Elohim, to those who are called according to His purpose. (29) For whom He foreknew, He also predestined to become conformed to the image of His Son, that He might be the first-born among many brethren.’*** We have seen in Galatians 3: 29 that we are Abraham's offspring, heirs according to promise. We see according to Hebrews 11: 9 & 10 that Abraham (Isaac and Jacob): ***‘By faith (he)¹² lived as an alien in the land of promise, as in a foreign land, dwelling in tents (temporary dwellings – like we are supposed to, when we keep the Feast of Sukkoth) with Isaac and Jacob, fellow heirs of the same promise; (10) for he was looking for the city (the New Jerusalem) which has foundations, whose architect and builder is Elohim.’*** This tells us that our fathers in the faith, Abraham, Isaac and Jacob believed in eternal life and the coming Kingdom of Elohim. However, they have not received their promise yet, according to verse 39 of Hebrews 11. The reason for this is given in verse 40 of Hebrews 11, as follows: ***‘because Elohim had provided something better for us, so that apart from us they should not be made perfect.’*** Wow, so they are waiting for us, before all those who have fallen asleep in Messiah are resurrected or changed.

There are numerous Scriptural witnesses to the fact that we are called to be first fruits and for those who have doubts about this calling, I quote a number of these verses below:

- James 1: 18 ***‘In the exercise of His will He brought us forth by the word of truth, so that we might be as it were, the first fruits among His creatures.’***

¹² Brackets inserted by me for the sake of clarity.

- 2 Thessalonians 2: 13 ***'But we should always give thanks to Elohim for you, brethren beloved by YHVH, because Elohim has chosen you from the beginning for salvation*** (a foot note in the American Standard Bible reads: Some ancient manuscripts read 'first fruits') ***through sanctification by the Spirit and faith in truth.'***
- 1 Corinthians 15: 20 – 23 ***'But now Messiah has been raised from the dead, the first fruit of those who are asleep. (21) For since by a man came death, by a man also came the resurrection of the dead. (22) For as in Adam all die, so also in Messiah all shall be made alive. (23) But each in his own order, Messiah the first fruit, after that those who are Messiah's at His coming.'***
- Ephesians 1: 4 & 5 ***'just as He chose us in Him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and blameless before Him in love. (5) He predestined us to adoption as sons through Yahshua Messiah to Himself, according to the kind intention of His will.'***
- Hebrews 9: 15 ***'And for this reason He is the mediator of a new covenant (or priesthood), in order that since a death has taken place for the redemption of the transgressions that were committed under the first covenant (or priesthood), those who have been called may receive the promise of the eternal inheritance*** (eternal life in the Kingdom of Elohim).'

After Yahshua's resurrection and prior to His ascension to heaven, he taught His disciples one last time about the Kingdom of Elohim (see Acts 1: 3). The disciples believed in Him and asked Him (as per Acts 1: 6) when He will restore the kingdom of Israel? In Acts 1: 7 ***'He said to them, "It is not for you to know times or epochs which the Father has fixed by His own authority."*** It seems that YHVH kept these secrets to be revealed in our time, prior to Yahshua's return on Yom Teruah¹³, from 1 Thessalonians 5: 1 – 8, as follows: (1) ***'Now as to the times and the epochs, brethren, you have no need of anything to be written to you. (2) For you yourselves know full well that the day of YHVH will come like a thief in the night. (3) While they are saying, "Peace and safety!" then destruction will come upon them suddenly like birth pangs upon a woman with child; and they shall not escape. (4) But you, brethren, are not in darkness, that the day should overtake you like a thief; (5) for you are all sons of light and sons of the day. We are not of night or darkness; (6) so then let us not sleep as others do, but let us be alert and sober. (7) For those who sleep do their sleeping at night, and those who get drunk get drunk at night. (8) But since we are of the day, let us be sober*** (self-controlled)¹⁴, ***having put on the breastplate of faith and love, and as a helmet, the hope of salvation.'***

It is certain that the patriarchs as well as the apostles were also to become first fruits. They were set apart and were the early first fruits and therefore the first faith-filled branches or Nazarenes. We are all branches and share the same root, namely Yahshua our Messiah. By studying the Scriptures we will learn about the examples set for us by our fathers in the faith. O yes, they were also human and did sin, but they certainly have overcome those brief lapses of faith. We read in Genesis 12 that Abram (before his covenant relationship with YHVH, where his name was changed to Abraham – in Genesis 17) lied to Pharaoh about Sarai his wife (also before her name was changed to Sarah), saying that she was his sister. However, we read in Genesis 26: 4 & 5, ***"And I will multiply your descendants as the stars of heaven, and will give your descendants all these lands; and by your descendants all the nations of the earth shall be blessed, (5) because Abraham obeyed Me and kept My charge, My commandments, My statutes and My laws."*** From these Scriptures we know that Abraham repented from this lie and that YHVH has forgiven him. If we are to follow the example set by our father Abraham, we better make sure that we obey YHVH and keep all His commandments, statutes and laws, given in His Torah.

It is clear that our fathers in the faith followed the teachings (or Torah) of Elohim. Yahshua, who is the salvation of YHVH our Elohim, is also YHVH in the flesh. We know that Yahshua did not break Torah throughout His life on earth, as is confirmed in Hebrews 4: 15 ***'For we do not have a high priest who cannot sympathize with our weaknesses, but one who has been tempted in all things as we are, yet without sin.'*** In fact Yahshua assured His followers that He did not come to abolish the Law or the Prophets, but to make it more binding, as we've read before in Matthew 5: 17 – 48.

We know for a fact that Yahshua kept the Sabbath, as is recorded for us in Luke 4: 16 ***'And He came to Nazareth, where He had been brought up; and as was His custom, He entered the synagogue on the Sabbath, and stood up to read.'*** We also know from the four gospels that Yahshua our Messiah observed the Set-apart days and festivals commanded in Leviticus 23. John 7 to 13 recounts the final festival period prior to His final days. The events recorded in John 8 to 10, where He said that He is YHVH or the I am a number of times, occurred on the Last Great Day (the eighth day of the Feast). Yahshua's words in the temple during the evening (erev) of that day is recorded in John 7: 37 – 38 as follows: ***'Now on the last day, the great day of the feast, Yahshua stood and cried out, saying, "If any man is thirsty, let him come to***

¹³ Yom Teruah - discussed in 1 Thessalonians 4: 13 to 18.

¹⁴ The footnote attached to the word sober, reads self-controlled.

Me and drink. (38) He who believes in Me, as the Scripture said, 'From his innermost being shall flow rivers of living waters.'" Reading carefully from John 6 to 13, we see that this is a continuous sequence of the final days of Yahshua's life, from Passover to Passover. In fact from John 10: 22 on we see that Yahshua was in the temple in Jerusalem during the Feast of Dedication also known as Chanukah. On this occasion He claimed as follows in verse 30 (of John 10): **"I and the Father are one."**

The standard, by which we should measure ourselves, is Yahshua. We read in Galatians 5: 13 to 26 **'For you were called to freedom brethren; only do not turn your freedom into an opportunity for the flesh, but through love serve one another. (14) For the whole law is fulfilled in one word, in the statement, "You shall love your neighbor as yourself." (15) But you bite and devour one another, take care lest you be consumed by one another. (16) But I say, walk by the Spirit, and you will not carry out the desire of the flesh. (17) For the flesh sets its desire against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh; for these are in opposition to one another, so that you, may not do the things that you please. (18) But if you are led by the Spirit, you are not under the Law** (i.e. under the punishment or curses of the Law). (19) **Now the deeds of the flesh are evident, which are: immorality, impurity, sensuality, (20) idolatry, sorcery, enmities, strife, jealousy, outbursts of anger, disputes, dissensions, factions, (21) envying, drunkenness, carousing, and things like these, of which I forewarn you just as I have forewarned you that those who practice such things shall not inherit the Kingdom of Elohim. (22) But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, (23) gentleness, self-control; against such things there is no law. (24) Now those who belong to Messiah Yahshua have crucified the flesh with its passions and desires. (25) If we live by the Spirit, let us also walk by the Spirit. (26) Let us not become boastful, challenging one another, envying one another.'** Our standard is Messiah and we should not compete against our fellow Nazarenes. We need to compare our actions with that of Yahshua and overcome our shortcomings; else we will not be in the Kingdom of Elohim. If Yahshua kept the Feast day of Elohim, including Chanukah, then we who follow Him, should do like-wise. If Yahshua was immersed, then so should we, if Yahshua was circumcised, so should we.

The firstborn are identified by circumcision of the heart (and the flesh – to live in the land promised to Abraham). We are marked with a sign to identify us as the firstborn to YHVH. However, we see in Isaiah 49: 16 that our owner is also marked for our sake: **"Behold, I have inscribed you on the palms of My hands; Your walls are continually before Me."** Brethren do we now understand the true gospel? In Deuteronomy 30: 1 - 8 Moses prophesied about the renewed covenant, before Israel entered the Promised Land, as follows: **"So it shall be when all these things have come upon you, the blessing and the curse which I have set before you, and you call them to mind in all nations where YHVH your Elohim has banished you, (2) and you return to YHVH your Elohim and obey Him with all your heart and soul according to all that I command you today, you and your sons, (3) then YHVH your Elohim will restore you from captivity, and have compassion on you, and will gather you again from all the peoples where YHVH your Elohim has scattered you. (4) If your outcasts are at the ends of the earth, from there YHVH your Elohim will gather you, and from there He will bring you back. (5) And YHVH your Elohim will bring you into the land which your fathers possessed, and you shall possess it; and He will prosper you and multiply you more than your fathers. (6) Moreover YHVH your Elohim will circumcise your heart (immersion) and the hearts of your descendants, to love YHVH your Elohim with all your heart and with all your soul, in order that you may live. (7) And YHVH your Elohim will inflict all these curses on your enemies and on those who hate you, who persecuted you. (8) And you shall again obey YHVH your Elohim, and observe all His commandments which I command you today."** After the establishment of the new covenant, by the death and resurrection of the kinsman redeemer of Israel, everything was in place for the nation of Israel to receive their priestly position among the nations in the world.

We, the first fruits called by Elohim are being judged during this age according to 1 Peter 4: 17 **'For it is time for judgment to begin with the household of Elohim; and if it begins with us first, what will be the outcome for those who do not obey the gospel of Elohim.'** O yes, brethren we need to shape up or ship out. Even though we are certain that our Father YHVH has called us out of darkness into His marvelous light, if we do not measure ourselves against His standard Yahshua and return to Torah, we will not enter the Kingdom of Elohim, as is recorded for us in Matthew 22: 14, where we read: **"For many are called, but few are chosen."** This is indeed very scary, fellow Nazarenes. It tells us that we need to be extremely careful how we live as the first fruits of YHVH, because we could still because of reckless living lose our crowns. As mentioned before and as is recorded in 2 Corinthians 5: 20: **'(Therefore)¹⁵ we are ambassadors for Messiah, as though Elohim were entreating through us; we beg you on behalf of Messiah, be reconciled to Elohim.'**

We know that if we have the Spirit of Elohim indwelling us, we could make it into His eternal kingdom. According to the second part of 2 Corinthians 5: 5, we are sealed with the Set-apart Spirit (at immersion in

¹⁵ Brackets inserted by me for the sake of clarity.

Yahshua's name) in our hearts as a pledge, for the purpose of becoming immortal or obtaining eternal life. We only get given a small portion of the Set-apart Spirit as a deposit (or pledge) at immersion, as opposed to Yahshua who being YHVH in the flesh, has the full measure of the Set-apart Spirit. Yahshua said that we may ask YHVH for the Set-apart Spirit, in Luke 11: 13, as follows: ***“If you then, being evil, know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more shall our heavenly Father give the Set-apart Spirit to those who ask Him?”*** Let us therefore ask YHVH to give us more of His Set-apart Spirit, so that we may be guided into all truth. Let us the called out ecclesia, also make sure that we do not quench the Spirit as is recorded in 2 Thessalonians 5: 19 and let us abstain from every form of evil.

Chapter 4 - The Oneness of Elohim.

4.1 Introduction:

One of the main functions of Satan is, to get people to doubt what they have been taught and believe. We read in Revelation 12: 9 that he deceives the whole world. Do you believe that the whole world is being deceived by Satan and his agents? If you do not believe that, then you do not believe the word of Elohim. Even though most of the deception that we read about in Revelation 12: 9 has already happened, it is likely to continue to happen until the return of our Master and Savior Yahshua Messiah. Most of the people of the world will continue to be manipulated by Satan in ways that we cannot imagine, until Satan will be bound for a thousand years, after Yahshua's return from heaven. He is the father of lies and has been busy trying to derail true worship, from the very beginning.

Satan is the master counterfeiter and has changed every command and doctrine that YHVH gave us, by teaching just the opposite through his agents in the world. He is, as the youngsters of today would say, the "mother" of all counterfeiters. For every bit of truth that is revealed, he brings out a counterfeit. The problem with a counterfeit is that it almost looks like the real thing. Have any of you seen a counterfeit Dollar or Hundred Rand note. Let me assure you, unless you are well-trained, you will not easily tell counterfeit money from the real thing. Satan's agents are not only in the churches of the world, but are also those amongst us who are contradicting what we believe and read in the Word of Elohim. Satan and his agents are continuously trying to find areas in our faith, where he can sow doubt in our minds.

How then is it possible not to be deceived by Satan and his agents? The question we all need to answer for ourselves, is: Who do you believe? Do you believe your teacher, or do you believe the Word of Elohim? Who do you worship? In fact this is exactly what YHVH wants to know about each one of us who profess to believe in Him. Think about it for a moment. Do you, when asked about your belief in a specific doctrine say, Scriptures has this to say about the matter (in question)? Or do you say Yahshua had this to say regarding it? Or do you like some that I heard saying, 'Frank' or the Rabbi or 'Jim' says this or that regarding the matter? If you base your beliefs on the teaching of any man, and if whatever such a man teaches, does not come from the Scriptures, then you only believe in that man's interpretation. This is why Rav Shaul (Paul) taught as follows in 1 Corinthians 3: 4 – 11, like this: ***'For when one says, "I am of Paul," and another, "I am of Apollos," are you not mere men? (5) What then is Apollos? And what is Paul? Servants through whom you believed, even as the Master gave opportunity to each one. (6) I planted, Apollos watered, but Elohim was causing the growth. (7) So then neither the one who plants nor the one who waters is anything, but Elohim who causes the growth. (8) Now he who plants and he who waters are one; but each will receive his own reward according to his own labor. (9) For we are Elohim's fellow workers; you are Elohim's field, Elohim's building. (10) According to the grace of Elohim which was given to me, as a wise master builder I laid a foundation, and another is building upon it. But let each man be careful how he builds upon it. (11) For no man can lay a foundation other than the one which is laid, which is Yahshua Messiah.***

My counsel for what it is worth: only be guided by the Word of Elohim. Be careful of those false prophets who are among us to lead our people astray. We are warned about them in 2 Peter 2: 1 & 17 – 20, as follows: ***'But false prophets also arose among the people, just as there will also be false teachers among you, who will secretly introduce destructive heresies even denying (from the Greek 'arneomai' – also meaning contradict) the Master who bought them, bringing swift destruction upon themselves. (17) These are springs without water, and mists driven by a storm, for whom the black darkness has been reserved. (18) For speaking out arrogant words of vanity they entice by fleshly desires, by sensuality, those who barely escape from the ones who live in error, (19) promising them freedom they themselves are slaves of corruption (Satan's); for by what a man is overcome, by this he is enslaved. (20) For if after they have escaped the defilements of the world by the knowledge of the Master and Savior Yahshua Messiah, they are again entangled in them and are overcome, the last state has become worse for them than the first.'***

YHVH like most parents wants us to see Him as the loving Father that He is. He would like us to take time out, to get to know Him better. But most of all, He wants us to prove for ourselves that He exists. We read in Deuteronomy 4: 29 as follows: ***"But from there you will seek YHVH your Elohim, and you will find Him if you search for Him with all your heart and all your soul."*** He wants us to find Him in the Scriptures, by studying it for ourselves. Most people go to Sabbath or even Sunday services to be taught by other people, without doing any self-study. I am not saying that that is wrong. We need teachers to teach us the basics, however, our Father wants us to check out what we have learnt from these teachers, in His word, to see whether the things they teach you are indeed so.

The only way to find YHVH is if we seek Him with all our heart and soul – which means intensive study, not only reading Psalm 23 and 121 for the umpteenth time. We find YHVH by studying the scriptures, but also by having our prayers answered. Have you ever had your prayers answered? Do you believe with all your heart that YHVH answers your personal prayers? Have you ever prayed for protection and actually witnessed how YHVH protected you from an accident? I tell you it is quite a fantastic feeling when after an accident occurred you realize that YHVH actually protected you.

The next step in our walk with YHVH is to prove that The Scriptures are indeed Elohim's word and that they are true in every respect. Oh yes, there are mistranslations, but despite those, we can actually prove that the Scriptures are true. An example of this is what Kepha wrote in the second epistle: The phrase "stored with fire" illustrates that Kepha, although not knowledgeable himself about the atom, accurately described the immense power stored within it, which when split, emits much heat and fire, thus causing the disintegration of matter. Peter writes in 2 Peter 3: 10 – 13 (KJV): ***"But the day of YHVH will come as a thief in the night; in the which the heavens shall pass away with a great noise, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat, the earth also and the works that are therein shall be burned up. Seeing then that all these things shall be dissolved, what manner of persons ought ye to be in all holy conversation and godliness. Looking for and hasting unto the coming of the day of Elohim, wherein the heavens being on fire shall be dissolved, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat? Nevertheless we, according to his promise, look for new heavens and a new earth, wherein dwelleth righteousness."***

Here, in what Elohim inspired Kepha to reveal to us, we have the explanation of how Elohim will create room for us to live in His New Earth. It is interesting to note that we could not have clearly understood these verses until the age of Einstein, nearly 2000 years after they were written. Through our modern understanding of nuclear physics, we can grasp something of Elohim's description to Kepha of the immense heat and fire released when He explodes the power of the atom. We see it was also encoded by Elohim in the Set-apart Scriptures long ago. Another scripture that proves that The Scriptures are true can be found in the book of Job 26: 7, as follows: ***"He stretches out the north over empty space, and hangs the earth on nothing."*** Today we know that the North Pole sits on snow and ice and that there are only empty spaces for miles around. We also know that gravity holds the earth in the sky. We see in Hebrews 1: 3 that Yahshua the exact representation of (YHVH)'s nature upholds all things (including the earth) by the word of His power.

If we consider for example who YHVH is and who Yahshua is: We see according to Luke 10: 21 – 24 that only Yahshua can reveal this to us, as follows: ***'At that very time He rejoiced greatly in the Holy Spirit, and said. "I praise Thee, O Father, Master of heaven and earth, that Thou didst hide these things from the wise and intelligent and didst reveal them to babes. Yes, Father, for thus it was well-pleasing in Thy sight. (22) All things have been handed over to Me by My Father, and no one knows who the Son is except the Father, and who the Father is except the Son, and anyone to whom the Son wills to reveal Him. (23) And turning to the disciples, He said privately, "Blessed are the eyes which see the things you see, (24) for I say to you, that many prophets and kings wished to see the things which you see, and did not see them, and to hear the things which you hear, and did not hear them."***

4.2 What is man?

Before we are able to understand who and what Elohim is – we need to know what man is: The reason for this will become evident later in this chapter. What is man composed of according to the Scriptures? There is a great deal of confusion about what various religious groups believe regarding the composition of man. It is for this reason that they do not understand what happens when we die. Some religious groups believe that we are born with immortal souls and at death our souls go to either heaven or hell, depending on how we lived. Others believe that they are reincarnated after they die, to return to earth as another human being or even an animal. This confusion about death is directly attributed to a misunderstanding about what a soul is. The question is, does the soul exist apart from the body? And does it continue to exist after death? The English word soul is translated from the Hebrew word 'nephesh'. The word nephesh means creature. We see according to Genesis 1 that both animals (in verse 21) and human beings (in verse 27) were created ('Barah' as opposed to 'Asah' or to make in Hebrew). Man became a living soul or living being when YHVH breathed into his nostrils (Genesis 2: 7). So both animals and human beings have souls or are living beings. This is in agreement with the Greek word for soul, namely 'Psyche' meaning life

The difference between plant life and animal life is that animals have souls. Their souls give them the instinct to survive, i.e. to propagate their species; to find food; to build shelters (nest), etc. The difference between human beings and animals is that man has a spirit within him. We read about this in the second part Zechariah 12: 1 as follows: ***"Thus declares YHVH who stretches out the heavens, lays the foundation of the earth, and forms the spirit of man within him."*** A second witness to this can be found in Job 32: 8 as follows: ***"But it is a spirit in man, And the breath of the Almighty gives them understanding."*** The final

sentence tells us that it is the spirit in man that gives us the ability to understand, i.e. to evaluate various options open to us, and to make a decision as to which option to choose. But, we are free moral agents, with the ability to choose to go Elohim's way, which is the way of giving and sharing, or the way of get.

The point is, that man does not have an immortal soul and if he sins, he is destined to die as we read in Ezekiel 18: 4 as follows: **“Behold all souls are Mine; the soul of the father as well as the soul of the son is mine. The soul who sins will die.”** A second witness to this is found in Ecclesiastes 9: 5, like this: **‘For the living know they will die; but the dead do not know anything, nor have they any longer a reward, for their memory is forgotten.**’ The Hebrew Tanach teaches that upon death, the soul dies. In Job 14: 12 we read: **“So man lies down and does not rise. Until the heavens be no more, He will not awake nor be aroused out of his sleep.”** In the Renewed Covenant a word similar to nephesh, i.e. psuche meaning life or soul is used. In Matthew 16: 25 – 26 Yahshua said: **“For whoever wishes to save his life shall lose it; but whoever loses his life for My sake shall find it. (26) For what will a man be profited, if he gains the whole world, and forfeits his soul? Or what will a man give in exchange for his soul.”**

This is perhaps why Evolutionists believe that this life is all there is and that we have to make the best of what we have been dealt with, knowing that at least our children are more improved models of us¹⁶. Are they correct?

- Is this life all there is for us, because of the sins of our fore-fathers?
- Is there a purpose for us to be here on earth?
- What happens when we die?

If you think, that we are unique in wanting to have answers to these questions, you are wrong. By reading the book of Psalms, we see that King David asked a similar question in Psalm 8: 3 & 4, as follows: **“When I consider Your heavens, the work of Your fingers, the moon and the stars, which You ordained; (4) What is man, that You are mindful of him?”** To find out more about what lies ahead for mankind, we turn to the book of Daniel, where Daniel gives us another pointer in Daniel 12: 2 & 3, in this way: **“And many of those who sleep in the dust of the ground will awake, these to everlasting life, but the others to disgrace and everlasting contempt. (3) And those who have insight will shine brightly like the brightness of the expanse of heaven, and those who lead the many to righteousness, like the stars for ever and ever.”** We see here that mankind's future is linked to the moon and to the stars. We also see that there is a fantastic future ahead for those who lead many to righteousness. It is for that very reason that we need to share this good news with fellow human beings. We need to start telling people about the coming Kingdom of Elohim, but we must also tell them about the benefits to be had by serving Him at this time.

But, to fully understand the purpose of life, we need to know how human life started on the earth. We return therefore to the book of Genesis, where we read from Chapter 1 how YHVH created the heavens and the earth and populated it with living creatures. However, we see that human kind was different from the rest of the life forms that YHVH created, as we read from verse 27 of Genesis 1, **“And Elohim created man in His own image, in the image of Elohim He created him, male and female He created them.”** We know from Colossians 1: 15 that Yahshua is the image of the invisible Elohim. The account of the creation of the first man and woman, in the image of Elohim, should give us a hint as to our ultimate destiny.

Prior to sinning mankind was destined to live forever, they were covered in light as depicted in the last part of verses 26 through 28 of Ezekiel 1, as follows: **“and on that which resembled a throne, high up, was a figure with the appearance of a man. (27) Then I noticed from the appearance of His loins and upward something like glowing metal that looked like fire all around within it, and from the appearance of His loins and downward I saw something like fire; and there was a radiance around Him. (28) As the appearance of the rainbow in the clouds on a rainy day, so was the appearance of the surrounding radiance. Such was the appearance of the likeness of the esteem of YHVH. And when I saw it, I fell on my face and heard a voice speaking.”** This is talking about what Yahshua the likeness of Elohim looked like, prior to coming in the flesh. This is also what He looked like at His transfiguration in Matthew 17: 2 **“And He was transfigured before them; and His face shone like the sun, and His garments became white as light.”** This is also what He will look like when He returns, as we understand from Revelation 1: 14 & 15, like this: **‘And His head and His hair were white like white wool, like snow; and His eyes were like a flame of fire; (15) and His feet were like burnished bronze, when it has been caused to glow in a furnace,**

¹⁶ It brings to mind the story about the Rabbi and the evolutionist traveling by train with their sons. The evolutionist's son was very rude and ran all over the place, without listening to reprimands from his father. The Rabbi's son sat quietly next to him, reading a book. Asked the evolutionist, How do you manage to control the lad so well? The Rabbi answered: 'My son respects me as being one step closer to the Creator than what he is, as opposed to your son, who sees himself as superior to you, since he is one step further away from being a monkey, than what you are.'

and His voice was like the sound of many waters.’ In fact we see in Psalm 104: 1 & 2, that YHVH is covered in light as follows: **‘Bless YHVH, O my soul! O YHVH my Elohim, Thou art very great; Thou art clothed with splendor and majesty, (2) Covering Thyself with light as a cloak, stretching out heaven like a tent curtain.’**

After creation, Adam and Eve were given the choice whether to follow YHVH and have a relationship with Him that could lead to eternal life. YHVH told Adam what to eat and what not to eat. YHVH said to Adam in Genesis 2: 17, **“but from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil you shall not eat, for in the day that you eat from it you shall surely die.”** But we see according to Genesis 3: 4 that Satan told Eve that she would not die, after eating from the tree of knowledge of good and evil. Satan contradicted what YHVH said and deceived Eve telling her that she would not die. Most people even today still believe the lie that we are ‘immortal’. Satan has not only deceived our original mother Eve, but has as it says in Revelation 12: 9 **“deceived the whole world.”**

When Adam and Eve sinned, their light covering was removed and they were covered in skin and destined to die. We read about this in Genesis 3: 21 **“And YHVH Elohim made garments of skin¹⁷ for Adam and his wife, and clothed them.”** Since then all mankind are destined to die once. We are physical and therefore we age and eventually die, as YHVH told Adam in Genesis 3: 19. Even so, YHVH knew that mankind would fail Him and planned our salvation long before the creation of Adam and Eve, as we read from 2 Timothy 1: 9 (KJV), in this way: **“Who hath saved us, and called us with a Set-apart calling, not according to our works, but according to his own purpose and grace, which was given us in Messiah Yahshua before the world began.”** A second witness to this is found in Revelation 13: 8 (KJV), **“And all that dwell upon the earth shall worship him, whose names are not written in the book of life of the Lamb slain from the foundation of the world.”** We read further how YHVH reconciled us to Himself in Colossians 1: 19 & 22 as follows: **“For it was the Father’s good pleasure for all the fullness to dwell in Him (Yahshua), (20) and through Him to reconcile all things to Himself, having made peace through the blood of His stake; through Him, I say, whether things on earth or things in heaven. (21) And although you were formerly alienated and hostile in mind, engaged in evil deeds, (22) yet He has now reconciled you in His fleshly body through death, in order to present you before Him Set-apart and blameless and beyond reproach.”** This tells us that we will once again be able to receive, what our original parents had before they sinned, as is also witnessed in Romans 6: 23, in this way: **“For the wages of sin is death, but the free gift of Elohim is eternal life in Messiah Yahshua our Master.”**

However, we are told in Proverbs 15: 33, that YHVH requires us to learn humility through our physical existence, before He will give us eternal life, as follows: **“The fear of YHVH is the instruction for wisdom, and before honor come humility.”** Rav Shaul explains how Yahshua also went through this important experience, in Philippians 2: 6 – 9, in this way: **“who, although He existed in the form of Elohim, did not regard equality with Elohim a thing to be grasped, (7) but emptied Himself, taking the form of a bond servant, (8) and being made in the likeness of them (mankind). And being found in appearance as a man, He humbled Himself by becoming obedient to the point of death, even the death on a tree. (9) Therefore also Elohim highly exalted Him and bestowed on Him the name which is above every name.”** We know that that name is YHVH saves or Yahshua. When we are humble, we become teachable and it is only when we become teachable, that YHVH reveals His ways and purpose to us.

It is His purpose to bring many sons to glory, so that Elohim and all humanity will be of the same family, as explained in Hebrews 2: 8 – 12, in this way: **“THOU HAST PUT ALL THINGS IN SUBJECTION UNDER HIS FEET.” For in subjecting all things to him, He left nothing that is not subject to him. But now we do not yet see all things subjected to him (us). (9) But we do see Him who has been made for a little while lower than the angels, namely Yahshua, because of the suffering of death crowned with the grace of Elohim He might taste death for everyone. (10) For it was fitting for Him, for whom are all things, and through whom are all things, in bringing many sons to glory, to perfect the author of their salvation through sufferings. (11) For both He who sanctifies and those who are sanctified (us) are all from one Father; for which reason He is not ashamed to call them brethren, (12) saying, “I WILL PROCLAIM THY NAME TO MY BRETHREN, IN THE MIDST OF THE CONGREGATION I WILL SING THY PRAISE.” “For it was fitting for Him, for whom are all things, and through whom are all things, in bringing many sons to glory, to perfect the author of their salvation through suffering. For both He who sanctifies and those who are sanctified are all from one Father; for which reason He is not ashamed to call them**

¹⁷ In Hebrew both the word light (אור) and skin (עור) are pronounced as ‘ohr’, however, the word light is spelt with an aleph and skin with an ayin. Many Christians, Messianic Jews and even Nazarene Jews/Israelites believe that in the account in Genesis 3: 21 YHVH slaughtered a lamb as sacrifice for their sin and to dress Adam and Eve in lamb skin. However, the Scriptures do not say that.

brethren.” But, before YHVH gives us the blessing of eternal life – our destiny as His children, He requests that each of us on an individual basis accepts His way of life, so that we may live in peace with our brethren and others. To fully realize our human potential, we need to recognize and fight Satan’s influence in our lives. Satan is the fallen angel who has brought chaos and confusion to the earth and its inhabitants. We are told in Revelation 12: 9 that Satan is responsible for deceiving the whole world. His main function according to 2 Corinthians 4: 4 is to blind the minds of unbelievers so that they do not see the light of the gospel of the image of Elohim, namely Yahshua our Messiah.

Even if all of this sounds unbelievable, we need to understand that we were created to be changed into spirit beings as the immortal children of YHVH our Elohim, as we read from Romans 8: 16 & 17, one of the most inspiring passages that Rav Shaul wrote, as follows: **“The Spirit Himself bears witness with our spirit that we are children of Elohim, (17) and if children, heirs also, heirs of Elohim and fellow heirs with Messiah, if indeed we suffer with Him in order that we may also be glorified (exalted) with Him.”** YHVH will ultimately change our bodies from flesh to spirit as we read from 1 Corinthians 15: 42 – 44, in this way: **‘So also is the resurrection of the dead. It is sown a perishable body, it is raised an imperishable body; (43) it is sown in dishonor, it is raised in glory; it is sown in weakness, it is raised in power; (44) it is sown a natural body, it is raised a spiritual body. If there is a natural body, there is also a spiritual body.’** We see further from verses 50 - 53, that to achieve our potential, we must be changed through a resurrection from physical bodies, to immortal children of Elohim. We see the conclusion of the matter in verse 54, as follows: **‘But when this perishable will have put on the imperishable, and this mortal will have put on immortality, then will come about the saying that is written, “Death is swallowed up in victory.”’**

These scriptures show plainly why we are here on earth. This is in fact the answer to the question that King David asked in Psalm 8: 4, (**“what is man that thou art mindful of him?”**). The answer to his question, was in the word of Elohim all the time. However, knowing the answer, poses another question. The question is: What does YHVH expect of us?

As students of Yahshua, we are expected to learn, live and teach Elohim’s way of life – the way of give and love through obedience to His teachings. His teachings or Torah teaches us that it is through obedience to Him that we show our love to Him. This is spelt out in 1 John 5:3 as follows: **“For this is the love of Elohim, that we keep His commandments. And His commandments are not burdensome.”**

In fact this knowledge of Elohim’s purpose for mankind, our amazing future is absolutely too much for us to understand. Do you know that not many religious people are aware of this. But this is in fact what YHVH our Elohim says that He has prepared for those of us who love Him, according to 1 Corinthians 2: 9 -11: **‘but just as it is written, “Things which eye has not seen and ear has not heard, And which have not entered the heart of man, All that Elohim has prepared for those who love Him.” (10) For to us Elohim revealed them through the Spirit; for the Spirit searches all things, even the depths of Elohim. (11) For who among men knows the thoughts of a man except the spirit of the man, which is in him? Even so the thoughts of Elohim no one knows except the Spirit of Elohim.’** YHVH revealed all the necessary knowledge to Adam and Eve, but they did not obey Him. Then again when Elohim came to dwell with mankind as Yahshua our Messiah, or the second Adam, only a few believed what He said. Even today, many who profess to believe in Him, does not believe in what He taught – this is why so many, even amongst us Nazarene Israelites contradict (or deny) Him.

What a revelation – do you grasp it? We saw in Hebrews 1 that Yahshua our Messiah, the first-born from the dead has been glorified and now upholds the universe by the word of His power (verses 2 & 3). He has gone before us and at His return in power and esteem, those who have been immersed into His Name and received a portion of the Set-apart Spirit, will, if we qualify by overcoming Satan, the world, and the self, be born into the Elohim family, by our resurrection. At that time we will become kings and priests under Yahshua Messiah and the entire universe will be put into subjection under us. Now you might ask, why should the whole universe be longing for the appearing of the sons of Elohim? We read from Hebrews 8: 19 to 21, **“(For) the anxious longing of the creation waits eagerly for the revealing of the sons of Elohim. (20) For the creation was subject to futility, not of its own will, but because of Him who subjected it, in hope (21) that the creation itself also will be set free from its slavery to corruption into the freedom of the glory (esteem) of the children of Elohim.”** YHVH did not create the universe in futility or decay: The entire universe, with all the planets has initially been created to sustain life. But prior to the creation of mankind, angels inhabited the earth. These angels rebelled against Elohim and caused the whole earth to turn into a state of decay, the condition as we see it in Genesis 1: 2.

We read further from Romans 8: 22 & 23 that the whole creation (universe) groans and suffers the pains of childbirth together until now: The creation is pictured here as a mother in travail, about to deliver a child. The universe is in this case awaiting the birth of the children of Elohim. This tells us that presently the entire

universe; the suns and planets are all in a state of decay and futility, waiting for immersed humans to be born again as children of Elohim into His family. After the second resurrection, we will be given authority over the entire universe under Elohim: We will be responsible to restore the universe, including the planets, to the state in which they were originally created.

We see in 1 Corinthians 15: 24 ***'then comes the end, when He delivers up the kingdom to the Elohim and Father, when He has abolished all rule and authority and power.'*** Next we read in Zechariah 14: 9 ***"And YHVH will be king over all the earth; in that day YHVH will be the only one, and His name the only one."*** Yes we will ultimately be united in the family of Elohim, as we read in Revelation 21: 3 ***'And I heard a loud voice from the throne, saying, "Behold the tabernacle of Elohim is among men, and He shall dwell among them, and they shall be His people, and Elohim Himself shall be among them."*** We read from Isaiah 9: 7 that there will be no end of Elohim's government or of peace. After the day of judgment the universe will be renovated by fire and the elements will be destroyed with intense heat as we read in 2 Peter 3: 10. Next, we are told by Yochanan in Revelation 21 that he saw a new heaven and a new earth; for the first heaven and the first earth will have passed away. This will be the last and permanent world, in which only the righteous will be allowed to dwell. This will be the conclusion of Elohim's plan, when the universe will finally be recreated, with eternity before us!

4.3 Who or What is YHVH?

We read in Deuteronomy 6: 4, ***"Hear, O Israel! YHVH is our Elohim – YHVH is one!"*** How do we understand the word one? One means a single thing or unit, not two or more. The same applies to the Hebrew word for one, which is transliterated as 'echad'. If you ask any Hebrew-speaking toddler what the word 'echad' means, he/she will put up one finger. How does YHVH who is the Almighty, define the word one. In Deuteronomy 32: 39, He says: ***"See now that I, I am He, And there is no god besides Me"***. However, we see according to Genesis 1: 5 that 'One' may be composed of more than a single part, i.e. ***"And Elohim called the light day, and the darkness He called night. And there was evening and there was morning, one (echad) day."***

According to Deuteronomy 4: 12, YHVH has no form, as follows: ***"Then YHVH spoke to you from the midst of the fire; you heard the sound of words, but you saw no form – only a voice."*** In addition we see that YHVH is infinite according to 1 Kings 8: 27, ***"But will Elohim dwell on the earth? Behold, heaven and the highest heaven cannot contain Thee, how much less this house which I have built!"*** It is for this reason that man's mind cannot understand YHVH, as He cannot be defined nor can He be bordered. This is perhaps why it is so difficult to try to explain the essence of Elohim, whom we know, is boundless and infinite. To try to explain the unexplained, we make use of the Hebrew words 'Eyn Sof'. Eyn Sof is the very essence of Elohim, as in Hebrew Eyn means 'there is nothing' and Sof means 'end', 'termination', 'border' or 'definition'. Together, Eyn Sof implies without definition or borders. To tell the truth, Eyn Sof cannot be defined and we cannot even understand the term.

Look at another person, a tree, or even your computer. All these things are "substance" that cannot be defined unless they are bordered. They are molecules that cannot be seen or defined, unless they are bound together. When a believer dies, his/her body (and soul) is buried and returns to the dust from which it was made. The believer's spirit which cannot be seen returns to the Father who gave it to the believer at immersion. Even though the believer's borders has been removed or taken away, yet he/she exists, be it in another dimension. In support of this, Yahshua said to Martha in John 11: 25 & 26, ***"I am the resurrection and the life; he who believes in Me shall live even if he dies, and everyone who lives and believes in Me shall never die. Do you believe this?"*** This is talking about the spirits of true believers, that go back to YHVH when we die, and are perfected in heaven according to Hebrews 12: 23, as follows: ***'to the general assembly and ecclesia of the first-born, who are enrolled in heaven, and to Elohim, the Judge of all, and to the spirits of righteous men made perfect.'***

Anything visible and anything that can be grasped by thought is bounded or finite. Conversely, the boundless is Eyn Sof or infinite. Since Eyn Sof is boundless, there is nothing outside of it. It transcends and conceals itself, it is the essence of everything hidden and revealed. Eyn Sof cannot be expressed, though it is intimated in everything that exists, as there is nothing outside of it. No letter, no name, no writing, nothing can define or confine it. Eyn Sof has no will, no intention, no thought, no speech and no action, yet all these things exist because of its existence and by Him bordering these concepts in order that we might relate to it. Yet, the Scriptures do assign attributes to YHVH our Elohim.

These attributes can clearly be seen in the following passages:

Isaiah 11: 2, "And the Spirit of YHVH (Keter) will rest on Him, the spirit of wisdom (Chochmah) and understanding (Binah), the spirit of counsel (Atzah) and strength (Gevurah), the spirit of knowledge (Da'at) and of the fear (yirah) of YHVH."; ***First Chronicles 29:11, "Thine, O YHVH, is the greatness***

(Chesed), **and the power** (Gevurah), **and the glory** (Tiferet), **and the victory** (Netzach), **and the majesty** (Hod), **indeed everything that is in the heavens and in the earth; Thine is the dominion** (Malkut), **O YHVH, and Thou dost exalt Thyself as head over all.**"; Isaiah 28: 16, **"Behold, I am laying in Zion a stone, a tested stone, a costly cornerstone for the foundation (Yesod) firmly placed. He who believes in it will not be disturbed."**; Second Chronicles 20: 21, **"Give thanks to YHVH, for His lovingkindness (mercy - Chesed) is everlasting."**

These attributes list out as follows:

1. The Spirit of YHVH (called Crown [Keter]).
2. Wisdom (Chockmah).
3. Understanding (Binah).
4. Mercy, LOVE (Chesed) (also Gedulah and Atzah).
5. Severity (Gevurah).
6. Harmony/Beauty (Tiferet).
7. Victory (Netzach).
8. Splendor (Hod).
9. Foundation (Yesod).
10. Kingdom/Kingship (Malchut).

At this point it becomes clear why it was important to know what man is. As mentioned before, mankind is made up of three component parts, namely: spirit, soul and body - yet as individuals we are one. Similarly YHVH our Elohim is composed of three parts as is so aptly explained in Romans 1: 19 – 20, as follows: **"Because that which is known about Elohim is evident within them** (mankind); **for Elohim made it evident to them. For since the creation of the world His invisible qualities** (YHVH is invisible, and has no form¹⁸), **His eternal power** (Yahshua is the power of Elohim¹⁹) **and divine nature** (The Set-apart Spirit is the divine nature of Elohim²⁰), **have been clearly seen, being understood through what has been made, so that they are without excuse."** This means that YHVH is not three persons in one, but like us, He consists of three parts.

For those who assert that this is the doctrine of the Trinity, permit me to state that this does not say that you, who like all other human beings are composed of body, soul and spirit, are a trinity or three persons in one. Instead it clearly teaches that although you have three component parts, of which two are invisible, you as an individual is only one person. It should therefore be clear that this does not teach the doctrine of the Trinity at all.

However, let's turn to the beginning of the Scriptures, where we read in Genesis 1: 1, **'In the beginning Elohim created the heavens and the earth.'** This is transliterated in Hebrew as: *'Bereshit bara Elohim et ha'shamayin v'et ha'erezt.'* The 2100 year old Aramaic Jerusalem translation of Genesis 1: 1 reads: **'With wisdom Elohim created the heavens and the earth.'** The Jerusalem translation is by no means unique, since the book of Proverbs, written approximately a thousand years earlier, states in verses 12, 22 - 23 of Proverbs 8, **"I, wisdom, dwell with prudence, and I find knowledge and discretion. (22) YHVH possessed** (or brought me forth) **me at the beginning of His way, before His works of old. (23) From everlasting I was established, from the beginning, from the earliest times of the earth."** This tells us

¹⁸ 1Timothy 1: 17, **"Now to the King eternal, immortal, invisible, the only Elohim, be honor and glory forever and ever. Amen."** This is confirmed in 1Timothy 6: 16, like this: **"who alone possesses immortality and dwells in unapproachable light; whom no man has seen or can see. To Him be honor and eternal dominion! Amen."** YHVH can not be understood by mankind, because we cannot see or define Him. He is the invisible Elohim.

¹⁹ Jeremiah 32: 17 informs us that YHVH created the heavens and the earth by His great power, as follows: **'Ah YHVH Elohim! Behold, Thou hast made the heavens and the earth by Thy great power and by Thine outstretched arm! Nothing is too difficult for Thee.'** Isaiah 52: 10 states that: **"YHVH has bared His holy arm in the sight of all the nations, that all the ends of the earth may see the salvation of our Elohim."** The name Yahshua means salvation as can be understood from Matthew 1: 21, **"And she will bear a Son; and you shall call His name Yahshua, for it is He who will save His people from their sins."** Yahshua the salvation of YHVH is His right hand and holy arm as may be understood by reading Isaiah 53. In 1 Corinthians 1: 24 we read; **"but to those who are called, both Jews and Greeks, Messiah the power of Elohim and the wisdom of Elohim."** Yes YHVH has brought Israel out of both the slavery of Egypt and sin, with a **powerful hand**: He indeed is our Savior.

²⁰ The spiritual essence of YHVH is His **divine nature**. We are given a portion of His divine nature when we are immersed, according to Ephesians 1: 13 - 14, as follows: **"In Him you also, after listening to the message of truth, the gospel of salvation – having also believed, you were sealed in Him with the Set-apart Spirit of promise, who is given as a pledge of our inheritance, with a view to the redemption of Elohim's own possession, to the praise of His glory."** We demonstrate the fruit of the Spirit or divine nature of love, peace, patience, kindness, goodness and the like, by the indwelling of the Set-apart Spirit. We read in 1 Corinthians 2: 11 - 12, **"For who among men knows the thoughts of a man except the spirit of the man, which is in him? Even so the thoughts of Elohim no one knows except the Spirit of Elohim. Now we have received, not the spirit of the world, but the Spirit who is from Elohim, that we might know the things freely given to us by Elohim."** We are also told in 2 Peter 1: 4 that we may become partakers of the divine nature.

that wisdom was there right at the beginning of creation. We also read in Revelation 3: 14, ***“And to the angel of the ecclesia in Laodicea write: The Amein, the faithful and true Witness, the Beginning of the creation of Elohim, says this.”*** We see that the same words, ‘the beginning’ (transliterated as ‘Bereshit’ in Hebrew) appears in Genesis 1: 1; Proverbs 8: 22 - 23; and in Revelation 3: 14. In addition we read in Psalms 33: 6, ***‘By the word of YHVH the heavens were made,’*** and in Jeremiah 32: 17, ***‘Ah YHVH Elohim! Behold, Thou hast made the heavens and the earth by thy great power and by Thine outstretched arm! Nothing is too difficult for Thee.’***

But we know that there is yet another place in the Scriptures where the words ‘the beginning’ appear. Turning to John 1: 1 – 3, we read: ***‘In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with Elohim, and the Word was Elohim. (2) He was in the beginning with Elohim. (3) All things came into being by Him, and apart from Him nothing came into being that has come into being.’*** This confirms that Elohim created everything, by His Word. Continuing in verse 14 of John 1, we read: ***‘And the Word became flesh, and dwelt among us, and we beheld His glory, glory as of the only begotten from the Father, full of grace and truth.’*** At this point we know that the Word was Elohim, but are still not sure about His true identity. To find out more we turn to 1 John 4: 2, where we read: ***‘By this you know the Spirit of Elohim: every spirit that confesses that Yahshua Messiah has come in the flesh is from Elohim.’*** This tells us that Yahshua was somewhere else before He was born as a ‘human’. Next we read in Matthew 1: 21 - 23, ***“And she will bear a Son; and you shall call His name Yahshua, for it is He who will save His people from their sins.”*** (22) ***Now all this took place that what was spoken by YHVH through the prophet might be fulfilled, saying, (23) BEHOLD, THE VIRGIN SHALL BE WITH CHILD, AND SHALL BEAR A SON, AND THEY SHALL CALL HIS NAME IMMANUEL,”*** which translated means, ***“ELOHIM WITH US.”***

From this we can say that Yahshua Messiah was Elohim in the flesh. But, the question is: Is this the so-called lesser YHVH who became Yahshua, as some believe? Not according to Deuteronomy 4: 39, where we read: ***“Know therefore today, and take it to heart, that YHVH, He is Elohim in heaven above and on earth below; there is no other.”*** We are also reminded of Yahshua’s words in John 14: 6 – 9, ***‘Yahshua said to him (Thomas), “I am the way, and the truth, and the life; no one comes to the Father, but through Me. (7) If you had known Me, you would have known My Father also; from now on you know Him, and have seen Him.” (8) ‘Philip said to Him, “Master, show us the Father, and it is enough for us.” (9) ‘Yahshua said to Him, “Have I been so long with you, and yet you have not come to know Me, Philip? He who has seen Me has seen the Father; how do you say, ‘Show us the Father?’”*** A further witness is recorded in Colossians 2: 9, in this way: ***‘For in Him (Yahshua) all the fullness of Deity (Elohim) dwells in bodily form.’***

According to 1 Corinthians 1: 24, Messiah is both the power and wisdom of Elohim. In addition, Yahshua is described as the right hand of YHVH. But, some assert that YHVH created the heavens and the earth through and not by Yahshua. Even so, Jeremiah 32: 17, clearly states: ***‘Ah YHVH Elohim! Behold, Thou has made the heavens and the earth by Thy great power and by Thine outstretched arm! Nothing is too difficult for Thee.’*** Continuing in Isaiah 44: 6, we read: ***‘Thus says YHVH, the King of Israel and his Redeemer, YHVH of hosts; “I am the first and I am the last, and there is no Elohim besides Me.”*** Yahshua said the very same thing to Yochanan in Revelation 1: 17 - 18, in this way: ***‘And when I saw Him, I fell at His feet as a dead man. And He laid His right hand upon me saying: “Do not be afraid; I am the first and the last, (18) and the living One; and I was dead, and behold, I am alive forevermore, and I have the keys of death and Hades.”*** We read further in Revelation 22: 12 - 13, Yahshua saying: ***“Behold, I am coming quickly, and My reward is with Me, to render to every man according to what he has done. (13) “I am the Alpha and the Omega, the first and the last, the beginning and the end.”*** Who then is the First and the Last? How can both be the First and the Last? Who is lying here? We are told in the first part of Numbers 23: 19, ***“Elohim is not a man, that He should lie.”*** It is clear therefore; no one is lying - it is simply as Yahshua said in John 10: 30, ***“I and the Father are one”***. Even so, there are those who insist that this is not what Yahshua meant here, but YHVH Himself talking about Yahshua in Isaiah from chapter 42 verse 1, clarifies the point in Isaiah 43 : 10 - 11, saying to us (the two witnesses – the Jews and the remnant of us called out at this time): ***“You are My witnesses” declares YHVH, “And My servant whom I have chosen, In order that you may know and believe Me, And understand that I am He*** (the same words used by YHVH to tell Moses that He is the I Am in Exodus 3: 14). ***Before Me there was no Elohim formed, And there will be none after Me. I, even I, am YHVH and there is no savior besides Me.”***

But, who is the speaker in Revelation 21: 5 – 7, saying: ***‘And He who sits on the throne said, “Behold, I am making all things new.” And He said, “Write, for these words are faithful and true.” (6) And He said to me, “It is done, I am the Alpha and the Omega, the beginning and the end. I will give to the one who thirsts from the spring of water of life without cost. (7) He who overcomes shall inherit these things, and I will be his Elohim and he will be My son.”*** Could the speaker be Yahshua, and if so, how will the one who overcomes be His son? The answer is found in Isaiah 9: 6, as follows: ***‘For a child will be born to us, a son will be given to us; and the government will rest on His shoulders; and His name will be***

called Wonderful Counselor, Mighty Elohim, Eternal Father, Prince of Peace. There are those that assert that Yahshua was a created being, however, we see here that He existed eternally.

This is confirmed in a prophecy about Yahshua in Micah 5: 2, as follows: **“But as for you, Bethlehem Ephrathah, too little to be known among the clans of Judah, from you One will go forth for Me to be ruler in Israel. His goings forth are from long ago, from the days of eternity.”** In addition the side reference against the words Eternal Father in Isaiah 9: 6, refers the reader to Isaiah 63: 16, where we read: **‘For Thou art our Father, though Abraham does not know us, and Israel does not recognize us. Thou, O YHVH, art our Father. Our Redeemer of old is Thy name.’** If you are confused at this point, you are not alone, as we are told in Isaiah 8: 14, **“Then He shall become a sanctuary; But to both houses of Israel, a stone to strike and a rock to stumble over, and a snare and a trap for the inhabitants of Jerusalem.”** Yes the Rock mentioned in Deuteronomy 32: 4 and Isaiah 26: 4 is YHVH. But, we are also aware that Yahshua was the rock from which our forefathers received water in the wilderness, as is confirmed in 1 Corinthians 10: 4, in this way: **“and all drank the same spiritual drink, for they were drinking from a spiritual rock which followed them: and the rock was Messiah.”**

Let's for a moment reflect on the word stone (אבן) transliterated as 'Eben' in Hebrew: The two words Father or 'Abba' (אב) & Son or 'Ben' (בן) overlap in the word stone. We can literally say that the Son is in the Father and the Father is in the Son as is confirmed by Yahshua in John 10: 37 - 38: **“If I do not do the works of My Father, do not believe Me; (38) but if I do them, though you do not believe Me, believe the works, that you may know and understand that the Father is in Me, and I in the Father.”**

Are you still unsure? If so you are not alone. We read in John 12: 37 - 38, **‘But though He had performed so many signs before them, yet they were not believing in Him; (38) that the word of Isaiah the prophet might be fulfilled, which he spoke, “YHVH, WHO HAS BELIEVED OUR REPORT? AND TO WHOM HAS THE ARM OF YHVH BEEN REVEALED?”** We may study the Oneness as much as we like, yet, still stumble over it.

YHVH "bordered" certain parts of His being in order that man could relate to Him in some way. Some of these parts are defined or bordered within the revelation of the ten attributes of YHVH, listed previously. Through these parts we can "see" the man Yahshua, certain parts of YHVH bordered in His person. We can understand His words, see His compassion, witness His love, and see how He relates to humankind in this manner. He said to Thomas in John 14: 7 **“If you had known Me, you would have known My Father also; from now on you know Him, and have seen Him.”** Since, we can relate to Yahshua, we are also able to 'find' our way to YHVH through Him. But, we need to understand that YHVH did not put all of Himself within the borders of Yahshua, as it is impossible to place infinity within something finite. We know that all Jews are Israelites, but not all Israelites are Jews. Do you get the meaning? YHVH "became" a man in Yahshua, but Yahshua does not "contain" all of what YHVH is.... because YHVH cannot be contained within definable borders, as He is Eyn Sof.

Yahshua is not another YHVH: He is the visible image of YHVH that was manifested in the flesh, the purpose of which was that He the Creator of Mankind could be their Kinsman Redeemer – He died for the sins of mankind and to be able to remarry His bride Israel, whom He divorced because of her adultery with the pagan gods of this world. Only the life of YHVH is worth more than the lives of all of mankind together - so only He could redeem us from the second death. We read accordingly in Psalms 49: 7, **“No man can by any means redeem his brother, Or give to Elohim a ransom for him-”** and in verse 15, **“But Elohim will redeem my soul from the power of sheol, for He will receive me.”** This confirms that only YHVH our Elohim can redeem us or pay for our sins; YHVH is our Savior, which is the meaning of the name Yahshua.

Nevertheless, the oneness of Elohim is revealed to us - it is not something that we learn, as Yahshua explained in Matthew 11: 25 – 27, in this way: **‘At that time Yahshua answered and said, “I praise Thee, O Father, Master of heaven and earth, that Thou didst hide these things from the wise and intelligent and didst reveal them to babes. Yes, Father, for thus it was well-pleasing in Thy sight. All things have been handed over to Me by My Father; and no one knows the Son, except the Father; nor does anyone know the Father, except the Son, and anyone to whom the Son wills to reveal Him.”**

The reason why religious leaders have different opinions about the so-called godhead, is because they accept what they have been told by their groups or the seminary where they qualified, without an in depth study of the entire Scriptures. We are told in amongst other Deuteronomy 31: 17, Psalm 104: 24, and Job 13: 24 that YHVH hides Himself from us. He wants us to dig a little deeper in the Scriptures to find Him, as we are told in Deuteronomy 4: 29. We are also told in Proverbs 25: 2, that: **‘It is the glory of Elohim to conceal a matter, but the glory of kings is to search out a matter.’** But, I hear you saying: we are not kings, so why should we bother? We are told in Revelation 2: 26, if we overcome (Satan, the world and the self), we

will have authority (or rule) over nations during the millennium. As kings and priests in the making, it is incumbent upon each one of us, to search for YHVH in the Scriptures. We are given a clue to who and what YHVH is in one of the other places, (i.e. Isaiah 45: 15), where YHVH tells us that He hides Himself, like this: ***‘Truly, Thou art an Elohim who hides Himself, O Elohim of Israel, Savior!’*** (the underlined section transliterated in Hebrew reads: Elohey Yisrael moshiya). If we ignore for the moment, the fact that YHVH is hiding Himself and wants us to search for Him, a second option to solving the mystery is to simply take Him at His word. If YHVH says He is One, why do we not believe Him?

Some may correctly ask the question: How then did Yahshua say that His Father is Greater than Him? The answer is as explained before; the One who walked the earth in ‘human form’ was finite, and as such, the Father being the infinite Elohim, was indeed greater than Him. The one spiritual essence of the Almighty is omnipresence. For since space is infinite, and an omnipotent Elohim must be able to act and be anywhere in space. He is always there. YHVH sees us wherever we go. If we go flying like a bird, or even, if we go underground, He sees us there, according to the Psalms. And again in Jeremiah 23: 23 - 24 He says: ***“Am I an Elohim who is near,” declares YHVH, “And not an Elohim far off?” “Can a man hide himself in hiding places, so I do not see him?” declares YHVH. “Do I not fill the heavens and the earth?” declares YHVH’*** So it is possible that He can be in more than one place at the same time, i.e. in heaven and on earth. That is why as a finite ‘human being’, even though of the same essence as YHVH, Yahshua could pray to His Father in Heaven. It sounds confusing, but do not let your confusion result in you trying to explain our Heavenly Father differently as He Himself does in the first part of Isaiah 45: 5, ***“I am YHVH, and there is no other; besides Me there is no Elohim.”***

Some might ask how it is possible for YHVH our Elohim to sit at His own right hand. Again the answer lies in His omnipresence. YHVH can be everywhere, at all times, even at His own right hand. However, in Psalm 98: 1 we read: ***“O sing to YHVH a new song, For He has done wonderful things, His right hand and his holy arm have gained victory for Him.”*** The right hand and holy arm of YHVH refers to Messiah (see Isaiah 53: 1). For thirty three and a half years whilst Yahshua was on earth He was the image of Elohim, manifested in the flesh or Immanuel meaning Elohim with us. He is even now the chief manifestation of the One True Elohim, at the right hand of YHVH, where He will remain until He returns to rule the nations from Jerusalem for a thousand years.

After the thousand years, the New Jerusalem will come down from Heaven, at which time YHVH will reign forever and ever, as the One True Elohim. We read about this in 1 Corinthians 15: 22 - 28: ***“For as in Adam all die, so also in Messiah all shall be made alive. But each in his own order: Messiah the first fruits, after that those who are Messiah’s at His coming, then comes the end (ones), when He delivers up the kingdom to Elohim the Father, when He has abolished all rule and all authority and power. For He must reign until He has put all His enemies under His feet. The last enemy that will be abolished is death. For HE HAS PUT ALL THINGS IN SUBJECTION UNDER HIS FEET. But when He says, ‘All things are put in subjection,’ it is evident that He is expected who put all things in subjection to Him. And when all things are subjected to Him, then the Son Himself also will be subjected to the One who subjected all things to Him, that Elohim may be all in all.”*** This is confirmed in Zechariah 14: 9 as follows: ***“And YHVH shall be King over all the earth; In that day YHVH will be the only one, and His name the only one.”***

Some might be able to explain away what we read in the latter part of 2 Peter 1:1 ***“...by the righteousness of our Elohim and Savior, Yahshua Messiah.”*** But how do believers who believe that there are two (YHVH)s explain the singular reference used for Elohim and the Lamb in Revelation 22: 3 & 4, as follows: ***“And there shall no longer be any curse; and the throne of Elohim and the Lamb shall be in it, and His bond servants shall serve Him: and they shall see His face, and His name shall be on their foreheads.”***

We were made in the image of Elohim, but have since the fall of man, become out of balance or harmony, with the true image of Elohim, namely Yahshua. It is therefore necessary for us to follow Yahshua the word or image of Elohim, in order to align ourselves with Him. This is how we may understand what Rav Shaul was saying in 2 Corinthians 3: 18, in this way: ***‘But we all, with unveiled face beholding as in a mirror the glory of the Master, are being transformed into the same image from glory to glory, just as from the Master, the Spirit.’***

We need to be careful not to be deceived by the wiles of Satan and his servants. We are warned accordingly in Hebrews 10: 29 – 31: ***“How much severer punishment do you think he will deserve who has trampled under foot the Son of Elohim, and has regarded as unclean the blood of the covenant by which he was sanctified and has insulted the Spirit of grace? (30) For we know Him who said, “VENGEANCE IS MINE I WILL REPAY.” And again, “YHVH will judge His people.” (31) It is a terrifying thing to fall into the hands of the living Elohim.”*** We were told in Romans 1: 19 & 20 that we are without

excuse, since what is known about Elohim is evident within us (mankind). We are also warned in verses 21 – 23 of Romans 1, not to exchange the glory of Elohim, for an image in the form of a corruptible man and of birds and four-footed animals and crawling creatures (i.e. created beings). Yes, Yahshua was not a created being; He was brought forth from the Father, as stated in Colossians 1: 15. We conclude by reading Philippians 2: 5 – 8, as follows: ***'Have this attitude in yourselves which was also in Yahshua Messiah, (6) who, although He existed in the form of Elohim, did not regard equality with Elohim a thing to be grasped, (7) but emptied Himself, taking the form of a bond-servant, and being made in the likeness of men. (8) And being found in appearance as a man, He humbled Himself by becoming obedient to the point of death, even death on a cross.'*** Those who teach differently to us, would somehow like to argue that the words 'equality with Elohim' were not in the original text, or somehow reason it away, but we need to remember that the Jews of Yahshua's day, used these same words, to finally have him impaled, as may be deduced from John 10: 31 - 33, like this: ***'The Jews took up stones again to stone Him. (32) Yahshua answered them, "I showed you many good works from the Father; for which of them are you stoning Me?" (33) The Jews answered Him, "For a good work we do not stone You, but for blasphemy; and because You, being a man, make Yourself out to be Elohim.'***

Those who say that YHVH cannot or will not become a 'human being', in order to die for His people Israel, are limiting Almighty YHVH. Let me ask you: Is your power and wisdom separate from you? What about your right hand – can it operate on its own? I believe it is the same with YHVH our Elohim. Is Yahshua merely an agent of YHVH? No, Yahshua is the power and wisdom of Elohim; His right hand and holy arm; the visible image (or part) of the invisible Elohim.

4.4 Who is the Anti-Messiah?

The term anti-Messiah (or antichrist) appears only in the 1st and 2nd books of John. We read in 1 John 2: 22, starting at the beginning of the verse: ***'Who is a liar but the one who denies that Yahshua is the Messiah? This is the anti-Messiah, the one who denies the Father and the Son.'*** What is this saying? It identifies the anti-Messiah as those, who deny that Yahshua is the Messiah and those who deny the Father and the Son. The anti-Messiah is therefore anyone who denies the identity of the Messiah and Almighty YHVH. We are informed in 1 John 4: 1 – 4 to be wary of people who say: 'The spirit laid it upon my heart, to tell you so and so', as follows: ***'Beloved, do not believe every spirit, but test the spirits to see whether they are from Elohim; because many false prophets have gone out into the world. (2) By this you know the Spirit of Elohim: every spirit that confesses that Yahshua Messiah has come in the flesh is from Elohim; (3) and every spirit that does not confess Yahshua is not from Elohim; and this is the spirit of the anti-Messiah, of which you have heard that is coming, and now it is already in the world. (4) You are from Elohim, little children, and have overcome them; because greater is He who is in you than he who is in the world.'***

In verse 2 above, we have an additional element to ponder, i.e. that Yahshua Messiah has come in the flesh. It also identifies the spirit that confesses that Yahshua Messiah has come in the flesh as being from Elohim, and the spirit that does not confess (or denies) Yahshua as not being from Elohim.

What might you ask is this talking about? Like with us today, there were many who joined the original Nazarene assembly, but who later left again, because they believed differently. We read accordingly in 1 John 2: 18 & 19, ***'Children, it is the last hour; and just as you heard that anti-Messiah is coming, even now many anti-Messiahs have arisen; from this we know that it is the last hour. (19) They went out from us, but they were not really of us, for if they had been of us, they would have remained with us; but they went out, in order that it might be shown that they all are not of us.'*** We've had the same thing happening in our midst and know now that those who left us were never Nazarene Jews/Israelites. Some of them continued in their belief that YHVH consist of two separate beings, whilst others were more concerned about using the Set-apart Name of YHVH, than honoring His name. We honor the Name of YHVH by keeping His commandments.

So we see that even in those early days of our Nazarene Jewish faith, there were some who denied that Yahshua came in the flesh. The anti-Messiah is identified in 2 John 7 as a deceiving spirit, that refuses to confess that Yahshua Messiah has come in the flesh. This same deceiving spirit, who was working in Rav Yochanan's (John's) time, is also active today. In verses 8 & 9 of 2 John, we read: ***'Watch yourselves, that you might not lose what we have accomplished, but that you may receive a full reward. (9) Anyone who goes too far and does not abide in the teachings of Messiah, does not have Elohim; the one who abides in the teaching, he has both the Father and the Son.'*** Some in the Nazarene ecclesia might recall how a leader in our Nazarene Israelite Two house community, converted to Judaism, because this person believed, that since YHVH is one, we have no more need of Yahshua our Messiah. This is what is referred to in verse 9 above as going too far. Even though we read from the second part of Psalm 118: 21, ***'And Thou hast become my salvation*** (Yeshua in Hebrew)', we and all of mankind need the salvation of YHVH, namely

Yahshua – because as long as there are human beings on the earth, we need Messiah our Mediator. He is the only way that we as human beings are able to relate to Almighty YHVH. We read accordingly in Galatians 3: 20 **'Now a mediator is not for one party only; whereas Elohim is only one.'** This is alluding to the Oneness of Elohim, but also to His role as the Savior (or Moshiyah) of Israel.

The spirit of anti-Messiah is present in people or an individual person, but is not a person as such. In fact the spirit of anti-Messiah could also be present in us. It is possible to identify the spirit of anti-Messiah according to the definition given to us in 1 John 4: 1 & 2 (quoted already). In fact, this matter is considered so important that we are warned in 2 John 10 not to associate with those who do not acknowledge Yahshua Messiah as coming in the flesh. We read in 2 John 11, **'for the one who gives him a greeting participates in his evil deeds.'** This method of testing is simple and anyone is able to classify him or her self as either having the spirit of the anti-Messiah, or the Spirit of Elohim. However, it is not as simple as that. Most Christians, whether they call themselves Methodist, Presbyterian, Roman Catholic, Jehovah's Witness, Seventh-day Adventist, or even Messianic/Nazarene Jews/Israelites, despite vast differences in their faith, believe exactly that. However, some of these Churches believe that YHVH is composed of two separate beings; some say that He consists of three persons in one and another group goes as far as to say that Yahshua was an Angel before His human birth. They all confess faith in the Scriptures, known as the Bible to most of them. Yet the same Scriptures states in Ephesians 4: 4 - 6, that: **'There is one body and one Spirit, just as also you were called in one hope of your calling; (5) one Master (MarYah in Aramaic, meaning YHVH), one faith, one immersion, (6) one Elohim and Father of all who is over all and through all and in all.'**

But, is the confession that Yahshua has come in the flesh, enough evidence that one has the Spirit of Elohim? Or, does our belief in the Oneness of Elohim, make us true believers? I don't think so, as we read in James 2: 19, **'You believe that Elohim is one, You do well; the demons also believe, and shudder.'** We see in the Scriptures that the demons knew the identity of Yahshua. We read in Matthew 8: 28 & 29, **'And when He (Yahshua) had come to the other side into the country of the Gadarenes, two men who were demon-possessed met Him as they were coming out of the tombs; they were so exceedingly violent that no one could pass by that road. (29) And behold, they cried out, saying, "What do we have to do with You, Son of Elohim? Have You come here to torment us before the time?"'** Many in Christianity believe that it is Satan who will throw the wicked into the so-called 'hellfire' and torment them with his pitchfork for all eternity.

But, it will not be Satan who will throw the wicked into the lake of fire. John the Immerser talking about Yahshua in Matthew 3: 11 & 12, said: **"As for me, I immerse you with water for repentance, but He who is coming after me is mightier than I and I am not fit to remove His sandals; He will immerse you with the Set-apart Spirit and fire. (12) And His winnowing fork is in His hand, and He will thoroughly clear His threshing floor; and He will gather His wheat into the barn, but He will burn up the chaff with unquenchable fire."** Satan and His demons knew and feared Yahshua because they knew He will one day throw them into the lake of fire. Satan himself does not deny that Yahshua has come in the flesh. Satan deceives people by less obvious methods. He misquotes the Scriptures in order to tempt us, as he also tried with Yahshua in Matthew 4.

Let's consider again the test Scripture in 1 John 4: 2 **'By this you know the Spirit of Elohim: every spirit that confesses that Yahshua Messiah has come in the flesh is from Elohim.'** Yes, Yahshua is the Messiah, but what does that mean? Do you believe that Messiah came in the flesh? This is indeed a mystery, the answer of which is given in 1 Timothy 3: 16, as follows: **'And by common confession great is the mystery of godliness: Elohim who was revealed in the flesh (as we are told in John 1: 14), Was vindicated (justified) in the Spirit, Beheld by angels, Proclaimed among the nations, Believed on in the world, Taken up in glory.'** We also read in Isaiah 7: 14 **'Therefore YHVH Himself will give you a sign; Behold a virgin will be with child and bear a son, and she will call His name Immanuel.'** - meaning Elohim with us. Yes, brethren, Yahshua is Messiah, but He is also YHVH in the flesh. Do you now understand what it means to confess that Yahshua Messiah has come in the flesh? It implies that Yahshua was somewhere else before He was born as a 'man'. Knowing the Scriptures, we are able to confirm this in John 1: 1 – 3 and 14, as follows: **'In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with Elohim, and the Word was Elohim. (2) He was in the beginning with Elohim. (3) All things came into being by Him, and apart from Him nothing came into being that has come into being'²¹. (14) And the word became flesh and dwelt among us, and we beheld His glory, glory as of the only begotten from the Father, full of grace and truth.'** Yes, Yahshua is Elohim in the flesh: Immanuel meaning Elohim with us. It is this very fact about Yahshua our Messiah which tests the spirit of the professing believer.

The Hebrew word 'Moshiyah' is used in Isaiah 45: 15, as follows: **'Truly, Thou art an Elohim who hides Himself, O Elohim of Israel, Savior!'** The last part of verse 15 is transliterated as **'Elohey Yisrael, Moshiyah'**

²¹ As confirmed in Psalm 33: 6, Elohim created the universe by the word of YHVH.

in Hebrew The word Moshiyah is also the final word found in Isaiah 63: 8, as follows: **'For He said, "Surely, they are My people, Sons who will not deal falsely." So He became their Savior (Moshiyah).'** We see here that it is YHVH the Elohim of Israel who hides Himself, who is our Savior or Moshiyah. YHVH said in Deuteronomy 31: 18 **"But I will surely hide My face in that day because of all the evil which they will do, for they will turn to other gods.'** Nevertheless we read in Isaiah 30: 20 **'Although YHVH has given you bread of privation and water of oppression, He, your Teacher will no longer hide Himself, but your eyes will behold your Teacher.'**

Who is Yahshua our Messiah? And who is YHVH? Quoting again from the last part of 1 John 2: 22 as well as 23, we read: **'This is the anti-Messiah, the one who denies the Father and the Son. (23) Whoever denies the Son does not have the Father; the one who confesses the Son has the Father also.'** Do you know the identity of our Savior? We have already shown that Yahshua is the Almighty, the Creator and only true Elohim. We see a prophesy about Yahshua in Isaiah 9: 6 - 7 saying: **'For a child will be born to us, a son will be given to us; And the government will rest on His shoulders; And His name will be called Wonderful Counselor, Mighty Elohim, Eternal Father, Prince of Peace. (7) There will be no end to the increase of His government or of peace, On the throne of David and over his kingdom, To establish it and to uphold it with justice and righteousness from then on and forever more, The zeal of YHVH of hosts will accomplish this.'** Satan is doing everything in his power to suppress and deny the knowledge about the identity of Yahshua. We know that Yahshua is YHVH in the flesh, and as we read in Colossians 2: 9 **"For in Him the fullness of Deity (Elohim) dwells in bodily form."** Yahshua is not half Elohim and half man - He is Elohim in the flesh. This fact is confirmed in Philipians 2: 6 - 8, as follows: **'who, although He existed in the form of Elohim (the image or form of YHVH Himself which Moses saw as is recorded in Numbers 12: 8), did not regard equality with Elohim a thing to be grasped, (7) but emptied Himself, taking the form of a bond-servant, and being in the likeness of them (meaning He looked like us). (8) And being found in the appearance as a man, He humbled Himself by becoming obedient to the point of death, even death on a cross.'** Christians and Messianics not understanding the plan of YHVH explained in Romans 11, often tries to convert Jews, by telling them about G-d who became a human being. However, they do not understand that YHVH did not become a man in human flesh, but that He took on the form of a bond-servant - He appeared or looked like a man, but He was fully Elohim.

We should not try to convert our Jewish brothers as YHVH Himself has blinded them. We read in Romans 11, that He has done this to allow us, the lost tribes of the house of Israel, to come in so that eventually He can save all Israel. We read in Romans 11: 32 **'For Elohim has shut up all in disobedience that He might show mercy to all.'** In addition, the Chabad-Lubavitch Jews in the USA issued the following statement in February 1998, regarding the preoccupation of many with identifying the Messiah: **'The deification of any human being is contrary to the core and foundation of the Jewish Faith. The various Talmudic, Midrashic and other sources which seem to ascribe superhuman spiritual attributes to certain righteous people were never meant to be deification and great care must be taken when quoting them. Belief in the coming Messiah and awaiting his imminent arrival is a basic tenet of the Jewish faith. It is clear, however, that conjecture as to the possible identity of Messiah is not part of the basic tenets of Judaism.'** Besides the point that we have proven that Yahshua came in the form of a man, we should not try to evangelize Yahshua by trying to portray Him as YHVH who became a man. Any teaching that denies the full deity of Yahshua the Messiah, comes from the deceiving spirit of the anti-Messiah, which is essentially anti-YHVH. This is the deceiving spirit who refuses to acknowledge Him as the Supreme Being. Nothing has changed. In Deuteronomy 6: 4 YHVH told Moses to teach all Israel, saying: **"Hear, O Israel! YHVH is our Elohim YHVH is one!"** Are we who believe in the Oneness of Elohim anti-Messiah? No, according to 1 John 2: 23 **'Whoever denies the Son does not have the Father; the one who confesses the Son has the Father also.'**

Isaiah 62: 10 & 11 talks about Yahshua's first and second coming, but also reminds us that He is the standard against which we should measure ourselves, in this way: **'Go through, go through the gates; clear the way for the people; build up, build up the highway; remove the stones, lift up a standard over the peoples.'** (11) **Behold, YHVH has proclaimed to the end of the earth, say to the daughter of Zion, "Lo, your salvation comes; behold His reward is with Him, and His recompense before Him."** Immediately prior to His final Passover, Yahshua entered the gates of Jerusalem on a donkey as per Matthew 21: 4 - 10, but will do so a second time when He comes to reward those who remained loyal, and to repay those who oppose Him. Talking about true believers, we read from verse 12 of Isaiah 62, **'And they will call them, "The holy people, the redeemed of YHVH"; And you will be called, "Sought out, a city not forsaken."** People in the world like to be addressed by all sorts of fancy titles, acknowledging their achievements here on earth, but how much better will it be to have overcome Satan, the world and the self and be called **'the set-apart people, the redeemed of YHVH'**. Think about it!

Yahshua is coming back to make war and judge a rebellious world. At that time He will destroy the nations who will gather around Jerusalem, ready to annihilate the Jewish nation in the middle-east, known as Israel,

today. We read fittingly from Isaiah 63: 1, **'Who is this who comes from Edom, with garments of glowing colors from Bozrah, this One who is majestic in His apparel, marching in the greatness of His strength? It is I who speak in righteousness, mighty to save.'** There is no doubt that this is talking about Yahshua our Savior, as we read from verses 2 – 3, in this way: **'Why is Your apparel red, and Your garments like the one who treads in the wine press? (3) I have trodden the wine trough alone, and from the peoples there was no man with Me. I also trod them in My anger, and trampled them in My wrath; and their lifeblood is sprinkled on My garments, and I stained all My raiment.'** At this point we also need to ask: Why will Yahshua come from Bozrah? Will He perhaps come through the ancient city of Edom in Southern Jordan to bring with Him the true believers, mentioned in Zechariah 14: 6, who were taken to be there out of harm's way, during the tribulation? We do not know the answer, but should understand from verse 4 of Isaiah 63, **'For the day of vengeance was in My heart, and My year of redemption has come.'** The Messiah's reckoning with his enemies will coincide with the redemption of His people.

We need to understand that YHVH had no option; only He our Creator could redeem us from the penalty that we earned by disobeying His Torah teachings, as only His life was worth more than all of ours put together. That is why our salvation became a personal issue with Him, as may be understood from verses 5 to 8 of Isaiah 63, in this way: **And I looked, and there was no one to help, and I was astonished and there was no one to uphold; so My own arm brought salvation to Me; and My wrath upheld Me. (6) And I trod down the peoples in My anger, and made them drunk in My wrath, and I poured out their lifeblood on the earth. (7) I shall make mention of the loving kindnesses of YHVH, the praises of YHVH, according to all that YHVH has granted us, and the great goodness toward the house of Israel** (Yahshua our Messiah came specifically for the house of Israel – to redeem us from the penalty due to us for disobeying Torah, and to be able to remarry us at His return, by dying in our stead), **which He has granted them according to His compassion, and according to the multitude of His loving kindnesses. (8) For He said, "Surely, they are My people, sons who will not deal falsely." So He became their Savior.'** Yes, YHVH the one who is going to trample those who want to destroy Israel (Judah) also became our Savior.

Most do not fully understand and appreciate what He has done for us. We read fittingly from verse 9 of Isaiah 63, as follows: **'In all their affliction He was afflicted, and the angel of His presence saved them; In His love and in His mercy He redeemed them; and He lifted them and carried them all the days of old.'** The angel of His presence who saved us is the visible form of YHVH (or YHVH Himself) who wrestled with Jacob, as we read from Hosea 12: 4 & 5. Do you acknowledge Yahshua Messiah, our Creator who came in the flesh? Remember this is how we identify the Spirit of Elohim, as opposed to the spirit of anti-Messiah!

Is it wrong to worship Yahshua? Let us turn to Philippians 2: 9 & 10 for the answer: **'Therefore also Elohim highly exalted Him, and bestowed on Him the name which is above every name, that at the name of Yahshua EVERY KNEE SHOULD BOW, of those who are in heaven, and on earth and under the earth.'** Both YHVH and Yahshua is YHVH (or Elohim) and should be worshipped, however, Yahshua who is the Salvation of YHVH said in John 14: 13 & 14 **"And whatever you ask in My name, that will I do, that the Father may be glorified in the Son. (14) If you ask Me anything in My name, I will do it."** We therefore always conclude our prayers in Yahshua's saving name.

4.5 Why do we have to find the identity of Elohim for ourselves?

Why is it necessary that each individual Israelite find the truth about YHVH our Elohim for him/herself? As I said in the beginning, Satan and his agents are continuously trying to find areas in our faith, where he can sow doubt in the minds of believers. YHVH does not like double-minded believers as may be read in James 1: 5 – 8, in this way: **'But if any of you lacks wisdom, let him ask of Elohim, who gives to all men generously and without reproach, and it will be given to him. (6) But let him ask in faith without doubting, for the one who doubts is like the surf of the sea driven and tossed by the wind. (7) For let not that man expect that he will receive anything from YHVH, (8) being a double-minded man, unstable in all his ways.'** This is repeated in James 4: 7 & 8, as follows: **'Submit therefore to Elohim. Resist the devil and he will flee from you. Draw near to Elohim and He will draw near to you. Cleanse your hands, you sinners; and purify your hearts, you double-minded.'**

Satan sows doubt in the minds of believers, by getting his agents to develop counterfeit doctrines to those found in Scriptures on an ongoing basis. He is doing so at this time, because he knows that his time is short, and he needs to blind the minds of as many believers as possible before Yahshua's return. He is at this time, not so much concerned with people who do not know and proclaim the truth about the coming Kingdom of Elohim. Instead, he is trying to deceive mainly those whom YHVH has called to become His first-fruit believers, who will if we qualify, become the spirit-born children of YHVH, ruling under Yahshua our Messiah during His millennium rule. As a congregation, we have had numerous attacks by individuals who wanted to mislead our members, or those who wanted to take over our fellowship. Some tried to destroy our fellowship

by making an un-successful attack on our marriage. This is typical of the way in which Satan works. As this very thing happened to a sister congregation, where the leader went off the tangent and married a second wife - despite the Scriptures telling us that a leader should be a husband of one wife. In addition Satan is attacking our children and others near and dear to us, in an effort to try and destroy the work that we are doing.

YHVH wants us to know that we know what we believe, and that we are able to prove the same by at least two or three witnesses. He wants us to prove everything before we believe the same. Over the past few years, I have written many sermons to refute the false teachings that groups come up with from time to time. Some of these false doctrines were those who try to change the starting time of the weekly Sabbath; and those who during the mid-nineties introduced the Karaite calendar or a similar calendar based on the crescent moon, as being the Scriptural calendar. There have also been many attacks on our teaching of the Oneness of Elohim. Because of these attacks some of our fellow believers get tired of all the contention going on in our midst and some of them requested to be taken off our mailing lists. However, we are required to remain loyal to our Master and savior until He returns one day, as we are told in Matthew 24: 45 – 47, in this way: ***“Who then is the faithful and sensible slave whom his master put in charge of his household to give them their food at the proper time? (46) Blessed is that slave whom his master finds so doing when he comes. (47) Truly I say to you, that he will put him in charge of all his possessions.”*** In addition as part of Israel, we need to follow the example of our father’s in the faith, namely Abraham, Isaac and Jacob.

YHVH wants each one of us on an individual basis to prove that he or she is indeed an Israelite. How do we prove that? How did the man whose name was changed to Israel prove that? Jacob had to strive with Elohim and to become Israel, he had to discover the identity of YHVH our Elohim. However, for a detailed impression of the account, let’s turn to Genesis 32, where it is recorded. Jacob left his father-in-law and he returned home, after serving him for many years. On his way home, Jacob sent messengers before him to his brother Esau. Inspired by Elohim, he picked out two hundred female goats and twenty male goats, two hundred ewes and twenty rams, thirty camels and their colts, forty cows and ten bulls, twenty female donkeys and ten male donkeys. Then he divided each kind of stock into groups, sending each group out at a different time to approach Esau as one of several gifts. He instructs his servants in charge of each of these groups to tell Esau that their master Jacob hopes he (Esau) will accept his gifts. In this way Jacob made Esau to change his attitude towards him.

After the animals intended for Esau had gone on, Jacob moved the two sections of his entourage on ahead a short distance to camp for the night, whilst he remained behind alone to pray. We read about this as well as the strange thing that happened to him that night, in Genesis 32: 22 -30, as follows: ***‘Now he arose that same night and took his two wives and his two maids and his eleven children, and crossed the ford of Jabbok. (23) And he took them and sent them across the stream. And he sent across whatever he had. (24) Then Jacob was left alone, and a man wrestled with him until daybreak. (25) And when he saw that he had not prevailed against him, he touched the socket of his thigh; so the socket of Jacob’s thigh was dislocated while he wrestled with him. (26) Then he said, “Let me go, for the dawn is breaking.” But he said, “I will not let you go unless you bless me.” (27) So he said to him, “What is your name?” And he said, “Jacob.” (28) And he said, “Your name shall no longer be Jacob, but Israel; for you have striven with Elohim and with men and have prevailed.” (29) Then Jacob asked him and said, “Please tell me your name.” But he said, “What is it that you ask my name?” And he blessed him there. (30) So Jacob named the place Peniel, for he said, “I have seen Elohim face to face, yet my life has been preserved.”’***

We read in Hosea 12: 3 – 5 that Jacob actually wrestled with Elohim, as follows: ***‘In the womb he took his brother by the heel, And in his maturity he contended with Elohim. (4) Yes, he wrestled with the angel and prevailed; He wept and sought His favor. He found Him at Bethel, And there He spoke with us, (5) Even YHVH, the Elohim of hosts; YHVH is His name.*** However, because we know that nobody has ever seen or can see YHVH, this must have been the visible (form or) image of ELOHIM that Jacob beheld, as we read in Numbers 12: 8; This was the Word who later became flesh and dwelt among us about 2000 years ago, namely Yahshua.

It was a trying night for Jacob, when he realized that he was dealing with more than a human being. He struggled to get a blessing from this Superior being. Before sunset the next morning he was blessed and praised for his determination. Jacob was determined to strive with all his might not to lose Elohim’s blessing and eternal promises. Jacob’s determination was greater than that of Esau, who sold his birthright for a bowl of stew. He proved that he had strength of character to overcome his spiritual problems. The wrestling match was actually a test of character. Before Jacob’s wrestling partner left, He told Jacob that his name should be changed from Jacob to Israel, which means one who overcomes. Elohim would not give His blessing and a

birthright to a man who had taken them from a weaker brother unfairly. YHVH, appeared as a man to give Jacob the chance to prove himself as one who is able to overcome.

As our father Jacob had to overcome to prove his strength of character, each one of us, whom YHVH called at this time, has to overcome those sins which so beset us, before we will be allowed access into the coming Kingdom of Elohim. Each one of us has our own set of circumstances to overcome – it reminds me of the saying: that each person must bear his own cross. Overcoming involves righteousness with great contentment. We need to learn to be content with every situation in which we find ourselves in life. Contentment or gratitude is the recognition that life owes us nothing and that all we have are gifts. Pride is a major obstacle – if we have no pride, then we have no obstacle. We are however assured that those of us who have been immersed in Yahshua's saving name (as per Acts 2: 38²²) and had hands laid upon us by the elders (as we read in Acts 8: 16 & 17²³), have already received a portion of the Set-apart Spirit as a pledge of inheritance, with a view to redemption (as per Ephesians 1: 13 -14²⁴). This is confirmed for us in 1 John 5: 4, as follows: **'For whatever is born of Elohim overcomes the world; and this is the victory that has overcome the world – our faith.'** The question is do these attacks or challenges come from Satan? Or is it a challenge directly from YHVH, who wants you o Jacob – the latter day descendants of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, to prove who He (YHVH) is – like in the case with father Jacob?

To find the answer, let's for a moment recall the account of Job in the Scriptures. Reading Job 1: 8, we notice that YHVH identifies Job as blameless and an upright man, fearing Him and turning away from evil. Continuing on in Job 1, we notice that Satan is not able to see anything wrong in Job, saying that he is such a good person, because YHVH has built a hedge around him and his belongings, protecting him from Satan. In addition Satan says to YHVH, that if He allows Job to be harmed by him, Job will curse YHVH to His face. Next we see that YHVH allows Satan to reach Job, but that he is forbidden from harming Job's life. We read in verse 13 of Job 1, that Job's children were having (another) party in the eldest brother's house. From verse 14 to 19 we see Satan unleashing disaster upon Job's family and property. The Sabceans attacked his servants stealing all the oxen and donkeys. We also read that lightning struck from heaven burning all the sheep with the servants caring for them. In addition the Chaldeans formed three bands raiding the camels and killing all the servants taking care of the camels. Only the few servants reporting these disasters to Job, survived the ordeal. Finally we read about a great wind which struck the house where Job's children were partying and all of his children died. Again, only the servant reporting this final disaster to Job, survived. In one day Job lost all of his children and possessions and only a few servants survived. But we read in verse 20 - 23 of Job1, that Job did not curse YHVH because of what happened to Him. Instead we see: (20) **'Then Job arose and tore his robe and shaved his head, and he fell to the ground and worshipped. (21) And he said, "Naked I came from my mother's womb, And naked I shall return there. YHVH gave and YHVH has taken away. Blessed be the name of YHVH."** (22) **Through all this Job did not sin nor did he blame Elohim.'**

Self-righteous people like Job regard themselves to be very important and often exalt themselves above Elohim. It is because of self-righteousness that many do not believe YHVH or follow Yahshua: Without thinking they regard themselves above Elohim and when YHVH tells us in Isaiah 43: 11, that He is YHVH and that there is no savior besides Him; such people will still argue the point. Similarly when Yahshua tells us that He was in the grave for three full days and three full nights, these people deny Him by believing that He was buried on 'Good Friday' and resurrected on Easter Sunday (i.e. only one and a half days in total). Self righteousness is a sin comparable to pride. It is this very same sin which caused Satan to fall as we read in Isaiah 14: 12 to 14, as follows: **"How you have fallen from heaven, O star of the morning, son of the dawn! You have been cut down to the earth, You who have weakened the nations! (13) But you said in your heart, 'I will ascend to heaven; I will raise my throne above the stars (angels) of Elohim, And will sit on the mount of the assembly In the recesses of the north (where Elohim's throne is). (14) I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will make myself like the Most High.'** Like Satan, Job was afflicted with the sin of self-righteousness. YHVH knew about Job's problem and allowed Satan to persecute him, to bring the problem to his attention. Similarly YHVH will also allow attacks on us, to bring problems in our faith to our attention. So even though the attacks on our faith might come from Satan and his agents, YHVH might allow it, to help us improve our character and strengthen our faith.

²² Acts 2: 38, **'And Peter said to them, "Repent, and let each of you be immersed in the name of Yahshua Messiah for the forgiveness of your sins; and you shall receive the gift of the Set-apart Spirit."**

²³ Act 8: 16 -17, **'For He (the Set-apart Spirit) had not yet fallen upon them; they had simply been immersed in the name of the Master Yahshua. Then they began laying their hands on them, and they were receiving the Set-apart Spirit.'**

²⁴ Ephesians 1: 13 – 14, **'In Him, you also, after listening to the message of truth, the gospel of your salvation-having also believed, you were sealed in Him with the Set-apart Spirit of promise, who is given as a pledge of our inheritance, with a view to redemption of Elohim's own possession, to the praise of His glory.'**

Whereas, some will even with this preponderance of Scriptural evidence, deny that Messiah is YHVH, the one and only Elohim, it is impossible to refute the witness provided by comparing Matthew 27: 3 – 10²⁵, with the prophecy in Zechariah 11: 12 & 13²⁶. Notice in Zechariah 11: 13, YHVH is saying that He was valued at 30 pieces of silver by the chief priests and elders. Yahshua was referred to as the right hand of YHVH and at times also as (the) Branch, with reason: He was part of YHVH and completely one with Him in thought and deed. He was also called the Son of Elohim, but not in the same way as my sons, are my offspring. My sons are totally separate from me, and for most of the time we do not think or do exactly the same. On the contrary, Yahshua, like a branch, is an extension of YHVH: He does and say only what the Father wants Him to say and do, as is confirmed in John 12: 49, like this: **“For I did not speak on my own initiative, but the Father Himself who sent Me has given Me commandment, what to say, and what to speak.”**

Even though both my sons look like me, they are not exact copies of me. But we read about Yahshua in the first part of Hebrews 1: 3, that: **‘(And) He is the radiance of His glory and the exact representation of His nature.’** It is for this reason that we read in John 8: 19, **‘And so they were saying to Him, “Where is Your Father?” Yahshua answered, “You know neither Me, nor My Father; if you knew Me you would know My Father also.”** We read further in John 12: 44 & 45, **‘And Yahshua cried out and said, “He who believes in Me does not believe in Me, but in Him who sent Me. (45) And he who beholds Me beholds the One who sent Me.”** YHVH is the eternal, immortal, invisible One, who manifests Himself in heaven as His ever-living Word, and on earth, as His Word made flesh by which He became our Salvation.

If we do not stumble over the identity of YHVH/Yahshua, the rock of our salvation any longer, and are obedient to the word, we become the royal priesthood referred to in 1 Peter 2: 8 – 10, like this: **‘and, “A Stone of stumbling and a rock of offense”; for they stumble because they are disobedient to the word, and to this doom they were also appointed. (9) But you are a chosen race, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a people for Elohim’s own possession, that you may proclaim the excellencies of Him who has called you out of darkness into His marvelous light; (10) for you once were NOT A PEOPLE, but now you are THE PEOPLE OF ELOHIM; you had NOT RECEIVED MERCEY, but now you have RECEIVED MERCY.’**

The Oneness Truth	The Trinity Confusion
- Messiah is Elohim	- Messiah is Elohim
- Messiah is YHVH	- Messiah is not YHVH
- Messiah is the manifestation of YHVH	- Messiah is the created Son of YHVH, a 2 nd ‘Person’

²⁵ Matthew 27: 3 – 10, **‘Then when Judas, who had betrayed Him, saw that He had been condemned, he felt remorse and returned the thirty pieces of silver to the chief priests and elders, (4) saying, “I have sinned by betraying innocent blood.” But they said, “What is that to us? See to that your self!” (5) And he threw the pieces of silver into the sanctuary and departed; and he went away and hanged himself. (6) And the chief priests took the pieces of silver and said, “It is not lawful to put them into the temple treasury, since it is the price of blood.” (7) And they counseled together and with the money bought the Potter’s Field as a burial place for strangers. (8) For this reason that field has been called the Field of Blood to this day. (9) Then that which was spoken through Jeremiah the prophet was fulfilled, saying, “AND THEY TOOK THE THIRTY PIECES OF SILVER, THE PRICE OF THE ONE WHOSE PRICE HAD BEEN SET by the sons of Israel; (10) AND THEY GAVE THEM FOR THE POTTER’S FIELD, AS YHVH DIRECTED ME.’**

²⁶ Zechariah 11: 12 & 13, **‘And I said to them, “If it is good in your sight, give me my wages; but if not, never mind!” So they weighed out thirty shekels of silver as my wages. (13) Then YHVH said to me, “Throw it to the potter, that magnificent price at which I was valued by them.” So I took the thirty shekels of silver and threw them to the potter in the house of YHVH.’**

Chapter 5 - The Feast Days or Sabbaths of Elohim.

5.1 The weekly Sabbath:

We commence by reading from Genesis 2: 2 – 3, ***'And by the seventh day Elohim completed His work which He had done; and He rested on the seventh day from all His work which He had done. (3) Then Elohim blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, because in it He rested from all His work which Elohim had created and made.'*** The Sabbath carries Elohim's authority, since He concluded the creation week when He blessed and sanctified the seventh day, because in it He rested from all His work. Consequently YHVH commanded Israel in Exodus 20: 8 -11 through Moses on Mount Sinai, , saying: ***"Remember the Sabbath day to keep it holy (set-apart). (9) Six days you shall labor and do all your work, (10) but on the seventh day is a Sabbath of YHVH your Elohim; in it you shall not do any work, you or your son or your daughter, your male or your female servant or your cattle or your sojourner who stays with you. (11) For in six days YHVH made the heavens and the earth, the sea and all that is in them, and rested on the seventh day; therefore YHVH blessed the Sabbath day and made it holy."***

Yahshua did not, as some would us believe, abolish the Sabbath after His resurrection and ascension into heaven, but it remains applicable to the people of Elohim even today, as we read from Hebrew 4: 4 & 9, in this way: ***'For He has thus said somewhere concerning the seventh day, "AND ELOHIM RESTED ON THE SEVENTH DAY FROM ALL HIS WORKS."*** (9) ***There remains therefore a Sabbath rest for the people of Elohim.'*** Yes, this refers to the millennial rule of Messiah which is pictured by the weekly Sabbath, but it also tells us that the Sabbath command is still in force today. The Sabbath is applicable to all those who serve and obey YHVH our Elohim. It is not only meant to be kept by Jews, but we read Elohim's words about the weekly and annual Sabbaths in Leviticus 23: 1 - 3, as follows: ***'YHVH spoke again to Moses saying, "Speak to the sons of Israel and say to them, '(YHVH)'s appointed times which you shall proclaim as set-apart convocations- My appointed times are these: For six days work may be done; but on the seventh day there is a Sabbath of complete rest, a set-apart convocation. You shall not do any work; it is a Sabbath to YHVH in all your dwellings'"*** The Sabbath Day belongs to YHVH and we are to obey it by resting from all our work.

We read fittingly from Isaiah 56: 2 – 7, that even gentiles and foreigners will become the people of Elohim, if they obey the Sabbath and other Torah commands, as follows: ***"How blessed is the man who does this, and the son of man who takes hold of it; who keeps from profaning the Sabbath, and keep his hand from doing any evil."*** (3) ***'Let not the foreigner who has joined himself to YHVH say, "YHVH will surely separate me from His people." Neither let the eunuch say, "Behold, I am a dry tree."*** (4) ***For thus says YHVH, "To the eunuchs who keep My Sabbaths, and choose what pleases Me, and hold fast My covenant, (5) to them I will give in My house and within My walls a memorial, and a name better than that of sons and daughters; I will give them an everlasting name which will not be cut off. (6) Also the foreigners who join themselves to YHVH, to minister to Him and to love the name of YHVH, to be His servants, every one who keeps from profaning the Sabbath, and holds fast My covenant; (7) Even those I will bring to My set-apart mountain (meaning they too will be in Elohim's Kingdom), and make them joyful in My house of prayer. Their burnt offerings and their sacrifices will be acceptable on My altar; for My house will be called a house of prayer for all the peoples."*** In fact Yahshua confirmed in Mark 2: 27 that Elohim's Sabbath was specifically made for man, in this way: ***'And He (Yahshua) was saying to them, "The Sabbath was made for man, and not man for the Sabbath."*** As human beings, we need to rest after a week's hard toil. It also allows us to take time out in getting to know more about Elohim, and to worship Him as the One who created all that we have and are. YHVH wants His people to be 'peculiar', but not in the sense of being funny or strange in their behavior or lifestyle, but in the sense of being special, as we read from Titus 2: 14, ***"(Yahshua) Who gave himself for us, that he might redeem us from all iniquity, and purify unto himself a peculiar people, zealous of good works."*** YHVH wants His people to be peculiar in that they will be different from the people in the world, by being zealous to obey Him.

5.2 The annual Sabbaths or Feast Days of Elohim:

YHVH gave the ancient nation of Israel a unique sign to identify them as His chosen people. This same sign identifies His people today and even though it is not generally accepted, it is very open and obvious to all. It is something which only Elohim's chosen people do that is different from the rest of the mankind. We read accordingly from Exodus 31: 12 & 13, ***'And YHVH spoke unto Moses, saying, (13) "But as for you, speak to the sons of Israel, saying, 'You shall surely observe My Sabbaths; for this is a sign between Me and you throughout your generations, that you may know that I am YHVH who sanctifies you.'"'*** The word sanctify, simply means 'to set apart'. YHVH said that by keeping His Sabbath day, His people would be set apart from others and would be recognizable as His chosen people for ever ("throughout your generations"). YHVH chose Israel to be His chosen people, when He told Moses to lead them out of Egypt and ever since

Yahshua's 'human' birth, until today, only those whom YHVH the Father has called (as per John 6: 44²⁷) and who are being led by the Set-apart Spirit are His people (as per Romans 8: 14²⁸).

Even so, it is important to realize from the quoted section above, that YHVH actually instructed His people to keep all His Sabbaths (plural), and not only the weekly Sabbath. In fact He repeated this command in Ezekiel 20: 12 (& 20), saying: **“And also I gave them My Sabbaths to be a sign between Me and them, that they might know that I am YHVH who sanctifies them.”** But, what are these days which YHVH calls His Sabbaths? It is important to understand, that in addition to the weekly Sabbath, YHVH also calls His annual Set-apart days His Sabbaths. We are accordingly obliged to keep both His weekly and His annual Sabbaths. Only those people who keep these weekly and annual Sabbaths are identified as Elohim's people, today. Those who refuse to keep these Sabbaths do not understand Elohim's plan of salvation for mankind. It is these annual Sabbaths which picture His purpose that all people who have ever lived, be given the opportunity to be born again as spirit beings into His Family.

YHVH is calling out a remnant of the lost ten tribes of Israel today, who together with those Jews who remain faithful will become priests during Messiah's millennium rule. We see from Isaiah 66: 23 that everyone will be keeping these days at that time, as follows: **“And it shall be from new moon to new moon and from Sabbath to Sabbath, all mankind will come to bow down before Me says YHVH.”** YHVH is now calling only a few first fruits to learn to become kings and priests under Yahshua during the Millennium, as explained in James 1: 18, like this: **‘In the exercise of His will He brought us forth by the word of truth, so that we might be, as it were, the first fruits among His creatures.’** After the millennium, YHVH will also resurrect all those who ever lived and will give them a chance to repent, as explained later under 'The Last Great Day'.

The Day of Pentecost, which comes during the spring festival season (in the northern hemisphere), shows us that YHVH is calling just a few people at this time. He is teaching this relatively small number of people (who have repented and are striving to obey His teachings) to live a way of life which produces peace and happiness, and will lead to eternal life in His coming Kingdom. In the near future, when Yahshua returns to the earth, this relatively small group of first fruits will be prepared and ready to work and rule with Him. We read about this from Revelation 2: 26 as follows **“And he that overcometh, and keepeth my works unto the end, to him will I give power over the nations.”** A second witness is found in Revelation 5: 10, in this way: **“And hast made us unto our Elohim kings and priests: and we shall reign on the earth.”**

The annual Feast Days scheduled to occur during the Hebrew month of Tishri, which coincides with the months of September/October, picture the time when YHVH will intervene in the affairs of mankind. At that time YHVH will start teaching the nations His way of life and that obedience to His Torah will result in peace, happiness and prosperity. Even so, He will not teach mankind His ways all on His own. We see from the last part of Isaiah 30: 20 (KJV) how our Father intends to do this during the millennium, as follows: **“And though YHVH give you the bread of adversity, and the water of affliction, yet shall not thy teachers be removed into a corner any more, but thine eyes shall see thy teachers.”** Before Yahshua returns to restore Elohim's government on earth, YHVH is training His called out ones to become kings and priests under Yahshua. They will assist Yahshua in teaching Elohim's Torah to the nations who will survive the great tribulation, and beyond.

When studying the Scriptures regarding the Feast Days of Elohim, it will become clear that there are seven annual Feast Days; two of which are seven days long. There are seven annual set-apart days, each lasting only a single day. Each of the set-apart days occurs on, or during a feast, but Passover, being the first feast, is not a set-apart day. All Set-apart days are Sabbaths, during which no laborious work may be done. Similar to the weekly Sabbath, no work at all should be done on the Day of Atonement. The seven annual festivals are listed in Leviticus 23. We read from verses 4 & 5 of Leviticus 23, **“These are the appointed times of YHVH, set-apart convocations which you shall proclaim at the times appointed for them.** (or as it reads in the KJV: **in their seasons.**) (5) **In the first month, on the fourteenth day of the month at twilight is (YHVH)'s Passover.”** At this point it is important to recall how YHVH determines days from sunset to sunset and not from midnight to midnight as we do today. The first part of a new day is dark according to the method used by YHVH to determine days, as may be seen from the first part of Genesis 1: 5, in this way: **‘And Elohim called the light day, and the darkness He called night. And there was evening and there was morning, one day.’**

5.3 The reason for keeping the Feast Days:

We now know that the Sabbaths of Elohim identifies those of us who keep them annually, as His people. But what is the reason for keeping the Feast Days of Elohim? We are given the reason in Deuteronomy 14: 22 &

²⁷ John 6: 44 'No man can come to me, except the Father which hath sent me draws him.'

²⁸ Romans 8: 14 'For as many as are led by the Spirit of Elohim, they are the sons of Elohim.'

23, as follows: ***“You shall surely tithe all the produce from what you sow, which comes out of the field every year. And you shall eat it in the place where He chooses to establish His name, the tithe of your grain, your new wine, your oil, and the first-born of your herd and your flock, in order that you may learn to fear YHVH your Elohim always.”*** We see here that we keep the Feast days of YHVH so that we may learn to fear Him always.

What is the fear of Elohim? How do we learn to fear YHVH our Elohim? Let us determine the answers to these questions, by considering the relevant scriptures in Elohim’s word. Let’s turn to Hebrews 11: 7 where we read about the faith and fear of our fathers in the faith, as follows: ***‘By faith Noah, being warned by Elohim about things not yet seen, in reverence prepared an ark for the salvation of his household, by which he condemned the world, and became an heir of righteousness according to faith.’*** Noah had a fear of YHVH and translated his fear into action, through faith. He feared when YHVH told him to build an ark, despite his neighbors mocking him and trying to persuade him to disobey. Other than most people today, he was not concerned with what other people think or say – He carried on doing what YHVH told him to do.

We read from Genesis 22: 10 -12 how Abraham our father in the faith, translated his fear of Elohim into faith, as follows: ***‘And Abraham stretched out his hand, and took the knife to slay his son. But the angel of YHVH called to him from heaven, and said, “Abraham, Abraham!” And he said, “Here I am.” And he said, “Do not stretch out your hand against the lad, and do nothing to him; for now I know that you fear Elohim, since you have not withheld your son, your only son, from Me.’*** In Hebrews 11: 17 we see that this fear of Abraham came through faith, as follows: ***‘By faith Abraham, when he was tested, offered up Isaac; and he who had received the promises was offering up his only begotten son.’***

The fear of Elohim is something that stirs us to take action – it inspires us to want to obey YHVH from the bottom of our hearts. In Psalm 60: 4 it says: ***‘Thou hast given a banner to those who fear Thee, That it may be displayed because of truth.’*** However, according to Psalm 36: 1 (paraphrased) *‘Transgression or active sin speaks to the sinner within his heart, saying: There is no fear of Elohim!’* The process of sinning starts with Satan. We see in Isaiah 14: 12 that Satan lost the fear of Elohim and therefore sinned. Satan weakens people’s resolve not to sin, by getting them to lose their fear of Elohim. We see from Genesis 3: 1 - 3 that Eve feared Elohim at that time. Satan’s tactic is to destroy that fear of YHVH our Elohim, as may be read from Genesis 3: 6, where Satan destroyed Eve’s fear of wrongdoing. We need to be very careful of Satan and his human agents, who want to destroy our fear of wrongdoing.

5.4 The first Passover:

Whilst still in Egypt, YHVH commanded the Israelites to observe the first Passover on the fourteenth day of the first month, in the evening or the beginning part of the day at twilight. To fully understand the importance and meaning of the Passover, it is essential that we consider that very first Passover.

After the death of Joseph the children of Israel became slaves in the land of Egypt. They were forced into hard labor making bricks and mortar for Pharaoh’s many building projects. They worked every day, for seven days of the week and their Egyptian taskmasters threatened and whipped any one who fell behind in his work. Those not working on the building projects were forced to work in the fields, under the heat of the sun. Even young children were used as farm laborers to cultivate the crops of the land, or to make bricks. They worked every day, from sunrise to sunset and could not do anything about it – they were powerless and could not help themselves. But Almighty YHVH saw their plight and decided to help them through His faithful servant Moses. YHVH displayed his power to deliver the Israelites from slavery in Egypt through a series of plagues. After nine destructive plagues, Pharaoh still refused to let the Israelites go. Then YHVH told Moshe in Exodus 11: 1, saying: ***“One more plague I will bring on Pharaoh and on Egypt; after that he will let you go from here. When he lets you go, he will surely drive you out from here completely.”*** The Egyptians would be devastated by this tenth and final plague. YHVH would take the lives of all the firstborn of both people and animals in Egypt.

In Scriptural times the firstborn son was given special treatment; a first-born son usually received a double portion of the inheritance, and became the head of the family when his father died. In a monarchy, like Egypt, it was his firstborn son who ascended the throne, when the Pharaoh died. The firstborn was also usually the most loved and respected in the family and it was a great tragedy for the Egyptians to lose all their first-born. Even so, it will become clear later how YHVH will also resurrect the first-born of Egypt after the millennium, to become part of the second harvest of human beings into His everlasting Kingdom, as part of His plan of salvation for all mankind.

Even though the last and tenth plague would be on every family living in the land of Egypt, YHVH gave the Israelites a method to escape this great tragedy in history. He instructed that each family choose a male lamb under a year old, without any blemishes, from their flock and to bring it into their dwellings on the tenth day of

the first month (Aviv). They were to kill the lamb immediately after sunset at the beginning of the fourteenth of Aviv, and mark the doorposts and lintels of their homes with the blood of the lamb. They were to roast and eat the lamb inside their homes that night, and be ready to depart from the land of Egypt in haste.

When YHVH struck the first-born at midnight on the fourteenth day, He passed over the homes which were marked with blood on its doorposts and lintels, and spared the firstborn members of the family. We read accordingly in Exodus 12: 13, like this: **“And the blood shall be a sign for you on the houses where you live; and when I see the blood I will pass over to you, and no plague will befall you to destroy you when I strike the land of Egypt.”** Because the Israelites obeyed Elohim’s instructions that night, He spared their first-born children and animals from death.

At the time of the first Passover, the children of Israel did not know that the Passover sacrifice that they partook of was in fact a prototype of Yahshua’s sacrifice as the Lamb of Elohim one day in the future. We read about this in 1 Corinthians 5: 7: **“Clean out the old leaven, that you may be a new lump, just as you are in fact unleavened. For Messiah our Passover also has been sacrificed.”** A second witness may be found in 1 Peter 1: 18 – 19, in this way: **“knowing that you were not redeemed with perishable things like silver or gold you’re your futile way of life inherited from your forefathers, (19) but with precious blood, as of a lamb unblemished and spotless, the blood of Messiah.”** It is important to understand that at times the Scriptures depict Egypt as a type (or symbol) of sin. When we sin, we bring the death penalty upon ourselves as may be read from the first part of Romans 3: 23. But as we also read from the second part of verse 23, **‘but the free gift of Elohim is eternal life in Messiah Yahshua our Master.’** Yahshua our Messiah redeemed us from the death penalty, which we earned, by transgressing the teachings of Elohim, as may be understood from John 1: 29, as follows: **‘The next day he (John the Immerser) saw Yahshua coming to him, and said, “Behold, the Lamb of Elohim who takes away the sin of the world!”** Yahshua qualified to do this because He lived a sinless life as a ‘human being’. He never incurred the death penalty upon Himself because He did not sin and as the Word of Elohim (our Creator) who became flesh; His one life was more valuable than all other human lives together. Yahshua was therefore able to pay the penalty of death for all humankind.

Elohim’s ultimate goal is to give eternal life to all those who obey and serve Him out of their own free will, but because we all have sinned, we brought the death penalty on ourselves. Even so, because of His love for His creation, Yahshua paid the death penalty, by dying on our behalf, on the impalement stake in 31 CE. Consequently, when YHVH calls a believer, and the believer decides to follow Him wholeheartedly; i.e. repent by confessing his/her past sins to Elohim and return to full Torah obedience, the new believer should be immersed in the saving name of Yahshua and will (as a result of the laying on of hands of the elders in the community) receive a portion of the Set-apart Spirit (as we read in Acts 2:38 and 7: 12 - 17). At immersion, YHVH forgives us by applying Yahshua’s sacrifice to our past sins, when He becomes our Passover Lamb. That is why we keep the Passover at the season appointed for it, as a reminder of what YHVH has accomplished for us.

5.5 The Passover Today:

The Israelites were commanded to observe the Passover by killing and eating the Passover lamb (in Exodus 12), but Yahshua replaced the lamb sacrificed at Passover and introduced ‘new symbols’ for keeping His memorial Passover. In the evening before His death, as the 13th of Aviv came to a close, Yahshua and His disciples observed the Passover differently to what the ancient Israelites were instructed to do; He changed the Passover ceremony the night before His impalement, as a pattern of how His disciples (and us His modern day disciples) were to observe the Passover from then on. Only members of the ecclesia who are circumcised in both heart (immersed) and flesh (only applicable to males) may partake of the Passover today. Those who repented from transgressing the Torah in the past, who accepted that Yahshua died also for their sin, and were immersed into His saving name qualify. But, in addition to being immersed, the commandment given for the original Passover regarding males, still applies, as recorded in Exodus 12: 48, in this way: **“But if a stranger (i.e. an Israelite who lost his identity due to years in captivity or an actual gentile) sojourns with you, and celebrates the Passover to YHVH, let all his males be circumcised, and then let him come near to celebrate it; and he shall be like a native of the land. But no uncircumcised person may eat of it.”**

Yahshua our Messiah also introduced the foot washing ceremony as one of the new symbols for His memorial Passover, which He and His disciples kept on the night before His impalement. After taking a towel and pouring water into a basin, Yahshua washed the feet of each one of the disciples – an action which they did not understand, as it was a function normally performed by household servants (as may be seen from John 13 :4 - 7). However, Yahshua explained His actions to them in John 13: 13 – 17, as follows: **“You call me Teacher and Master; and you are right, for so I am. (14) If I then, the Master and Teacher, washed your feet, you also ought to wash one another’s feet. (15) For I gave you an example that you also**

should do as I did to you. (16) Truly, truly, I say to you, a slave is not greater than his master; neither is one who is sent greater than the one who sent him. (17) If you know these things, you are blessed if you do them." Yahshua was essentially showing His disciples that He came to the earth to serve mankind and immediately after the Passover, He proved the extent of His service for this world when He gave His life to pay for the sins of all mankind. Foot washing shows an attitude of humility and service to others, which Yahshua wants every Nazarene to imitate in our lives.

Even though Unleavened Bread is not new to the original Passover, Yahshua introduced a new meaning to the Unleavened Bread eaten that evening, as we read from Matthew 26: 26, in this way: **"And while they were eating, Yahshua took some bread, and after a blessing, He broke it and gave it to the disciples, and said, "Take, eat; this is My body."** Yahshua told His disciples that the unleavened bread which was broken, symbolized His body; before His impalement He was severely beaten and even though He was a hard working young man with a healthy body, it was a terrible beating. It was so severe that the skin on His back was torn from His bones, and many were no longer able to recognize Him, as we read from Isaiah 52: 14, as follows: **"Just as many were astonished at you, My people, so His appearance was marred more than any man, and His form more than the sons of men."** Most believers, who partake of Matzo crackers (Unleavened Bread) during Passover, are not always aware of the meaning of the stripes and holes on these crackers, which our Jewish brothers dutifully make, prior to baking it, without knowing the true reason for doing so.

We know that physical illness is usually as a result of breaking physical health laws, such as not eating balanced meals; not sleeping enough; and not getting enough exercise. It could also be as a result of eating un-kosher foods, such as lobsters and the like, which could eventually result in us getting Lupus or another incurable disease. Sickness is the penalty we pay for breaking the physical laws, just like the second death is the penalty for breaking Spiritual Laws (or Torah). Even so it is Elohim's intention that we live happy, abundant lives, as we see He inspired Yochanan to write in 3 John 2, in this way: **"Beloved, I wish above all things that you may prosper and be in health, even as thy soul prospereth."**

Because of Elohim's love for mankind, He allowed Yahshua to suffer immensely even though He did not break any physical health laws. He paid this penalty so that when we become ill or are involved in an accident, we may be healed, as we read from 1 Peter 2: 24, like this: **"and He Himself bore our sins in His body on the cross, that we might die to sin and live to righteousness; for by His wounds you were healed."** When we become ill, we should follow the instructions given in James 5: 14 – 15, as follows: **"Is anyone among you sick? Let him call for the elders of the ecclesia, and let them pray over him, anointing him with oil in the name of YHVH; (15) and the prayer offered in faith will restore the one who is sick, and YHVH will raise him up, and if he has committed sins, they will be forgiven him."** So we see that part of the meaning of the Unleavened Bread that we eat at Passover, is that YHVH promises to heal us.

A very important part of the Passover service is the wine, which is symbolic of the shed blood of Yahshua, as we read from Matthew 26: 27 - 28, as follows: **'And when He had taken a cup and given thanks, he gave it to them, saying, "Drink from it, all of you; (28) for this is My blood of the covenant, which is poured out for many for forgiveness of sins."** According to the example that Yahshua left us, we partake of a little bit of wine after eating a small piece of unleavened bread, as a reminder of His shed blood. Yahshua's shed blood freed us from the penalty of eternal death, because of the sins that we have committed. Even though we as Elohim's people strive to obey the Torah, as flesh and blood humans we are not perfect yet and still sin at times. Fortunately we have Elohim's promise, that if we repent of our sins and return to obeying Torah, He will forgive us.

5.6 Did Yahshua partake of His last Passover?

There are those who say that Yahshua was our Passover Lamb, and because He was impaled before the Jews of His day partook of the Passover, He could not partake of it before He died.

To commence with, if Yahshua did not partake of the Passover before He died, He would have died for His own sin and you and I would be most miserable as the death penalty would still hang over our heads. How can I say that? I am certainly not the judge of the world, am I? No, not by a long shot, but I am only telling you what Torah teaches in this regard. Let's turn to the Torah in Numbers 9: 2 & 3 where we read: **"Now let the sons of Israel observe the Passover at its appointed time. "On the fourteenth day of this month at twilight, you shall observe it at its appointed time; you shall observe it according to all its statutes and according to all its ordinances."** From verse 4 on, it explains that if for some reason any of the children of Israel could not observe the Passover at the appointed time, because of the fact that such a person is on a journey or is unclean, because he or she came in touch with a dead person (i.e. a family member passed away and he or she had to bury the family member), such a person may partake of a second

Passover, which is a month later on the fourteenth day of the second month at twilight. We read accordingly from verse 13 of Numbers 9, ***“But the man who is clean and is not on a journey, and yet he neglects to observe the Passover, that person shall then be cut off from his people, for he did not present the offering of YHVH at its appointed time. That man shall bear his sin.”*** Now at this point you might like some object, saying that Yahshua could not partake of the Passover, as the Passover of the Jews only occurred after His death, on the evening of the fifteenth of Aviv, or for those who interprets twilight or ‘between the two evenings’ (as some versions of The Scriptures translates it), to mean ‘the next evening’, i.e. the evening of the First day of Unleavened Bread.

However, the original Passover was kept on the fourteenth day of the first month at twilight. When is twilight? Some insist that twilight or ‘between the two evenings’, meaning the next afternoon or evening. Then they say the Passover is therefore kept at the end of the fourteenth. From The Scriptures we see that twilight simply means in the evening. Turn to the first part of Exodus 16: 8, where it reads: ***‘And Moses said, “This will happen when YHVH gives you meat to eat in the evening, and bread to the full in the morning; In verses 12 & 13 of Exodus 16, we read: “ I have heard the grumbings of the sons of Israel; speak to them, saying ‘At twilight you shall eat meat, and in the morning you shall be filled with bread; and you shall know that I am YHVH your Elohim’” So it came about at evening (the beginning of the new day) that the quails came up and covered the camp, and in the morning there was a layer of dew around the camp.’*** So it is clear, by comparing these two sections of the Scriptures, that twilight does not mean the next evening; it is simply at the start of the day in the evening.

According to Deuteronomy 16: 1 the Israelites left Egypt by night. In Numbers 28: 16 & 17 we read: ***‘Then on the fourteenth of the first month shall be Elohim’s Passover. And on the fifteenth of this month shall be a feast, unleavened bread shall be eaten seven days.’*** According to the last part of Exodus 12: 22, the Israelites were not permitted to leave their houses during the night of the fourteenth until the morning. If they left during the night of the Passover, they would have been disobedient to YHVH. Also in Exodus 12 verse 29 we read: ***“Now it came about at midnight that YHVH struck all the first-born in the land of Egypt, from the first-born of Pharaoh who sat on his throne to the first-born of the captive who was in the dungeon, and all the first-born of cattle.”*** So they could not have left during the night of the Passover, but left during the next night, in the full moon to help them on their journey. A second witness to this may be found in Joshua 5: 10 and 11 as follows: ***“While the sons of Israel camped at Gilgal, they observed the Passover on the evening of the fourteenth day of the month on the desert plains of Jericho. (11) And on the day after the Passover, on the very day they ate some of the produce of the land, unleavened cakes and parched grain.”***

We read from Genesis 49: 10 that rulership (as far as religious matters are concerned) would remain with Judah, until Yahshua comes to rule. Whilst Yahshua’s first advent was to bring Salvation to all mankind, His second advent is to come and rule the world from Jerusalem. We know that Yahshua corrected the occurrence of the Passover, his reason for the first advent, to die as our Passover lamb, when He kept the Passover a whole 24 hours before the Jews of His day did – i.e. at sunset on the 14th of Aviv. That was the only adjustment that He made to the annual Set-apart Day cycle at that time – He kept the other Set-apart days with the Jews of His day. He will if necessary also correct any other problems regarding the Hebrew calendar, when He returns to rule. In fact our Jewish brothers believe that Shiloh (a Scriptural name for the Messiah) will fix any problems with the current calendar, when He comes.

We keep the Passover at twilight on the fourteenth day of the first month of the year as commanded in Leviticus 23: 5 ***“In the first month on the fourteenth day of the month at twilight is Elohim’s Passover.”*** But we also follow Yahshua’s example as may be read from 1 Corinthians 11: 23 – 26, as follows: ***“For I (Rav Shaul) received from the Master that which I also delivered to you: that the Master Yahshua in the night in which He was betrayed took bread; (24) and when He had given thanks, He broke it, and said, “This is My body, which is for you; do this in remembrance of Me.” (25) In the same way He took the cup also, after supper, saying, “This cup is the new covenant in My blood; do this, as often as you drink it, in remembrance of Me.” (26) For as often as you eat this bread and drink the cup, you proclaim the Master’s death until He comes.’*** We keep the Passover as a memorial to Yahshua’s death, one of the traditions in which we follow Rav Shaul, as He followed Messiah – see 1 Corinthians 11: 1, 2 and 23.

We read further from Mark 14: 13 & 14, ***‘And He sent two of His disciples and said to them, “Go into the city, and a man will meet you carrying a pitcher of water; follow him; (14) and wherever he enters, say to the owner of the house, ‘The Teacher says, “Where is my guest room in which I may eat the Passover with My disciples?’”*** From this it is clear that Yahshua fully intended to eat the Passover with His disciples. In verse 16 of Mark 14, we also see that they prepared the Passover. In verse 18 of Mark 14, we see that Yahshua ate the Passover when he said: ***“Truly I say to you that one of you will betray Me – one who is eating with Me.”***

In verse 23 of Mark 14 we read: ***'And when He had taken a cup, and given thanks, He gave it to them; and they all drank from it.'*** Friends this was the Passover that Yahshua was partaking of, even though it was 24 hours prior to the Passover of the Jews. If it was the Passover, then I say to you again, if He did not partake of it, then we are all still in our sin, as we read in the last part of Numbers 9: 13 ***"That man shall bear his sin."*** After Yahshua's death and resurrection, His disciples continued to follow His example by keeping the Passover and all the other festivals which He kept. Rav Shaul also continued to instruct the Nazarene Jews around 55 CE, about the correct way to keep the Passover, as we read from 1 Corinthians 11. The Word of YHVH clearly shows that the people of Elohim will continue to observe the Passover as an annual memorial of His death.

5.7 Timing of the Passover according to the Nazarene System.

The timing of the Passover has been debated by Bible students for many years. The Renewed Covenant clearly places the Passover kept by Yahshua and His disciples at the beginning of the 14th of Aviv, the evening during which He was betrayed. The Rabbinic understanding where the Passover commences at the end of the 14th of Aviv, with the 15th of Aviv as the High Sabbath was also the understanding of the Pharisees and Priests at the time of Messiah. However, this is not the Nazarene understanding, as they placed Passover a day before. It will further more be shown that the Nazarene understanding was also preserved in the Tanach.

A popular theory by those who say that Yahshua did not partake of the Passover, is that He supposedly kept a mock Passover with His disciples the evening before the actual Passover, to show them how to keep the Passover the next afternoon and in the future, as He knew that He will be the Passover Lamb, the following afternoon. However, we read in the four Gospels that Yahshua and His disciples *'kept the Passover'*, *'that we may eat it (Passover)'*, and *'prepared the Passover'*. The argument that the Passover that Yahshua kept was only a practice run, or mock Passover is usually "proven" by making use of Luke 22: 15 – 18, as follows: ***'And He (Yahshua) said to them, "I have earnestly desired to eat this Passover with you before I suffer; (16) for I say to you, I shall never again eat it until it is fulfilled in the Kingdom of Elohim."*** (17) ***And when He had taken a cup and given thanks, He said, "Take this and share it among yourselves; (18) for I say to you, I will not drink of the fruit of the vine from now on until the Kingdom of Elohim comes."*** However, reading from verse 8 on to verse 22, we see that Yahshua actually ate this Passover, but would not eat it again until He comes to rule the world from Jerusalem. The theory of the mock Passover is presented saying that Yahshua really wanted to keep the Passover, yet wasn't going to be able to, because the actual Passover was only supposed to occur on the next afternoon after 3 pm. Others insist that Yahshua took a Nazirite vow and could not partake of the Passover, because he could not drink any wine. However, there is no indication in the Scriptures that Yahshua ever took a Nazirite vow, instead we read His own words in Luke 7: 33 and 34, as follows: ***"For John the Immerser has come eating no bread and drinking no wine; and you say, 'He has a demon!'*** (34) ***The Son of Man has come eating and drinking; and you say, 'Behold a gluttonous man, and a drunkard, a friend of tax-gatherers and sinners!'***

The second reason why some say that Yahshua did not partake of the Passover is: because He referred to the cup of wine as the New Covenant in His blood, and since the New Covenant will only be inaugurated when the Kingdom of Elohim comes, He will only drink it at that time. However, absolutely nothing in the Renewed Covenant supports the theory of a mock Passover. Nowhere do we find His disciples gathered together the next evening keeping the Passover. They scattered after Yahshua was arrested and did not come together again until after His resurrection.

The Nazarene system of keeping the Passover season is an eight day system, having Passover occurring on the 14th and seven days of unleavened bread follows from the 15th through the 21st of Aviv. To show this from the Tanach, let us examine the meaning of the text in Exodus 12, where we read in verse 6, ***'And you shall keep it until the fourteenth day of the same month, then the whole assembly of the congregation of Israel is to kill it at twilight.'*** Continuing in verse 14 of Exodus 12, we read: ***'Now this is a memorial to you, and you shall celebrate it as a feast to YHVH; throughout your generations you are to celebrate it as a permanent ordinance.'*** Exodus 12: 6 and 14 establishes the 14th of Aviv as a memorial and a feast day to be kept throughout Israel's generations.

Continuing on in Exodus 12: 15, we read: ***'Seven days you shall eat unleavened bread, but on the first day you shall remove leaven from your houses; for whoever eats anything leavened from the first day until the seventh day, that person shall be cut off from Israel.'*** We know that the seven day period of Unleavened Bread starts after the Passover. But, for this exercise, we need to hone in on the key phrase ***'first day'*** here. The Hebrew word which appears as *'first'* in this verse is transliterated as *'roshown'* and may also be translated as *'head'*, *'chief'*, *'former or before'*. The Hebrew language is a contextual language with its terms relying on what surrounds them. The word *'roshown'* is translated as *'former'* in Numbers 6: 12 ***'and***

shall dedicate to YHVH his days as a Nazirite, and shall bring a male lamb a year old for a guilt offering; but the former days shall be void because his separation was defiled.'

In the last part of Joshua 8: 33, we read: **'as Moses the servant of YHVH had commanded before, that they should bless the people of Israel.** (KJV)' However, in this case note that the New American Standard Bible reads: **'just as Moses the servant of YHVH, had given command at first to bless the people of Israel.'** In this case 'roshown' is translated as 'before' or 'first'.

In 1 Kings 13: 6, 'roshown' is again translated as 'before', in this way: **'And the king answered and said to the man of Elohim, "Please entreat YHVH your Elohim, and pray for me, that my hand be restored to me." So the man of Elohim entreated YHVH, and the king's hand was restored to him, and it became as it was before.'**

The literal meaning of the Hebrew word 'roshown', as before is also confirmed by ancient translations, such as the Septuagint (LXX) and the Peshitta Tanach. The Greek Septuagint translation has "Prote", which essentially means the same thing as "roshown" and the Peshitta Aramaic Tanach has "kadmaya" from the Aramaic root "k'dam" also meaning 'before.' All these words for 'before' are translated as such, when there is context to place what follows it, after what is just mentioned. For example "roshown" is translated as 'before' in the phrase "first of the month" because there is nothing to place this month before. In Exodus 12 15 – 19, the Nazarene System, is plain to see: **'Seven days you shall eat unleavened bread, but on the first day you shall remove leaven from your houses; for whoever eats anything leavened from the first day until the seventh day, that person shall be cut off from Israel. (16) And on the first day you shall have a holy assembly, and another holy assembly on the seventh day; no work at all shall be done on them, except what must be eaten by every person, that alone may be prepared by you. (17) You shall also observe the Feast of Unleavened Bread, for on this very day I brought your hosts out of the land of Egypt; therefore you shall observe this day throughout your generations as a permanent ordinance. (18) In the first month, on the fourteenth day of the month at evening, you shall eat unleavened bread, until the twenty-first day of the month at evening. (19) 'Seven days there shall be no leaven found in your houses; for whoever eats what is leavened, that person shall be cut off from the congregation of Israel, whether he is an alien or a native of the land.'**

Verse 17 confirms that the 15th day of Aviv is day one of the seven days of Unleavened Bread, because we know from Numbers 33: 3 that the day in which Israel was brought out of Egypt was the 15th day of the first month; on the next day after the Passover. It is clear from Leviticus 23 and Deuteronomy 16, that there are actually eight days in which unleavened bread is eaten, that is, from the 14th through the 21st, but that there are only seven days (15th – 21st) in which leaven is forbidden in dwellings. For clarity purposes we focus on the preposition 'until' in verse 18 similar to the way in which it is done in Hebrew. The Hebrew word used here is 'ad' which can mean 'during, even, unto, equally with'. It is clear that the Hebrew preposition 'ad' may or may not include the direct object in its usage. However, 'ad' in these instances includes the direct object which would be the 21st. The phrase **"until the twenty-first day of the month at evening"** is best interpreted chronologically just as it appears, i.e. after the 21st, there is an evening at which the feast ends.

This understanding is supported by Leviticus 23: 32, as follows: **"It is to be a Sabbath of complete rest to you, and you shall humble your souls; on the ninth of the month at evening, from evening until evening you shall keep your Sabbath."** Here the fast for the Day of Atonement is started after the 9th at evening, but we know that the fast is on the 10th as per Leviticus 23: 27. Therefore, the evening that follows the ninth is the evening of the 10th. The point is one of succession of chronology as it relates to the phrase **"until the twenty-first day of the month at evening"** – the evening referred to in Exodus 12: 18 is therefore the evening that comes after the 21st.

The key to understanding the Passover is found in Leviticus 23: 5 – 8: **'In the first month, on the fourteenth day of the month at twilight is Elohim's Passover. (6) 'Then on the fifteenth day of the same month there is the Feast of Unleavened Bread to YHVH for seven days you shall eat unleavened bread. (7) 'On the first day you shall have a holy convocation; you shall not do any laborious work. (8) 'But for seven days you shall present an offering by fire to YHVH. On the seventh day is a holy convocation; you shall not do any laborious work.'**

The Passover is to be kept on the 14th Aviv, as may be seen from both verse 5 of Leviticus 23 and verse 6 of Exodus 12. Verse 6 of Leviticus 23, as well as verse 7 of Exodus 12, shows that the 15th of Aviv is the day on which Israel left Egypt (as per Numbers 33: 3) and that this is the day in which the seven days of unleavened bread begins, and during which only unleavened bread may be found in our homes. Verse 7 and 8 of Leviticus 23 clearly show that as in Exodus 12: 16, the first and seventh days of Unleavened Bread are days on which Set-apart convocations are to be held. Interestingly enough, verse 8 of Leviticus 23 mentions seven

days in which burnt offerings were to be made – the timing of which follows the day of Passover and starts on the 15th of Aviv.

We've seen before from the Renewed Covenant that Yahshua kept the Passover the evening of the 14th of Aviv, and was impaled, and buried on the day of preparation before the High Sabbath of the 15th of Aviv, as may be read in John 19: 31. The understanding of an eight day system for the Passover and Unleavened Bread is affirmed by Josephus in a statement that he made as recorded in Jos. Antiq. 2:15:1 "...we keep a feast for eight days which is called unleavened bread." Further details are given in a statement by Josephus at Jos. Antiq.3:10:5 "*In the month of Xanthicus, which is by us called Nisan (also known as Aviv), and is the beginning of our year. On the fourteenth day of the lunar month, when the sun is in Aries, (for in this month it was that we were delivered from bondage under the Egyptians) the law ordained that we should every year slay that sacrifice which I before told you we slew when we came out of Egypt, and which was called the Passover, and so we do celebrate this Passover in companies, leaving nothing of what we sacrifice till the day following. The feast of unleavened bread succeeds that of the Passover, and falls on the fifteenth day of the month, and continues seven days, wherein they feed on unleavened bread; on every one of which days two bulls are killed, and one ram, and seven lambs. Now these lambs are entirely burnt, besides the kid of the goats which is added to all the rest, for sins; for it is intended as a feast for the priest on every one of those days. But on the second day of unleavened bread, which is the sixteenth day of the month, they first partake of the fruits of the earth, for before that day they do not touch them.*"

This also confirms our counting of the Omer as the 16th of Aviv commences, when the produce of the land was eaten, as may be confirmed in Joshua 5: 10 - 12.

5.8 Three days and three nights:

Before continuing with the Days of Unleavened Bread, we need to dispel a misunderstanding by our Christian brothers. According to the Scriptures one day always includes both night and day. An example of this may be read in the book of Esther 4: 16, as follows: "**Go assemble all the Jews who are found in Susa, and fast for me; do not eat or drink for three days, night or day.**" This agrees with how YHVH instructed Moses to proclaim the fast on the Day of Atonement, as we read from Leviticus 23: 27 & 32, "**On exactly the tenth day of this seventh month is the Day of Atonement; it shall be a Set-apart convocation for you, and you shall humble your souls and present an offering by fire to YHVH. (32) It is to be a Sabbath of complete rest to you, and you shall humble your souls; on the ninth of the month at evening, from evening until evening you shall keep your Sabbath.**"

The Renewed Covenant (referred to by Christianity as the New Testament) is the recorded history of the people of Elohim, who lived strictly according to the Torah. They observed the Sabbath and Set-apart days of Elohim and all the customs recorded in Torah, as we also read about Yahshua from Luke 4: 16, in this way: '**And He came to Nazareth, where He had been brought up; and as was His custom, He entered the synagogue on the Sabbath, and stood up to read.**' We see here that Yahshua kept the Sabbath day and attended services in a synagogue whilst He was on earth. Continuing in Matthew 28: 1 according to the New American Standard Bible, we read: '**Now after the Sabbath, as it began to dawn toward the first day of the week, Mary Magdalene and the other Mary came to look at the grave.**' The "DuTillet" Hebrew version of Matthew read as follows: '**Now on the evening of the Shabbat, as it dawned toward the first day of the week, came Miriam the Magdalene and the other Miriam to see the sepulcher.**' Reading on in Matthew 28 we see that after a great earthquake an Angel of YHVH rolled away the stone (which the Roman guards sealed), and sat upon it. The angel told the two Miriam's that Yahshua who was impaled is not in the grave any longer as He has risen, as He said. It is very clear from these Scriptures that Yahshua was resurrected at the end of the Sabbath, just before the start of the first day of the week, known as Sunday today.

Christianity holds that Yahshua was impaled on a Friday (or the sixth day of the week) and was resurrected the following Sunday morning – a period of 36 hours in total. The reason for them believing a Sunday morning resurrection is that, as opposed to the Scriptural method of determining a day (explained before), a day according to the Gregorian calendar starts and ends at midnight. They understand 'after the Sabbath' quoted in Matthew 28: 1 to mean, after midnight and 'as it began to dawn toward the first day of the week' to mean, at daybreak on the 1st day of the week, known to them as Sunday. This is because Christianity stopped observing the true Sabbath hundreds of years ago and has also forgotten the Scriptural way of determining time. They are totally oblivious of the fact that by keeping to the Friday impalement and Sunday resurrection account, they are in fact denying Yahshua's Messiahship. How dare I say that? What is the only sign that Yahshua gave the Scribes and Pharisees to know that He is indeed whom He claimed to be? We read from Matthew 12: 38 – 40, '**Then some of the scribes and Pharisees answered Him, saying, "Teacher (or Rabbi), we want to see a sign from you." But He answered and said to them, "An evil and adulterous generation craves for a sign; and yet no sign shall be given to it but the sign of Jonah the prophet; for just as JONAH WAS THREE DAYS AND THREE NIGHTS IN THE BELLY OF THE SEA**

MONSTER, so shall ‘the Son of Man be three days and three nights in the heart of the earth.’ This adds up to 72 hours, which is twice as much as the Christian church believes

Christianity does not any longer, like the first Nazarene followers of Yahshua keep the Feast Days of Elohim given in Leviticus 23, as they believe it to be for the Jews only. If they kept the Feast Days listed in Leviticus 23, they would have realized that these Feast Days are also known as annual Sabbaths or High Day Sabbaths. Yahshua was impaled on a Wednesday, which was the day of preparation for the Feast of Unleavened Bread kept annually from the 15th to the 21st of Aviv. This is confirmed in John 19: 31 as follows: **‘The Jews therefore, because it was the day of preparation, so that the bodies should not remain on the cross on the Sabbath (for that Sabbath was a high day), asked Pilate that their legs might be broken, and that they might be taken away.’** Most translations of The Scriptures include the section in brackets in the above quote. This was not the regular Sabbath, spoken about here but the 1st Day of Unleavened Bread. Our Savior was put to death on a Wednesday, the day of Passover. He was placed in the tomb just before sunset as Wednesday came to a close and Thursday commenced. The woman had no time to anoint His body with spices, due to the High Day Sabbath. They kept the 1st Day of Unleavened Bread which started on Wednesday after sunset (the 15th of Aviv). They bought spices on Friday after the Set-apart day for embalming Messiah’s body. They rested the next day on the weekly Sabbath, and prior to sun-set, came to see the tomb. This is when as described in Matthew 28; they find that Yahshua was already risen at the end of the weekly Sabbath. This was definitely not a sunrise visit to the tomb.

5.9 Days of Unleavened Bread:

The seven Days of Unleavened Bread follows immediately after the Passover and is Elohim’s second annual festival. We read instructions from YHVH regarding the Days of Unleavened Bread from Leviticus 23: 6 – 8, as follows: **“Then on the fifteenth day of the same month there is the Feast of Unleavened Bread to YHVH: for seven days you shall eat unleavened bread. (7) On the first day you shall have a holy convocation: you shall not do any laborious work. (8) But for seven days you shall present an offering by fire to YHVH, On the seventh day is a holy convocation; you shall not do any laborious work.”** The Feast of Unleavened Bread is seven days long and it begins and ends with a set-apart day – the first two annual set-apart days or annual Sabbaths of the year. These set-apart days, or Sabbaths, are days of rest from our physical labors that we routinely do during the week. The timing of the First Day of Unleavened Bread or first annual Sabbath is also used in determining the day of Pentecost, the next set-apart day, to be observed.

Looking back at a time just prior to the Israelites leaving Egypt, on the morning after the Passover, the Egyptians were keen to see the Israelites leave. They were all affected by the plagues, and wanted it to end. So whilst the children of Israel were gathering their possessions to leave, the Egyptians were spoiling them to urge them to go as soon as possible, by giving them articles of gold and silver as well as blue, purple and scarlet material, which would later be used in construction of the Tabernacle. That night, the night of the fifteenth of Aviv, the Israelites left Egypt by the light of the full moon.

We read about the night when the Israelites left Egypt from Exodus 12: 42, in this way: **“It is a night to be much observed unto YHVH for bringing them out from the land of Egypt: this is that night of YHVH to be observed of all the children of Israel in their generations.”** The Israelites were cheerful that evening, the beginning part of the first annual holy day, an evening on which we commemorate their deliverance from slavery in Egypt, by having a special meal with our families and loved ones, some of whom are not all members of the ecclesia. As much as Elohim assisted the Israelites to overcome the Egyptians, enabling the Israelites to leave their country, so the Set-apart Spirit enables us to overcome our sin and keep Elohim’s Torah with a spiritual intent.

Repentance is a process as it takes time to overcome habitual sin. It is for that reason that the Feast of Unleavened Bread lasts for seven days; YHVH made it seven days long to show us that it takes time to get rid of sin. We read Elohim’s instructions regarding the Feast of Unleavened Bread in Exodus 12: 15, like this: **“Seven days you shall eat unleavened bread, but on the first day you shall remove leaven from your houses; for whoever eats anything leavened from the first day until the seventh day, that person shall be cut off from Israel.”** Leaven is used when baking bread, cakes and biscuits. The leavening agent causes these foods to rise, making them light and easy to digest. It takes only a little leaven to let the bread dough rise (“puff up”); it quickly spreads throughout the dough, similar to the way sin puffs us up and spreads throughout our lives, if we allow it to. A very good example is when a teenager smokes against his parents will. Teenagers usually smoke, because they believe it to be a grown-up thing to do. Have you seen how they act all proud and puffed up when they smoke in public away from their parents. It is almost as if they are thinking out aloud saying, *“Nobody is going to tell me what to do.”*

That is exactly the type of attitude that leads to sin, which is the transgression of the Torah. YHVH has told us very clearly in His Scriptures what we must do and how to live to have happy abundant lives. He gave us His commandments and if we follow them fully, we will be happy and content throughout our lives. When we disobey the teachings of Elohim, we sin and are in essence telling Him, *"You cannot tell me what to do. I will decide for myself between what is right and wrong."* We need to understand that as much as it takes only a little leaven to make a loaf of bread rise, so one sin or indiscretion could lead to a whole lot of trouble for us in this life, and ultimately lead to the second death. Rav Shaul warned about this in 1 Corinthians 5: 6, like this: ***"Your boasting is not good. Do you not know that a little leaven leavens the whole lump of dough?"*** The point is that we should not tolerate any sin in our lives. YHVH inspired Rav Shaul to write in verses 7 - 8 of 1 Corinthians 5, ***"Clean out the old leaven, that you may be a new lump, just as you are in fact unleavened. For Messiah our Passover also has been sacrificed. (8) Let us therefore celebrate the feast, not with old leaven, nor with the leaven of malice and wickedness, but with the unleavened bread of sincerity and truth."*** Rav Shaul told the Corinthians not to allow sin to remain in their midst.

We are given the reason for keeping the Days of Unleavened Bread in Exodus 13: 6 - 9, as follows: ***"For seven days you shall eat unleavened bread, and on the seventh day there shall be a feast to YHVH. (7) Unleavened bread shall be eaten throughout the seven days; and nothing leavened shall be seen among you, nor shall any leaven be seen among you in all your borders. (8) And you shall tell your son in that day, saying, 'It is because of what YHVH did for me when I came out of Egypt.' (9) And it shall serve as a sign to you on your hand, and as a reminder on your forehead, that the law of YHVH may be in your mouth; for with a powerful hand YHVH brought you out of Egypt."*** So here we see that the Feast of Unleavened Bread is like tefillin, another sign, that we wear on our left hands and forehead, showing YHVH that we want to keep His Torah.

A few days before the Days of Unleavened Bread, we remove all leaven and leavened products from our homes. This serves as a reminder that we should strive to remove sin from our lives and to live the way of life that Yahshua lived whilst He was on earth. However, it is totally impossible to put away sin and keep Torah without the gift of the Set-apart Spirit - the divine nature of YHVH which helps us to obey Him. This brings us to the Feast of Pentecost.

5.10 Pentecost (Shavuot):

Pentecost or Shavuot is the third annual festival or Sabbath, and is the third step in Elohim's plan of salvation for mankind. Even though the day of Pentecost always falls on the same day of the Hebrew calendar, each individual believer is commanded to count off seven weeks for him/herself from the (first annual) Sabbath leading up to it (see Deuteronomy 16: 9 & 10). Pentecost falls fifty days after the First Day of Unleavened Bread; and is an English word derived from Greek, meaning to count fifty. The transliterated Hebrew name 'Shavuot', simply means Feast of Weeks, as may be read from verse 10 of Deuteronomy 16. It was on the first Pentecost that YHVH gave Israel His Commandments, Statutes and Judgments through Moses on Mount Sinai. It was also on this very day in 31 CE, after Yahshua ascended to heaven that YHVH gave the Set-apart Spirit to His ecclesia, enabling them to keep His commandments with a Spiritual intent.

It is necessary to study the annual harvesting of crops in the land of Israel, to better understand the meaning of Pentecost. The growing season in Israel, is divided into a smaller spring grain harvest and a larger harvest of crops during autumn (or the fall season). Pentecost always falls during the first or spring harvest of the year and is considered the *"first fruits"* of the land. It is for this reason that Pentecost is also called the *'Feast of First Fruits'* and points to the initial harvest of souls, a kind of first fruits unto YHVH. Romans 8: 29 speaks of Yahshua Messiah as the ***"first-born of many brethren"***. We who are called at this time are also considered to be a type of first fruits, as we read from James 1: 18, as follows: ***"Having purposed it, He brought us forth by the Word of truth, for us to be a kind of first fruits of His creatures."*** Just as the spring harvest is smaller, the number of people YHVH is calling during this age is small compared to the billions who will be called after the Millennium rule of Yahshua. And so Pentecost, or the *"Feast of First-fruits"* pictures the first and smaller *"spiritual harvest"* of people called today and also includes those who died in Yahshua during this and past ages.

It has always been Elohim's intention for all men to be saved, as we read from 1st Timothy 2: 3 & 4, as follows: ***"This is good and acceptable in the sight of Elohim our Savior, (4) who desires all men to be saved and come to the knowledge of the truth."*** Even so, He does not want all to be saved at this time, as we read from Mark 4: 3 & 4 like this: ***"And He said to them (His disciples) 'To you has been given the mystery of the Kingdom of Elohim; but those who are outside get everything in parables, in order that WHILE SEEING, THEY MAY SEE AND NOT PERCEIVE; AND WHILE HEARING, THEY MAY HEAR AND NOT UNDERSTAND LEST THEY RETURN AND BE FORGIVEN.'" A second witness to this is found in Mathew 13: 11 & 12, in this way: 'And He (Yahshua) answered and said to them, "To you it has been granted to know the mysteries of the kingdom of heaven, but to them it has not been granted. (12) For***

whoever has, to Him shall more be given, and he shall have an abundance; but whoever does not have, even what he has shall be taken away from him.”

5.11 When do we start counting the Omer?

Before continuing, we need to address an area where some believers disagree with the Rabbinical Jews regarding the counting of the Omer. There are some who count the Omer from the day after the Sabbath, falling between the First and the Last Days of Unleavened Bread. The main reason for doing so, is that they do not understand that the Annual Set-apart Days are also known as Annual Sabbaths, as is confirmed in John 19: 31, ***‘The Jews therefore, because it was the day of preparation, so that the bodies should not remain on the cross on the Sabbath (for that Sabbath was a high day), asked Pilate that their legs might be broken, and that they might be taken away.’*** In addition we need to compare Leviticus 23: 9 – 15, where this command is given, with Deuteronomy 16: 9 and Joshua 5: 10 – 11, where the Israelites actually arrived in the Promised Land. We start reading from verses 9 - 14 of Leviticus 23, ***‘Then YHVH spoke to Moses saying, “Speak to the sons of Israel, and say to them, ‘When you enter the land which I am going to give to you and reap its harvest, then you shall bring the sheaf of the first fruits of your harvest to the priest. (11) And he shall wave the sheaf before YHVH for you to be accepted; on the day after the Sabbath the priest shall wave it. (12) Now on the day when you wave the sheaf, you shall offer a lamb one year old without defect for a burnt offering to YHVH. (13) Its grain offering shall then be two-tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with oil, an offering by fire to YHVH for a soothing aroma, with its libation, a fourth of a hin of wine. (14) Until this same day, until you have brought in the offering of your Elohim, you shall eat neither bread nor roasted grain nor new growth. It is to be a perpetual statute throughout your generations in all your dwelling places.’*** In verse 15 it tells us to count seven complete Sabbaths. However, we see in Deuteronomy 16: 9 that we shall count seven complete weeks, as this Feast is also known as the Feast of Weeks (and not the Feast of Sabbaths).

Now, let us turn to Joshua 5: 10 - 12, where we read about the Israelites *‘when they entered the land,’* as follows: ***‘While the sons of Israel camped at Gilgal, they observed the Passover on the evening of the fourteenth day of the month on the desert plains of Jericho. (11) And on the day after Passover, on that very day they ate some of the produce of the land, unleavened cakes and parched grain.²⁹ (12) And the manna ceased on the day after they had eaten some of the produce of the land, so that the sons of Israel no longer had manna, but they ate some of the yield of the land of Canaan during that year.’*** Israel was forbidden to eat grain or corn until the Omer was harvested and waved by the priest, according to Leviticus 23: 14. The fact that they ate unleavened cakes and specifically parched or roasted grain, from the day after Passover, shows that the priests offered the grain offering on that day, i.e. the First Day of Unleavened Bread, and the Omer was counted from the evening after the First Day of Unleavened Bread came to a close. This agrees with Leviticus 2: 14, where we read: ***‘Also if you bring a grain offering of early ripened things*** (in Spring time or Aviv as it is transliterated in Hebrew) ***to YHVH, you shall bring fresh heads of grain roasted in the fire, grits of new growth, grain offering of your early ripened things.*** If we are to count the Omer from the day after the weekly Sabbath, i.e. Sunday, then Joshua sinned and caused the whole house of Israel to sin with him, as he allowed them to eat grain and the produce of the land the day after Passover.

The wording of Joshua 5 shows that what allowed Israel to eat grain was the passing of the Passover and not the passing of the alleged weekly Sabbath. Fixed Sunday-to-Sunday (First Fruits to Pentecost) counting is an open contradiction of Joshua chapter 5: 10 – 12. Here we see that the grain was eaten on the 15th and the Omer was counted from that evening, as the 16th of Aviv started. The expression *‘the day after the Sabbath’* in Leviticus 23 has been misunderstood as meaning that the first fruit sheaf was always to be waved on the day following the weekly Sabbath. This view was adopted by the Sadducees (Karaites today) and certain modern interpreters. However, it is clear from the above discussion that the first annual Sabbath day (the 1st day of Unleavened Bread) was meant as may be seen in Joshua 5: 11.

But in order to fulfill our Scriptural obligation, we need to provide two additional witnesses. There are those who assert that since Yahshua was resurrected just prior to the weekly Sabbath, and because He is in fact the First of the first fruits to be resurrected, the Jewish method of determining Pentecost is incorrect. However, we read about the very first Pentecost after Yahshua’s resurrection and ascension to heaven from Acts 2: 1, as follows: ***“And when the day of Pentecost had come, they were all together in one place.”*** Verse 1 in the KJV states: ***‘And when the day of Pentecost was fully come, they all with one accord in one place.’*** It should be noted that there were no arguments between the believers, who we will see later, were mostly Jews from throughout the then known world. They came together in agreement over the timing of the day of Pentecost. Also remember there was no such thing as a telephone or e-mail in those days to notify

²⁹According to Leviticus 2: 14, when a grain offering is offered to YHVH it shall be fresh heads of grain, roasted (or parched) in fire, as also instructed in Leviticus 23:14.

people of any changes regarding the date of Pentecost, in the eight days after Yahshua's ascension. In addition, Rav. Shaul did not mention any such 'changes' or corrections, as he did regarding the timing of the Passover in 1 Corinthians 11: 23 – 26.

The fact that Yahshua was the first of the first fruits to be resurrected did also not validate a change to the date of the commencement of counting towards Pentecost – else it would have been clearly stated, since Elohim is not an Elohim of confusion, as we read in 1 Corinthians 14: 33 as follows: **'(for) Elohim is not an Elohim of confusion but of peace, as in all the ecclesia of the saints** (believers).' The question is: Why are there two different opinions as to when we keep Pentecost, by people who use the same Scriptures? Let's determine to resolve this issue once for all: The problem starts in Leviticus 23 where we are told in verse 11, **'And he shall wave the sheaf before YHVH for you to be accepted; on the day after the Sabbath the priest shall wave it.'** In the Septuagint (LXX) version of the Scriptures, this underlined section simply reads: *'the day after the first day'* (of Unleavened Bread on Aviv 15th) and tells us to count 7 full weeks. So we see that the term 'morrow after the Shabbat' in the Masoretic text, from which most modern translations are sourced, is replaced with *'after the first day'*. Even so, which Sabbath is Leviticus 23: 11 talking about? Looking under the Hebrew word Sabbath in the 'Gesenius Hebrew Lexicon', we see that it does not mean *'the seventh day of the week'*, but simply to *'rest'*. Therefore, the words *'yom shabbat'* transliterated in Hebrew simply means *'day of rest'*. Even though *'Sabbath'* is also the name of the seventh day of the week, it is not the foremost meaning of the word.

In addition, we cannot obtain the correct meaning of a verse without comparing two or three scriptural witnesses in this regard. We are also told in 2 Peter 1; 20, **'But know this first of all, that no prophecy of Scriptures is a matter of one's own interpretation.'** It is therefore important to find other instances in the Scriptures where we are told how to count to Pentecost, to allow the Scriptures to interpret the Scriptures. We read in Deuteronomy 16: 9 & 10: **'You shall count seven weeks for yourself; you shall begin to count seven weeks from the time you begin to put the sickle to the standing grain. (10) Then you shall celebrate the Feast of Weeks to YHVH your Elohim with a tribute of a freewill offering of your hand, which you shall give just as YHVH your Elohim blesses you.'** Yes, the transliterated Hebrew word *'Shavuot'*, another name for Pentecost simply means the Feast of Weeks, and not the Feast of Sabbaths. A second witness of this is found in 2 Chronicles 8: 13 and a third in Numbers 28: 26, where we read: **'Also on the day of the first fruits, when you present a new grain offering to YHVH in your Feast of Weeks, you shall have a holy convocation; you shall do no laborious work.'**

But why was the word Sabbath used in Leviticus 23? The Septuagint (LXX) was written about 280 BCE. which was at least 120 years before the Jewish sects of the Pharisees and the Sadducees came to existence, and was long before there was a disagreement about this portion of the Scriptures. The Sadducees counted the Omer from the day after the weekly Sabbath. Even though Jewish authorities agree that the Sadducees were incorrect, we need to determine what Yahshua (who is our perfect example), had to say about their understanding? We turn to Matthew 22: 24 – 28, where the Sadducees questioned Yahshua about the resurrection (in which they did not believe). They related an account of a married man who had seven brothers to Yahshua. In this account the man died childless and in accordance with Torah, it was the duty of his brother as next of kin, to marry his brother's wife to raise up offspring for him. One brother after the other died, and so each one in turn married the first one's wife, but without leaving their brother offspring. Eventually the wife also died. Their question following the story is recorded in Matthew 22: 28, like this: **'In the resurrection therefore whose wife of the seven shall she be? For they all had her.'** Yahshua answered them in Matthew 22: 29, as follows: **'But Yahshua answered and said to them, "You are mistaken, not understanding the Scriptures, or the power of Elohim.'** Yahshua's answer to them makes it clear, that we should not accept the Sadducees' interpretation of the Scriptures and since we are told in Deuteronomy 18: 18 & 19, **to listen to Him** (Yahshua), it should be sufficient for us. The Sabbath spoken about in Leviticus 23: 11, was simply the first annual Sabbath of the year namely the First Day of Unleavened Bread. This is a day of rest also known as an annual Sabbath (we see in Leviticus 23: 24, 32 & 39³⁰ of the KJV that these Set-apart days are also referred to as Sabbaths). We read from verse 8 of Leviticus 23 that on the seventh day of Unleavened Bread, we shall have a Set-apart convocation and not do any laborious work, as this is also a day of rest or the second annual Sabbath of the year. In fact, the Sabbath that we count the Omer from, is the same Sabbath spoken about in John 19: 31, and which Christians misunderstand to be the weekly Sabbath, because they do not keep Elohim's annual Feast Days, as follows: **'The Jews therefore, because it was the day of preparation, so that the bodies should not remain on the cross on the**

³⁰ We read from verse 24 of Leviticus 23, **'Speak to the sons of Israel, saying, In the seventh month on the first of the month, you shall have a Sabbath rest, a reminder by blowing of trumpets, a Set-apart convocation.'**; we read further in Leviticus 23: 32, **'It is to be a Sabbath of complete rest to you, and you shall humble your souls; on the ninth of the month at evening, from evening until evening you shall keep your Sabbath.'**; and finally we read in Leviticus 23: 39, **'On exactly the fifteenth day of the seventh month, when you have gathered in the crops of the land, you shall celebrate the feast of YHVH for seven days, with a rest on the first day and a Sabbath rest on the eighth day,'**

Sabbath (for that Sabbath was a high day), asked Pilate that their legs might be broken, and that they might be taken away.' This was, as all believers know, the first annual Sabbath otherwise known as the First Day of Unleavened Bread. Do you realize that the same annual Sabbath that Christians misconstrue has become the source of confusion to many Nazarene/Messianic Israelite and like-minded groups today?

The odd thing about one of these groups who insist on the Sunday to Sunday counting of the Omer, is the fact that they recently publicized that they have now canonized 'The Book of Jasher' - a book quoted in Joshua 10: 13 and 2 Samuel 1: 18, which was reported to be 'lost'. Most of us are aware of this book and some even bought copies, published by TGS Services in Texas. However, no one knows for certain if this is in fact the same authentic book, mentioned in The Scriptures. Even so, The Book of Jasher agrees with the Hebrew calendar that Pentecost (or Shavuot) always falls on the sixth day of the third month, as we read from Chapter 82: 6 (of Jasher), **"And in the third month from the children of Yisrael's departure from Mitzrayim, on the sixth day of it, YHVH gave to Yisrael the ten mitzvoth on Mount Sinai."**

Similar to the other annual set-apart days, we are commanded to keep Pentecost forever, as we read from Leviticus 23: 21, **"On this same day you shall make a proclamation as well; you are to have a set-apart convocation. You shall do no laborious work. It is to be a perpetual statute in your dwelling places throughout your generations."** A set apart convocation, or gathering, is a time when Elohim's people gather together to learn more about Him and His plan of Salvation for mankind. It is by getting to know Elohim, that we are able to serve Him better. In addition, by keeping the Feast Days of Elohim, we practice what we have learnt from those who came before us, so that we as the "first fruits," will if we make it into the Kingdom of Elohim, will assist Yahshua in teaching the people who survive the great tribulation, during the millennium and beyond.

But the first three festivals, known as the Spring Festivals in the Northern hemisphere, picture only the beginning of Elohim's plan of salvation for mankind. The rest of the festivals of YHVH picture the return of Messiah; the putting away of Satan for a thousand years, Messiah's millennial rule and the Last Great Day shows how the rest of mankind fits into Elohim's plan of salvation for all mankind.

Next we will explain the meanings of the fall or Autumn festivals (in the northern hemisphere), namely: The Feast of Trumpets, the Day of Atonement, the Feast of Tabernacles and the Last Great Day.

5.12 Feast of Trumpets (Yom Teruah):

Reading from verse 23 of Leviticus 23, we see that the Feast of Trumpets always falls on the first day of the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This means it will fall sometime in the month of September or early October according to the Gregorian calendar in use today. The Scriptures describes the Feast of Trumpets as **"a reminder by blowing of trumpets."** The trumpet mostly used in ancient Israel, was known as a shofar, or a ram's horn, not the kind of trumpet normally used by musicians today. The shofar produces a piercing sound when blown and was used to warn of impending warfare just as sirens today warn of a military attack.

The Feast of Trumpets pictures the return of Yahshua, as may be read from 1 Thessalonians 4: 16, as follows: **"For the Master himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trump of Elohim; and the dead in Messiah shall rise first."** Yahshua's return is going to come during a time of worldwide war such as the world has never seen before. When asked by His disciples what the world would be like before His return, Yahshua replied that there would be many wars, and that world conditions would be so bad that no human would be left alive if He does not intervene in time, as we read from Matthew 24: 21 & 22, in this way: **"For then there will be a great tribulation, such as has not occurred since the beginning of the world until now, nor ever shall. (22) And unless those days had been cut short, no life would have been saved; but for the sake of the elect those days shall be cut short."** The Feast of Trumpets is a reminder to us that the return of Yahshua is man's only hope for survival. It is also a warning to us that we should seek His protection. YHVH wants us not to forget that man's way of doing things leads to death and destruction, as we read from Proverbs 14: 12, in this way: **"There is a way which seemeth right unto a man, but the end thereof are the ways of death."**

Another important event pictured by the Feast of Trumpets, is the resurrection of the believers to immortal life at the return of Yahshua to the earth. We read accordingly from 1 Corinthians 15: 51- 52, as follows: **"Behold, I shew you a mystery; We shall not all sleep, but we shall all be changed. In a moment, (52) in the twinkling of an eye, at the last trump: for the trumpet shall sound, and the dead shall be raised incorruptible, and we shall be changed."** These words describe the called out ones who have repented of their sins and have received the Set-apart Spirit prior to Yahshua's return. They together with all of those who died in the faith, whilst being part of the called out ones, will be made immortal at His return.

The Feast of Trumpets reminds us of the glorious return of Yahshua our Messiah, and the resurrection of the dead – the time when the sons of Yah will be born into the family of Elohim to live forever. No wonder that

YHVH commands us to meet together on this day each year to review these wonderful future events and to have a “set-apart convocation,” as we read from Leviticus 23: 24: **“Speak unto the children of Israel, saying, In the seventh month, in the first day of the month, shall ye have a Sabbath, a memorial of blowing of trumpets, an holy convocation.”**

5.13 Day of Atonement (Yom Kippur):

The Day of Atonement is kept on the tenth day of the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar, as YHVH instructs in Leviticus 23: 26 - 32. We read from verse 27, **“On exactly the tenth day of the seventh month is the Day of Atonement; it shall be a holy convocation for you, and you shall humble your souls and present an offering by fire to YHVH.”** This is the only Set-apart Day on which we fast: i.e., not eat any food or drink any liquids. To understand what it means to **‘humble your souls’** we turn to Psalm 35: 13, where David gives us the answer, as follows: **‘But as for me, when they were sick, my clothing was sackcloth; I humbled my soul with fasting: and my prayer kept returning to my bosom.’** From this it is clear that we humble ourselves when we fast. But why does YHVH require us to fast? Satan has deceived mankind for nearly 6 000 years now. He has deceived us to believe that we do not need YHVH our Elohim in our lives and because of this false belief and our resultant self-reliance and arrogance; we are on the brink of self-annihilation. This is one reason for us to humble ourselves, but it is also the reason why Yahshua is about to return to save us from ourselves.

YHVH wants us to fast on the Day of Atonement to remind us that we need to be humble and teachable – that we need to be willing to obey Him and to let Him work through us. If we learn to be humble and teachable now, we won’t have to learn the hard way later like the rest of the world will. When Yahshua returns in power and esteem, He is going to have to bring prideful humanity to their knees. By that time Satan will have deceived mankind into thinking that Yahshua and His angels are enemies of man. Mankind will actually try and fight against Yahshua at His return. When Yahshua defeats them, mankind will finally be humbled. They will finally understand that their ways only lead to suffering and sorrow. It is sad to say, but only after they have been humbled by YHVH will mankind be willing to turn to Him and learn His way.

The Day of Atonement also pictures us becoming “at one” with YHVH our Elohim. To make that possible YHVH will have to restrain Satan from deceiving mankind and influencing us to sin. Only then will we begin to be “at one” with Elohim, living in accordance with His will. The account of how YHVH is going to restrain Satan is found in Revelation 20: 1 - 3: as follows: **“And I saw an angel come down from heaven, having the key of the bottomless pit and a great chain in his hand. (2) And he laid hold of the dragon, that old serpent, which is the devil, and Satan, and bound him a thousand years, (3) and cast him into the bottomless pit, and shut him up, and set a seal upon him, that he should deceive the nations no more, till the thousand years be fulfilled.”**

In ancient Israel they used to hold a ceremony on the Day of Atonement which symbolized Satan being restrained. This is recorded for us in Leviticus 16; in the account the high priest cast lots over two goats. The goat on which the lot of YHVH falls was killed for a sin offering, just as Yahshua was killed for our sins many centuries later. Yahshua’s death makes our reconciliation or ‘at-one-ment’ with YHVH possible. Next the high priest laid his hands on the head of the other goat, which pictured Satan, and confessed the sins of Israel over it, figuratively putting those sins onto the ‘Azazel’ goat. That goat was taken to the wilderness and released, since he (the one which represents Satan) is the real author of sin. We read fittingly from John 8: 44: **“You are of your father the devil, and you want to do the desires of your father. He was a murderer from the beginning, and does not stand in the truth, because there is no truth in him. Whenever he speaks a lie, he speaks from his own nature; for he is a liar, and the father of lies.”** This part of the ceremony pictures the time just after Yahshua returns when He will place the sins of mankind on Satan and cast him into the “bottomless pit”. Only then will mankind finally be able to become “at-one” with YHVH through Yahshua’s sacrifice, and begin to follow the way of Elohim, as He originally intended: It accordingly also pictures the marriage of the Lamb to His Bride, chosen by His Father, at which time we will become “at one” (atonement) with Elohim. Atonement is also the day when Yahshua represents us before (YHVH)’s throne as High Priest, to enter our names into the book of life. The Day of Atonement and all that it pictures is the world’s guarantee of a new age of universal peace, harmony and co-operation with Elohim. This will be followed by Yahshua’s millennial rule on this earth pictured by the Feast of Tabernacles, discussed next.

5.14 Feast of Tabernacles (Sukkoth):

The Feast of Tabernacles is the most joyful time of the year for Elohim’s people, because He has commanded us to save a tithe of our income throughout the year, to enable us keep His set-apart Days, as we read from Deuteronomy 14: 22 – 26, as follows: **“You shall surely tithe all the produce from what you sow, which comes out of the field every year. (23) And you shall eat in the presence of YHVH your Elohim, at the place where He chooses to establish His name, the tithe of your grain, your new wine,**

your oil, and the first-born of your herd and your flock, in order that you may learn to fear YHVH your Elohim always. (24) And if the distance is so great for you that you are not able to bring the tithe, since the place where YHVH your Elohim chooses to set His name is too far away from you when YHVH your Elohim blesses you, (25) then you shall exchange it for money, and shall bind the money in your hand and go to the place which YHVH your Elohim chooses. (26) And you may spend the money for whatever your heart desires, for oxen, or sheep, or wine, or strong drink, or whatever your heart desires; and there you shall eat it in the presence of YHVH your Elohim and rejoice, you and your household. This makes it possible for us to attend the Feast of Tabernacles once a year to receive inspiration and teachings, as well as enjoy plenty of good fellowship, food and drink. Also notice in verse 26, that we are allowed to buy wine and strong drink, if we so desire. That should put an end to another religious myth; i.e. that true believers are not allowed to drink alcoholic beverages; the only proviso being, that we do it in moderation.

YHVH commands us to keep the Feast of Tabernacles for seven days in Leviticus 23: 33 – 36, as follows: **'Again YHVH spoke to Moses saying, (34) "Speak to the sons of Israel, saying, 'On the fifteenth of this seventh month is the Feast of Booths (or Tabernacles) for seven days to YHVH. (35) On the first day is a set-apart convocation; you shall do no laborious work of any kind. (36) For seven days you shall present an offering by fire to YHVH. On the eighth day you shall have a set-apart convocation and present an offering by fire to YHVH; it is an assembly. You shall do no laborious work.'"** The first day of the Feast of Tabernacles is a special Sabbath or Set-apart Day. YHVH commands us to live in temporary dwellings for seven days during this Feast, because He wants us to understand that our lives in this world are only temporary and that we should constantly be looking forward to eternal life in the Kingdom of Elohim. If we focus on the coming Kingdom of Elohim, we will not easily be distracted by the temporary physical things of this life to the point where we forget about YHVH and the eternal life that only He can offer us.

The Feast of Tabernacles pictures the (Olam Haba) or world after Yahshua has returned to earth to establish His government over the nations. During that time we will experience worldwide peace and prosperity, and nations will convert their weapons into farming implements, as we are told in Isaiah 2: 4, as follows: **"And he will judge between the nations, and will render decisions for many peoples; and they will hammer their swords into plowshares, and their spears into pruning hooks. Nation will not lift up sword against nation, and never again will they learn war."** It will be a time of peace that will even include the animal world, as is recorded in Isaiah 11: 6 – 9, in this way: **"And the wolf will dwell with the lamb, and the leopard will lie down with the kid, and the calf and the young lion and the fatling together; and a little boy will lead them. (7) And the cow and the bear will graze; their young will lie down together; and the lion will eat straw like the ox. (8) And the nursing child will play by the hole of the cobra, and the weaned child will put his hand on the viper's den. (9) They shall not hurt or destroy in all my holy mountain, for the earth will be full of the knowledge of YHVH."**

The coming Kingdom of Elohim will be a time of prosperity and abundance to the point where the crops will not all be harvested before it is time to plant again, as we read from Amos 9: 13, **"Behold, days are coming," declares YHVH, "When the plowman will overtake the reaper and the treader of grapes him who sows seed; when the mountains will drip sweet wine, and all the hills will be dissolved."** At that time everyone will know the way of Elohim, as is confirmed in Isaiah 11: 9, in this way: **"They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain; for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of YHVH, as the waters cover the sea."** A second witness comes from Micah 4: 1 – 3, as follows: **"And it will come about in the last days that the mountain of the house of YHVH will be established as the chief of the mountains. I will be raised above the hills, and the peoples will stream to it. (2) And many nations will come, and say, "Come, and let us go up to the mountain of YHVH and to the house of Elohim of Jacob, that He may teach us about His ways and that we may walk in His paths. "For from Zion will go forth the law, even the word of YHVH from Jerusalem. (3) And He will judge between many peoples, and render decisions for mighty, distant nations. Then they will hammer their swords into plowshares and their spears into pruning hooks; nation will not lift up sword against nation, and never again will they train for war."**

We see further from Zechariah 14: 16 – 18, that the entire world will keep the Feast of Tabernacles during the millennium rule of Messiah, as follows: **"Then it will come about that any who are left of all the nations that went against Jerusalem will go up from year to year to worship the King, YHVH of hosts, and to celebrate the Feast of Booths. (17) And it will be, that whichever of the families of the earth does not go up to Jerusalem to worship the King, YHVH of hosts, there will be no rain on them. (18) And if the family of Egypt does not go up or enter, then no rain will fall on them; it will be the plague with which YHVH smites the nations who do not go to celebrate the Feast of Booths. (19) This will be the punishment of Egypt, and the punishment of all nations who do not go up to celebrate the Feast of Booths."**

What a wonderful world to look forward to; there will no longer be discrimination against those who want to serve and obey Elohim. No more uncertainty about a possible world war that could destroy our families and everything we worked for. People will also not have to struggle just to make enough money to make ends meet. Instead people will have more than enough time to spend in constructive spiritual, educational, cultural and recreational activities with their families. Unlike in this world, there will be adequate opportunities for people to be educated to reach their full potentials.

During the Feast of Tabernacles we get a foretaste of the peace and prosperity that the entire world will enjoy during the millennial rule of Yahshua Messiah on this earth: We have more than enough time available to learn the ways of Elohim, through daily services, Scripture studies and extra prayer as we are not busy doing the things that we normally do during the rest of the year. We also have time available to spend on activities to bring us closer to fellow believers and loved ones. It was never Elohim's intention that we have to work all day just to be able to make ends meet. However, we see from Genesis 3: 17 – 19, that Adam's sin, caused YHVH to curse the ground, resulting in us having to work extra hard to get rid of thorns and weeds, in preparing the land for crops for food. YHVH did this to help us realize that obedience to Him is far better than rebellion. Originally Adam was given a fruitful garden where he obtained food without much effort. By keeping the annual Feast Days, we get to understand Elohim's plan of salvation for all mankind - YHVH wants us to use the extra time to get to know His plan to take the world back to what it was like before Adam's sin. YHVH gives us a foretaste of the (Olam Haba) world to come, during the seven days of the Feast of Tabernacles, during which we enjoy an abundance of good things and have time for those activities which enrich our lives, and help us build the very character of Elohim.

5.15 The Last Great Day:

The festivals of Elohim help us understand His plan to give us eternal life in His Kingdom. But, His plan is not complete until He gives all the people who ever lived the same opportunity that we are having at this time. The Last Great Day pictures the final stage of Elohim's plan and occurs immediately after the Feast of Tabernacles. We see from Leviticus 23: 36 that it is called **'the eighth day'**, and that it is referred to as **'the last day, the great day of the feast'** in John 7: 37.

Most of us have family and friends who are not called at this time. But, we need to keep in mind that YHVH does the calling as we read from John 6: 44, as follows: **"No one can come to Me, unless the Father who sent Me draws him; and I will raise him up on the last day."** After the Millennium the rest of the dead will be resurrected and YHVH will again allow Satan to test the inhabitants of the earth. Satan will be loosed from his place of restraint to test and deceive those who do not fully agree with Elohim's way of life, as we read from Revelation 20: 7 – 9, in this way: **"And when the thousand years are completed, Satan will be released from his prison, (8) and will come out to deceive the nations which are in the four corners of the earth, Gog and Magog, to gather them together for the war; the number of them is like the sand of the seashore. (9) And they came up on the broad plain of the earth and surrounded the camp of the saints and the beloved city, and fire came down from heaven and devoured them."** At that time Satan will finally be restrained as we read from verse 10 of Revelation 20, **"And the devil that deceived them was thrown into the lake of fire and brimstone, where the beast and the false prophet are also (or had been cast); and they will be tormented day and night forever and ever."**

Continuing in verse 11 to 12 we read about the great white throne judgment, as follows: **"And I saw a great white throne and Him who sat upon it, from whose presence earth and heaven fled away, and no place was found for them. (12) And I saw the dead, the great and the small, standing before the throne, and books were opened; and another book was opened, which is the book of life; and the dead were judged from the things which were written in the books, according to their deeds."** This describes a time in history during which all people who ever lived will come to realize the reason for being born. The books spoken about in verse 12 are the Scriptures that will be opened to the understanding of those in the second resurrection, similar to the way in which Yahshua opened His disciples' minds to understanding the Scriptures, in Luke 24: 45, in this way: **'Then He opened their minds to understand the Scriptures.'** These people will then have their first opportunity to understand and know the way of Elohim. They will be given a chance to make an informed decision as to whether they want to repent of their past sins, or not. This will truly be their **'day of salvation'**, their period of judgment will begin at that time. According to Isaiah 65: 20 we see that this period will last for one hundred years, as follows: **"No longer will there be in it an infant who lives but a few days, or an old man who does not live out his days; for the youth will die at the age of one hundred and the one who does not reach the age of one hundred shall be thought accursed."**

There will be no premature deaths during this period, and those who repent and overcome during the 100 years, will be blessed with eternal life. They will be given the opportunity to accept Yahshua as their Master and Savior, or reject His way of life. Eternal life will be offered to all the people who ever lived. Those who

accept Yahshua as their Savior and Passover will be immersed into His saving name, be given a portion of the Set-apart Spirit and be changed into spiritual children of Elohim. Even so, there might be some that will not accept Elohim's way of life. They will be burned once and for all. They will not be tormented forever and ever as some believe; only spirit beings such as Satan and his demons have that fate awaiting them. Human beings who are made from physical matter will burn until they are turned to ashes as is confirmed in Malachi 4: 1 - 3. They will become ashes under the feet of the righteous. The Last Great Day pictures the time when our Father YHVH will give all the people who ever lived a chance to be judged, after they have learnt the truth about Him and His way.

This concept is also explained in Ezekiel 37, where we see the members of the lost ten tribes of Israel being raised and united with Judah. Most of the Israelites were deceived throughout the past centuries and died believing in a false messiah and a three-headed G-d. However, YHVH reveals in Ezekiel 37 that He will resurrect these Israelites and give them His truth, so that they will receive His Set-apart Spirit to lead them to salvation. YHVH deals with His chosen people Israel, before He is going to deal with the rest of humanity. YHVH is a merciful Elohim and He will give all human beings a chance to come to repentance and will bring the vast majority of mankind back to life and will fill those who willingly follow Him, with his Set-apart Spirit.

The Scriptures shows clearly that most of the people who have ever lived will accept and live the way of YHVH and become His people, as we read from Isaiah 25: 7 - 9, in this way: ***'And on this mountain He will swallow up the covering which is over all peoples. Even the veil which is stretched over all nations.*** (8) ***He will swallow up death for all time, And YHVH Elohim will wipe tears away from all faces, And He will remove the reproach of His people from all the earth; For YHVH has spoken.*** (9) ***And it will be said in that day, "Behold, this is our Elohim for whom we have waited that He might save us. This is YHVH for whom we have waited; Let us rejoice and be glad in His salvation."*** The veil will be destroyed when the day of judgment comes for the billions of people who never had a real opportunity to know Elohim or who never even heard the name Yahshua. The people who were blinded in the past will have the veil which is stretched over them, removed. However, do not be mistaken, if these countless billions of formerly blinded people are simply judged by their works, many of them who were thieves, prostitutes, dictators and false prophets will all die the second death in the lake of fire. They did not ever repent and were not immersed as we are taught to do in Acts 2: 38. They did not study the Scriptures to grow in grace and knowledge, as we are taught in 2 Peter 3: 18. They did not even know what the word repentance meant.

The second resurrection prior to the great white throne judgment is the resurrection of the wicked and the unsaved dead. YHVH does not have double standards; the billions of unsaved people deserve to have the same chance that we are having. They will only be judged by what they did, after they come to learn about the truth of Elohim. But, many religious leaders, being deceived themselves, believe that Elohim will only save their 'brethren' and relatives who were Christians, but will let the multitudes from ages past die, without them ever coming to repentance and surrendering to Yahshua the Messiah. These leaders could not be more wrong: The damnations that we read about in the Scriptures apply to those of us who are being called during this age. We are being judged at this time and if we do not qualify, will burn to become ashes under the feet of the righteous. For the unsaved billions of Buddhists, Muslims, Shintoist and those who believed in a false messiah, who came to do away with his Fathers laws, both at present and in the past, the Scriptures will be opened to their understanding after the second resurrection. YHVH will allow them time to prove that they want to follow His way of life, as we are doing today, and then make them His spiritual sons and daughters.

This is not a second chance – since they were blinded by YHVH Himself in the past. We read this in Romans 11: 32, as follows: ***'For Elohim hath concluded them all in unbelief, that He might have mercy upon all.'*** This is truly the second harvest of human souls into the everlasting Kingdom. But, there is no second chance - we read accordingly in Hebrews 10: 26 & 27: ***'For if we go on sinning willfully after receiving the knowledge of the truth, there no longer remains a sacrifice for sins, (27) but a certain terrifying expectation of judgment, and THE FURY OF A FIRE WHICH WILL CONSUME THE ADVERSARIES.'***

What a wonderful future these Feast Days picture for the people of Elohim. We are promised that Satan will be bound so that the whole world can live peacefully without his influence; We are promised physical abundance and prosperity never before experienced by mankind; a promise of universal knowledge of the way of Elohim and right education so that all will have the same opportunity to develop their talents and potentials. Could we ask for anything more! This is something which those who do not observe the Feast Days of Elohim cannot understand.

5.16 Timing of the Sabbath:

In the world which we live, a new day starts at midnight and lasts for twenty four hours, until midnight when the next day begins. Most people who call themselves Christian keep their rest day from midnight on

Saturday to midnight on Sunday night, the first day of the week, also defined in many dictionaries as the Christian Sabbath. There are three Scriptural references in the renewed Covenant that lead some to believe that Sunday was the day of rest and worship for the Renewed Covenant ecclesia. We will discuss each one of these Scriptures in turn, below:

- Some say that 1 Corinthians 16: 1 & 2 refer to taking up a collection during Sunday services. Examining these verses closer, reveals that, it was not what Rav Shaul meant. Although the Scriptures say that the collection took place on the first day of the week, it does not say that a worship service was involved. This was merely a special collection for members of the ecclesia in Jerusalem who were in need, as may be understood from verses 1 and 3; It was part of a wider relief effort also involving members in Galatia and Macedonia. The support was necessary because of a famine described in Acts 11: 28 – 30. Rav Shaul did not say that this collection was to be taken up at a religious service, in fact he tells the Corinthians in 1 Corinthians 16: 2, to ***'let each one of you put aside and save, as he may prosper, that no collections be made when I come.'*** These contributions were to be put aside and saved, not to be brought to a worship service on Sunday. To say that this is an account of a collection taken up during a Sunday worship service (which was considered to be a normal working day, in those days), is to read into the Scriptures what it does not say.
- A Scripture which is commonly cited to justify Sunday worship is Revelation 1: 10. In this Scripture, Yochanan was saying: ***'I was in the Spirit on the Lord's Day (the Day of YHVH); and I heard behind me a loud voice like the sound of a trumpet.'*** Some insist that Yochanan was saying that he was at a worship service on Sunday and had a vision. But, 'the Lord's Day' is nowhere in the Scriptures defined as Sunday. This is in fact the only place in the Scriptures, where this term is used, which would not be the case if the 'church' had been observing Sunday for a long time, as some assert. In fact the vision which Yochanan had, was not referring to Sunday at all, but he wrote that the vision took him into the future time, which the Scriptures normally refer to as *'the day of the lord'* or *'the day of the master Yahshua Messiah'* as we see from 2 Peter 3: 10; 2 Thessalonians 2: 2; and 1 Corinthians 1: 8. This does not talk about a single day, but refers to the end-time events when Yahshua our Messiah will return. It will be a time during which He will intervene directly in the affairs of mankind; a time when mankind's rule will end and Yahshua will commence ruling us from Jerusalem.
- Another Scripture used by some to show that the renewed Covenant 'church' observed Sunday, is found in Acts 20: 7, as follows: ***'And on the first day of the week, when we were gathered together to break bread, Rav Shaul began talking to them, intending to depart the next day, and he prolonged his message until midnight.'*** In fact this Scripture is used to say that this group kept the Passover on this particular Sunday. We however know that the Passover is a memorial of Messiah's death which is like any other memorial, kept once a year, on the 14th Aviv. In this case 'breaking of bread' did not mean the Passover, but simply the dividing of loaves of bread for a normal meal. This is confirmed in E.W. Bullinger, 'Figures of Speech Used in the Bible', pp.839 & 840. It is also proven in verse 11 of Acts 20, where we see that after Rav Shaul finished speaking, they broke the bread and ate. He continued talking until daybreak, when he departed. Breaking bread to eat as a meal is also mentioned in Acts 27: 35 and Luke 24: 30. In fact the timing of the events in Acts 20: 7 - 11, clarifies things; several events happened during this same night. We know according to both the Tanach and the Renewed Covenant that a day begins and ends at sunset. These events start with a meal on Saturday evening, after the Sabbath. Because Rav Shaul planned to go to another town the next day, he spoke deep into the night. A young man, who was sitting in a window sill, became tired and fell asleep, and consequently fell out of the window from the third floor. We see in verse 10, Rav Shaul healing the young man and returning to the meeting. In the morning, which was Sunday morning, Rav Shaul carried on with his journey.
- Because most of Churchianity observes Sunday as their day of rest and worship, many people believe Sunday to be the Sabbath. But, the fourth Commandment clearly states: ***"Remember the Sabbath day, to keep it holy (Set-apart). Six days you shall labor and do all your work, but the seventh day is the Sabbath of YHVH your Elohim; in it you shall not do any work, you or your son or your daughter, your male or your female servant or your cattle or your sojourner who stays with you. For in six days YHVH made the heavens and the earth, the sea and all that is in them, and rested on the seventh day; therefore YHVH blessed the Sabbath and made it holy."*** YHVH commanded that the seventh day be observed as the Sabbath.

Any good dictionary or encyclopedia will reveal that Saturday is the seventh day of the week, while Sunday is the first day of the week. We read from Genesis 1 how after YHVH created the earth, He populated it with flora and fauna to form a beautiful garden for mankind to live in. Even so, prior to creating these, Elohim

created the heavenly bodies and set them in motion to mark the passing of time, and to let them be for signs and for seasons, and for days and years. Right from the start YHVH appointed that a day be determined from one evening to the next evening. We read accordingly from Genesis 1: 4 & 5, ***'And Elohim saw that the light was good; and Elohim separated the light from darkness. (5) And Elohim called the light day, and the darkness He called night. And there was evening and there was morning, one day.'*** 'Evening' is mentioned first followed by 'morning'. In each of the next days that Elohim created, He describes each day's creation in similar terms, as may be seen in Genesis 1 verses 8, 13, 19, 23 and 31.

We also read about the creation of the original Sabbath in Genesis 2: 2 & 3, ***'And by the seventh day Elohim completed His work which He had done; and He rested on the seventh day from all His work which He had done. (3) Then Elohim blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, because in it He rested from all His work which Elohim had created and made.'*** The Sabbath day was different from all the other days of the week. Elohim blessed the Sabbath and sanctified it. As mentioned before, the word 'sanctify' simply means to set it apart or to make it 'holy'. In the portion of the Scriptures quoted above, we read three times that Elohim rested from all His work which He had created and made. The Sabbath follows immediately after the sixth day during which Adam was created. However, when does the Sabbath day begin and when does it end?

At this point it is important for us to determine if the rest of Scriptures agree with the view that the Sabbath starts in the evening after the sixth day of the week. Scriptures confirm that the evening began at sunset, as we read from Joshua 8: 29 and also as quoted from 2 Chronicles 18: 34, ***'And the battle raged that day, and the king of Israel propped himself up in his chariot in front of the Arameans until the evening; and at sunset he died.'***

The means of determining the beginning and ending of days are given in Leviticus 23: 27 & 32, as follows: ***"On exactly the tenth day of this seventh month is the Day of Atonement; it shall be a Set-apart convocation for you, and you shall humble your souls and present an offering by fire to YHVH. (32) It is to be a Sabbath of complete rest to you, and you shall humble your souls; on the ninth of the month at evening, from evening until evening you shall keep your Sabbath."*** This is also confirmed about the Sabbath in Nehemiah 13: 19, in this way: ***'And it came about just as it grew dark at the gates of Jerusalem before the Sabbath, I commanded that the doors should be shut and that they should not open them until after the Sabbath. Then I stationed some of my servants at the gates that no load should enter on the Sabbath day.'***

Even so, some might argue that both the above quotes come from the Tanach and can therefore not apply to 'New Testament' believers. Let's therefore consider an example from the Renewed Covenant, to clear up any misunderstanding. We see from reading Mark 1: 21 that Yahshua and His newly appointed disciples attended a synagogue on the Sabbath in Capernaum. We see further from verse 32 of Mark 1, the Sabbath coming to an end as the sun went down, as follows: ***'And when evening had come, after the sun had set, they began bringing to Him all who were ill and those who were demon-possessed.'*** After the sun had set, when the Sabbath officially came to an end, the people brought many sick individuals to Yahshua for healing. We have further witnesses in the four Gospels, where Joseph of Arimathea buried Yahshua before the evening, to keep from working on the first annual Sabbath or the First Day of Unleavened Bread. We quote here below three of the gospel accounts, bearing record of the events, as a second Renewed Covenant witness to the timing of the Sabbath, as follows:

- John 19: 31, ***'The Jews therefore, because it was the day of preparation, so that the bodies should not remain on the cross on the Sabbath (for that Sabbath was a high day), asked Pilate that their legs might be broken, and that they might be taken away.'***
- Matthew 27: 57 - 60, as follows: ***'And when it was evening, there came a rich man from Arimathea, named Joseph, who himself had also become a disciple of Yahshua. (58) This man went to Pilate and asked for the body of Yahshua. Then Pilate ordered it to be given over to him. (59) And Joseph took the body and wrapped it in a clean linen cloth, (60) and laid it in his own new tomb, which he had hewn out in the rock; and he rolled a large stone against the entrance of the tomb and went away.'***
- Both the above accounts agree with Luke's account in Luke 23: 50 - 54: ***'And behold, a man named Joseph, who was a member of the Council, a good and righteous man (51) (he had not consented to their plan and action), a man from Arimathea, a city of the Jews, who was waiting for the Kingdom of Elohim; (52) this man went to Pilate and asked for the body of Yahshua, (53) And he took it down and wrapped it in a linen cloth, and laid Him in a tomb cut into the rock, where no one had ever lain. (54) And it was the preparation day, and the Sabbath was about to begin.'***

We also see from Mark 16: 1 - 2 that Mark still referred to Saturday (the seventh day) as the Sabbath and not Sunday, after Yahshua's impalement: ***"And when the Sabbath was over, Mary Magdalene, and Mary the***

Mother of James, and Salome, bought spices, that they might come and anoint Him. And very early on the first day of the week (Sunday), they came to the tomb when the sun had risen.” Most of us know that Saturday is the Sabbath and not Sunday, which is already the first day of the next week. So there is no argument here. However, when does the Sabbath day begin and when does it end? Even though a day begins and ends at midnight, today, we now know that a day is determined from evening to evening according to the Scriptures.

However, to understand why Elohim decided to start a day at evening, we need to consider what happened before the creation of mankind. Isaiah 14 and Ezekiel 28 are two chapters in the Scriptures, which tell us about a time when Lucifer rebelled against Elohim, when he wanted to take over Elohim’s throne in the third heaven and when he was ultimately cast down to the earth (Isaiah 14: 12). The war that resulted between Satan’s angels and the angels still loyal to Elohim, because of Satan’s actions, left the earth formless and void. When YHVH then re-created the earth, He decided to create mankind from physical matter, meaning that other than with spiritual beings, we as flesh and blood humans, need rest to refresh ourselves. This is in fact confirmed by Yahshua in Mark 2: 27, as follows: **‘And He was saying to them, “The Sabbath was made for man, and not man for the Sabbath.”**” Yahshua explained the purpose of the Sabbath, which many have missed throughout the centuries: The Sabbath, is not forced upon us, but is made so that we may rest, as Elohim rested after the creation week. We saw from Genesis 2, that the Sabbath was sanctified on the seventh day after mankind was made on the sixth day of creation. Yahshua understood the Sabbath to be specifically of benefit to mankind and not burdensome as depicted by the religious leaders of His day. In addition some in other religions often argue that the Sabbath was made for Jews only. Even so, YHVH made it for all humanity, right from the start.

5.17 Has time been lost?

History records the faithful observance of the Sabbath by religious Jews without missing from one generation to the next. Even though we know from the Scriptures that the Sabbath is not only for Jews, the Orthodox Jews are a very good source for discovering which day is the seventh day from a historical perspective. The Orthodox Jews have been keeping the seventh day Sabbath from the time that YHVH gave it to them at Mount Sinai, until today. They have kept the Sabbath day, week after week until this very day.

Christians and those of us who came from Christianity are aware of at least one calendar change in the past that could affect the days that we are keeping today. Some assume that one cannot for certain say that the Sabbath remains on the seventh day. However, let us examine the evidence before we reach the wrong conclusion.

The fact of the matter is that there was only one calendar change to affect the dates as we know them today. This happened in October 1582. Pope Gregory XIII reformed the Julian calendar by **removing** 10 days. By this change he intended to synchronize the calendar with the seasons, planets and stars. The change affected only the **dates of the month and not the order of the days of the week.** Below is the method used in accomplishing this change, without any disruption to the weekly cycle:

October 1582

SUN	MON	TUES	WED	THUR	FRI	SAT
1	2	3	4	15	16	17
18	19	20	21	22	23	24
25	26	27	28	29	30	31

(From the book – “Seven Mysteries Solved” Volume 2)

After the calendar change by Pope Gregory XIII, Sunday was still followed by Monday, etc. The weekdays continued in progression in the same way, except for the fact that they received new names. The days of the week have always remained in the same order, with Sunday as the first day of the week and Saturday as the seventh.

The Oracles of Elohim are the divine instructions that were entrusted to the Israel that king David ruled, as we read from Psalm 147: 19 & 20, as follows: **“He (YHVH) declares His words to Jacob, His statutes and His ordinances to Israel. (20) He has not dealt thus with any nation; and as for His ordinances, they have not known them. HalleluYah!**” However, after Israel and Judah split into two separate nations, Israel was taken captive, after which they lost their identity, religion and language. Even though the same also happened to Judah, they returned home after 70 years and did not lose their identity, religion and language. They retained the Oracles of Elohim, as we are also told in Romans 3: 1 & 4. They preserved the knowledge of the Sabbath, the Set-apart Days, the Hebrew language as well as other commandments, including the kosher laws, since well before the time of Messiah until today.

We read about the faithfulness of both Moses and Yahshua from verses 1 - 6 of Hebrews 3. Continuing in verse 7 of Hebrews 3 we read that the failure of the first generation of Israelites, who left Egypt, should be a lesson for us not to follow their example. They failed because of unbelief and as a result they did not enter the Promised Land. In Hebrews 4 we are cautioned to faithfully obey the voice of Elohim, if we want to enter Elohim's rest or the Kingdom of Elohim, which will be ushered in by Yahshua at the commencement of the seventh millennium since the recreation of the earth. We see in Hebrews 4: 4 that Elohim rested on the seventh day of creation. Verse 7 quotes from Psalm 95: 7 where David spoke of a promise of rest long after Joshua led the second generation of Israel to rest in the Promised Land. This shows that the rest fulfilled at Joshua's time, was only a type of the rest to come. In verse 9 of Hebrews 4, we read: ***'There remains therefore a Sabbath rest for the people of Elohim.'*** At the simple (or 'sod') level, this means that we the people of Elohim are still required to observe the seventh day Sabbath, but at a deeper level, it is talking about the soon coming millennial rule of Yahshua our Messiah. In fact the weekly Sabbath is a shadow of the millennial rest or Sabbath to come. The book of Hebrews links the three ideas of rest together: the rest promised to Israel from their enemies; the weekly Sabbath; and the spiritual rest through Messiah. It concludes that Sabbath keeping is still required for us, the people of Elohim.

YHVH created the Sabbath for man and there will be a time, when all mankind will be keeping it, as we read from Isaiah 66: 23, ***"And it shall be from new moon to new moon And from Sabbath to Sabbath, All mankind will come to bow down before Me,"*** says YHVH. The Sabbath identifies us as the people of Elohim, even if we are not sure about our bloodline, as we read accordingly in Isaiah 56: 6 and the first part of verse 7: ***"Also the foreigners who join themselves to YHVH, To minister to Him and to love the name of YHVH, To be His servants, every one who keeps from profaning the Sabbath, And holds fast My covenant; Even those I will bring to My holy mountain (kingdom)."***

Finally we read in Jeremiah 33: 20 – 22: ***"Thus says YHVH, 'If you can break My covenant for the day, and my covenant for the night, so that day and night will not be at their appointed time. (21) then My covenant may also be broken with David My servant that he shall not have a son to reign on his throne (obviously talking about Messiah), and with the Levitical priests, My ministers. (22) As the host of heaven cannot be counted, and the sand of the sea cannot be measured, so I will multiply the descendants of David My servant and the Levites who minister to Me.'"***

We also see in The Scriptures that even a new month, i.e. the first day of any month starts the evening after the new moon (which is essentially a concealed moon). The moon is renewed immediately after the shadow of the earth, between the sun and the moon, covers the moon and commences towards renewal. If you compare a Gregorian calendar which shows the positions of the moon, with a Jewish calendar (obtainable from the local Orthodox Synagogue), you will notice that according to the Jewish calendar, the Rosh Chodesh or the New Month is always the next evening after the Gregorian calendar shows the New Moon - which is essentially a dark moon (a black dot) or no moon. Now if the first day of the month starts at evening, then surely all the other days of the month will also start at evening.

We see according to the Jewish calendar that Rosh Chodesh is one day during some months and two days during other months. This is totally in line with the Scriptures. In 1 Samuel 20 verse 5, 27 and 34 we read: ***'So David said to Jonathan, "Behold tomorrow is the new moon, and I ought to sit down to eat with the king, But let me go, that I may hide myself in the field until the third evening. (why the 3rd evening – because as we will see in the next quoted part, that the new moon lasted two days for that particular month)."*** ***'And it came about the next day, the second day of the new moon, that David's place was empty; so Saul said to Jonathan his son, "Why has the son of Jesse not come to the meal, either yesterday or today?" "Then Jonathan arose from the table in fierce anger, and did not eat food on the second day of the new moon, for he was grieved over David because his father had dishonored him.'***

The Scriptures tell us that we need two or three witnesses to prove a point. If this is not enough for those who believe differently, then nothing will satisfy them.

5.18 Is it important that we meet together on Sabbaths?

Many of the Nazarene Israelites, whom YHVH has called out of the religious groups of the world, do not easily fellowship with like-minded believers, because of the false teachings that they were exposed to in their previous religious affiliations. Knowing about the deception that is preached by the religions of the world, we cannot blame them.

YHVH is presently calling comparatively few people out of the world, to become His ecclesia of called out believers. We read accordingly in Jeremiah 3: 14 & 15, ***'Return, O faithless sons,' declares YHVH; 'For I am a master to you, and I will take you one from a city and two from a family, and will bring you to Zion. (15) Then I will give you shepherds after My own heart, who will feed you on knowledge and***

understanding. We are therefore at this time few and far between, and cannot meet with fellow believers on a regular basis, due to considerable distances between believers. In addition we read in Amos 3: 3, **'Do two men walk together unless they have made an appointment?'** This is essentially saying that we cannot walk together with people who keep the appointed times at different times to us.

However, there are specific instructions for the sons of Israel about our worship of YHVH given in Leviticus 23. It is in Leviticus 23 that we read about the seven annual Set-apart Days of Elohim, as well as about the weekly Sabbath. We read in verses 1 & 2 of Leviticus 23, **'YHVH spoke again to Moses saying, "Speak to the sons of Israel, and say to them, "(YHVH)'s appointed times which you shall proclaim as holy (or Set-apart) convocations- My appointed times are these."** The question at this point is: What is meant by 'a Set-apart convocation?' The 'Concise Oxford Dictionary' states that a convocation is the calling together; or assembly; or summon to assemble. In other words YHVH is telling the children of Israel in Leviticus 23, when to assemble together for His appointed times. It was very easy in ancient times, when Israel had a Temple in Jerusalem, to know both when and where the children of Israel assembled for the Set-apart convocations of YHVH.

There is a group of like-minded believers in Jerusalem, who insists that we should keep all of the Feast Days of Elohim in Jerusalem. The irony is that this group does not keep the Feast Days according to the Hebrew calendar, kept by the Jews in Israel. Whilst there was a Temple, the assertion that Jerusalem was the city where YHVH placed his name was undoubtedly true. For instance we read in 2 Chronicles 7: 11 & 12, **'Thus Solomon finished the house of YHVH and the king's palace, and successfully completed all that he had planned on doing in the house of YHVH and in his palace. (12) Then YHVH appeared to Solomon at night and said to him, "I have heard your prayer, and have chosen this place for Myself as a house of sacrifice.'** During the existence of the Temple in Jerusalem, all of Israel got together on Elohim's weekly and annual Sabbaths to keep these Set-apart convocations in the house of Elohim in Jerusalem – where He placed His name. We read further regarding the temple that Solomon built in 2 Chronicles 6: 1 - 6, as follows: **'Then Solomon said, "YHVH has said that He would dwell in the thick cloud. (2) I have built Thee a lofty house, and a place for Thy dwelling forever." (3) Then the king faced about and blessed all the assembly of Israel, while all the assembly of Israel was standing. (4) And he said, "Blessed be YHVH, the Elohim of Israel, who spoke with His mouth to my father David and has fulfilled it with His hands, saying, (5) 'Since the day that I brought My people from the land of Egypt, I did not choose a city out of all the tribes of Israel in which to build a house that My name might be there, nor did I choose any man for a leader over My people Israel; (6) but I have chosen Jerusalem that My name might be there, and I have chosen David to be over My people Israel.'**

We also know that during the Millennium rule of Yahshua, that YHVH will again choose Jerusalem, as we are told in Zechariah 2: 11 & 12, **"And many nations will join themselves to YHVH in that day and will become My people. Then I will dwell in your midst, and you will know that YHVH of hosts has sent Me to you. (12) And YHVH will possess Judah as His portion in the holy land, and will again choose Jerusalem."** We also read in Zechariah 6: 11 – 13, that Yahshua shall build the Temple during the millennium and will perform the office of King and High Priest, as follows: **"And take silver and gold, make an ornate crown, and set it on the head of Joshua the son of Jehozadak, the high priest. (12) Then say to him, 'Thus says YHVH of hosts, "Behold, a man whose name is Branch (The transliterated Hebrew word for branch is Notsrim which is Nazarene in English), for He will branch out from where He is; and He will build the temple of YHVH. (13) Yes, it is He who will build the temple of YHVH, and He who will bear the honor and sits and rule on His throne. Thus, He will be a priest on His throne, and the counsel of peace will be between the two offices."**

However, in John 4: 19 & 20 we read about the well-known discussion between Yahshua and the Samaritan woman at the well, in this way: **'The woman said to Him, "Sir, I perceive that You are a prophet. (20) Our fathers worshiped in this mountain, and you people say that in Jerusalem is the place where men ought to worship."** We read Yahshua's answer in verses 21 – 24 of John 4, as follows: **"Woman, believe Me, an hour is coming when neither in this mountain, nor in Jerusalem, shall you worship the Father. (22) You worship that which you do not know; we worship that which we know, for salvation is from the Jews. (23) But an hour is coming, and now is, when the true worshipers shall worship the Father in spirit and truth; for such people the Father seeks to be His worshipers. (24) Elohim is spirit, and those who worship Him must worship in spirit and truth."** Yahshua was in fact alluding to the year 70 CE, when the Temple will be destroyed by Rome, and when it will no longer be possible to worship Elohim, in Jerusalem. Yahshua was in effect saying that after the destruction of the Temple, we should not stop to worship Him, but the only proviso being that we should worship YHVH in spirit and in truth.

When Yahshua chased the moneychangers out of the Temple and overturned their tables, we read from John 2: 17, that **'His disciples remembered that it was written, "ZEAL FOR THY HOUSE WILL CONSUME ME."** In verse 18 of John 2, the Jews answered and said to Him, **"What sign do You show to us, seeing**

that You do these things?” In verse 19 of John 2, Yahshua referred to His body as being a Temple when **‘Yahshua answered and said to them, “Destroy this temple and in three days I will raise it up.”**” In the next verse we see that even though the Jews mistakenly thought that He was talking about the temple in Jerusalem, He was actually speaking of His body. We read in 1 Corinthians 6: 19 & 20 that our bodies are likewise the temple of the Set-apart Spirit: **‘Or do you not know that your body is a temple of the Set-apart Spirit who is in you, whom you have from Elohim, and that you are not your own? For you have been bought with a price; therefore glorify Elohim in your body.’** We need to worship YHVH in spirit and in truth in our bodies.

What does it mean to worship YHVH in spirit and in truth? To begin with, it means that we do not worship our Father for show, that is, to be seen by people. In Matthew 6, Yahshua gave His disciples a pattern for their prayers, saying in verses 5 & 6: **‘And when you pray, you are not to be as hypocrites; for they love to stand and pray in the synagogues and on street corners, in order to be seen by men. Truly I say to you, they have their reward in full. (6) But you, when you pray, go into your inner room, and when you have shut your door, pray to your Father who is in secret, and your Father who sees in secret will repay you.’** Yahshua said that we should not pray only to be heard by others, so that they are impressed by our ‘righteousness.’ Rather, we should pray because we really want to talk to YHVH, and that is actually done in private.

Let’s consider what truth is: We read Yahshua’s explanation of truth in John 17: 17, as follows: **“Sanctify them in the truth; Thy word is truth.”** Yahshua is the Word of Elohim made flesh (as per John 1: 1 – 3, & 14) or put differently, He is the embodiment of Torah. The word of Elohim is truth. Is this true for us as well? Or are there sections in the Word of Elohim, such as the writings of Rav Shaul, which we consider to be false? When Yahshua was tempted in the wilderness by Satan, He sharply rebuked the devil in Matthew 4: 10, saying: **“Begone, Satan! For it is written, ‘YOU SHALL WORSHIP YHVH YOUR ELOHIM, AND SERVE HIM ONLY.’”** Rav Shaul equated his worship of Elohim in Acts 24: 14, in this way: **“But this I admit to you, that according to the Way which they call a sect (‘the sect of the Nazarenes’- see Acts 24: 5) I do serve the Elohim of our fathers, believing everything that is in accordance with the Law, and that is written in the Prophets.”** We know that at that time he was referring to the Tanach, but also know that the word of Elohim is the entire Scriptures from Genesis to Revelation.

YHVH wants us to worship Him in truth and we do so by honoring Him, serving Him and obeying His instructions given in The Scriptures. We continue to read about Yahshua’s temptation by Satan In Matthew 4: 4, where He said to him: **“It is written, ‘MAN SHALL NOT LIVE ON BREAD ALONE, BUT ON EVERY WORD THAT PROCEEDS OUT OF THE MOUTH OF ELOHIM.’”** The way we worship YHVH our Elohim, should be reflected in the way we live our daily lives. Our relationship with YHVH is a way of life. We read an example of how to live in Acts 18: 25 & 26, as follows: **‘This man had been instructed in the way of YHVH; and being fervent in spirit, he was speaking and teaching accurately the things concerning Yahshua, being acquainted only with the immersion of John; (26) and he began to speak out boldly in the synagogue. But when Priscilla and Aquila heard him, they took him aside and explained to him the way of Elohim more accurately.’** Worshipping YHVH is a way of thinking, acting and living. It affects every aspect of our lives.

Even though the Temple in Jerusalem has been destroyed 40 years after Yahshua’s death and resurrection, as He prophesied, YHVH still requires us to get together to worship Him. Yahshua had to die for the Set-apart Spirit to come and guide us into all truth. We read accordingly in John 16: 7 – 13, **‘But I tell you the truth, it is to your advantage that I go away; for if I do not go away, the Helper shall not come to you; but if I go, I will send Him to you. (8) And He, when He comes, will convict the world concerning sin, and righteousness, and judgment; (9) concerning sin, because they do not believe in Me; (10) and concerning righteousness, because I go to the Father, and you no longer behold Me; (11) and concerning judgment, because the ruler of this world has been judged. (12) I have many more things to say to you, but you cannot bear them now. (13) But when He, the Spirit of truth, comes, He will guide you into all the truth; for He will not speak on His own initiative, but whatever He hears, He will speak; and He will disclose to you what is to come. (14) He shall glorify Me; for He shall take of Mine, and shall disclose it to you.’**

Yahshua’s disciples stayed around in Jerusalem, after His resurrection and ascension, and were gathered together on the day of Pentecost, in one accord. They were observing the Feast of weeks, when the outpouring of the Set-apart Spirit occurred. If they did not observe the Feast of Weeks in Jerusalem, according to the correct calendar, they would not have received the Set-apart Spirit. We read according to Ephesians 1: 7 -14 , that YHVH gives His Set-apart Spirit to those whom He calls to become first-fruits and are immersed at this time, as follows: **‘In Him we have redemption through His blood, the forgiveness of our trespasses, according to the riches of His grace, (8) which He lavished upon us. In all wisdom and insight. (9) He made known to us the mystery of His will, according to His kind intention which He**

purposed in Him (10) *with a view to an administration suitable to the fullness of the times, that is, the summing up of all things in Messiah, things in the heavens and things upon the earth. In Him (11) also we have obtained an inheritance, having been predestined according to His purpose who works all things after the counsel of His will, (12) to the end that we who were the first to hope in Messiah should be to the praise of His glory. (13) In Him, you also, after listening to the message of truth, the gospel of your salvation- having also believed, you were sealed in Him with the Set-apart Spirit of promise, (14) who is given as a pledge of our inheritance, with a view to the redemption of Elohim's own possession, to the praise of His glory.'*

We read in Deuteronomy 12: 17 that we are not allowed to eat our Festival tithe within our gates, as follows: ***"You are not allowed to eat within your gates the tithe of your grain, or new wine, or oil, or the first-born of your herd or flock, or any of your votive offerings which you vow, or your freewill offerings, or the contribution of your hand."*** Since the destruction of the temple in Jerusalem, we need to save the festival tithe during the year and then go to a place, where those teaching, finds a suitable place to keep the annual festivals of Elohim, as per the instruction in Deuteronomy 16: 16, ***'Three times in a year all your males shall appear before YHVH in the place which He chooses, at the Feast of Unleavened Bread and at the Feast of Weeks and at the Feast of Booths, and they shall not appear before YHVH empty handed.'*** We are required during the three festival periods given here, to take time away from our worldly activities, to help us to focus on our main goal, i.e. to seek first the Kingdom of Elohim.

It is impossible for us to meet with those who have a different set-apart day calendar, but we need to meet with like-minded believers and discuss beliefs where we differ only slightly, as we read from Proverbs 27: 17, ***'Iron sharpens iron, So one man sharpens another.'*** Many are often concerned with the location of the place of safety, where YHVH will one day protect us during the Great Tribulation that is soon coming upon the earth. We have two Scriptural witnesses implying that we will possibly be protected at the Feast of Tabernacles, during this time of trouble, as we read in Psalm 27: 5, as follows: ***'For in the day of trouble He will conceal me in His tabernacle; in the secret place of His tent He will hide me; He will lift me up on a rock.'*** The second witness is found in Isaiah 26: 19 – 21, in this way: ***'Your dead will live; Their corpses will rise. You will lie in the dust, awake and shout for joy, for your dew is as the dew of the dawn. And the earth will give birth to the departed spirits*** (this is talking about the first resurrection at the Feast of Trumpets). (20) ***Come, my people, enter into your rooms, and close your doors behind you; hide for a little while, until indignation runs its course. (21) For behold, YHVH is about to come from His place to punish the inhabitants of the earth for their iniquity; and the earth will reveal her bloodshed, and will no longer cover her slain.'*** We know that our Master will one day return on Yom Teruah, otherwise known as the Feast of Trumpets, when the dead in Messiah will be resurrected, after which Satan will be bound for a thousand years (on Yom Kippur). Then we will enter the millennium rule of Yahshua our Messiah, depicted by the Feast of Tabernacles.

We conclude by reading Rav Shaul's admonition regarding coming together for the Feast Days of Elohim from Hebrew 10: 23 – 25, in this way: ***'Let us hold fast the confession of our hope without wavering, for He who promised is faithful; (24) and let us consider how to stimulate one another to love and good deeds, (25) not forsaking our own assembling together, as is the habit of some, but encouraging one another; and all the more, as you see the day drawing near.'*** If nothing else, let's plan to have the next Feast of Tabernacles, together – in preparation for the time when we will do it with Yahshua in Jerusalem.

5.19 Why don't all understand Elohim's plan of salvation for mankind?

The reason why Christianity and others do not understand Elohim's plan of salvation for all mankind, is because they believe the Sabbath's and Feast Days of Elohim to be only a shadow of things to come, based on incorrectly interpreting Colossians 2: 16.. They incorrectly believe that Yahshua nailed the Torah, including the Set-apart Days of YHVH to the cross, because of their understanding of Colossians 2: 14. However, Yahshua clearly said in Matthew 5: 17 & 18: ***"Do not think that I came to abolish the Law or the Prophets; I did not come to abolish, but to fulfill. (18) For truly I say to you, until heaven and earth pass away, not the smallest letter or stroke shall pass away, from the Law, until all is accomplished."***

Nonetheless, to understand this misconception better, we need to be familiar with the following two scriptural concepts:

1. **A type:** The sacrificial laws were types and after Yahshua became the sacrifice for our sins, there was no longer a need for this type. Yahshua introduced new emblems when He kept the Passover 24 hours before our Jewish brothers of His day did, as is recorded for us in 1 Corinthians 11: 23 – 25, like this: ***'For I received from the Master that which I also delivered to you, that the Master Yahshua in the night in which He was betrayed took bread; (24) and when He had given thanks, He broke it, and said, "This is My body, which is for you; do this in remembrance of Me."*** (25) *In the same way He took*

the cup also after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in My blood; do this, as often as you drink it, in remembrance of Me." Since Yahshua fulfilled the Sacrificial Law, by becoming the sacrifice, there is no longer a need to sacrifice animals, each time we sin (transgress the Torah). However, we keep the Passover with unleavened bread representing Yahshua's body, pierced through for our transgressions and with the wine representing His blood, which was shed for the forgiveness of the sins of the world. We are reconciled by His blood and are healed (physically) by his wounds.

2. **A shadow:** A shadow points to the reality, but does not do away with it. Elohim's Feast Days are shadows of things to come according to Colossians 2: 17. These Feasts Days are introduced by YHVH in Leviticus 23 and relates His plan of salvation for all humankind, to us. We keep these Feast Days yearly to rehearse Elohim's plan of Salvation, so that we as first fruits will be able to teach the same as well as the rest of Torah to our siblings during Yahshua's millennium rule.

There are also a few additional keys that the believer needs to assist him/her to better understand the Scriptures. The Scriptures is our manual on how to serve YHVH our Elohim, and how to live peacefully with fellow human beings. Even though The Scriptures is one of the most popular books in the western world, it is also the world's most misunderstood book. The reason for this is that Satan and his agents are continually working to blind the minds of unbelievers to the truth, as we read in 2 Corinthians 4: 3 & 4, **'And even if our gospel is veiled, it is veiled to those who are perishing, (4) in whose case the god of this world (Satan) has blinded the minds of the unbelieving, that they might not see the light of the gospel of the glory of Messiah, who is the image of Elohim.'** Let's therefore consider five of the most important keys to help us better understand the word of Elohim, as follows:

1. **What is the true gospel?** Christianity teaches that John 3: 16, the message about the person of Messiah, is the true gospel: It reads: **"For Elohim so loved the world that He gave His only begotten Son that whoever believes in Him should not perish, but have eternal life."** This indeed is part of the Good News, but there is much more to it. For example, the crux of this verse is summed up in the words: **'that whoever believes in Him (Yahshua) should not perish.'**

What does it mean to believe in Yahshua? The answer is two-fold, namely:

- a. That we should believe in what Yahshua said (taught) whilst He was on earth; and
- b. That we should believe in His Name. The name Yahshua, in Hebrew means that He is the Salvation of YHVH, as it clearly says in Matthew 1: 21, **"And she will bear a Son; and you shall call His name Yahshua, for it is He who will save His people from their sins."** Note: There is wordplay in the underlined section and the meaning of His name. The name Jesus does not convey this meaning at all.

What did Yahshua teach whilst He was here on earth? We read the true gospel as taught by Yahshua in Mark 1:14 – 15, as follows: **'And after John had been taken into custody, Yahshua came into Galilee, preaching the gospel of Elohim, and saying "The time is fulfilled, and the Kingdom of Elohim is at hand; repent and believe in the gospel."** The message that Yahshua taught was the good news about the coming Kingdom of Elohim. We live in a dying world due to global warming, oil depletion, natural and manmade disasters and Yahshua brought us a message about a New World with a better future for all. The Good News about the glorious future of mankind has been Elohim's plan from the beginning. It was proclaimed by King David, when he wrote about the Kingdom of Elohim in Psalm 145: 10 – 13 as follows: **"All Thy works shall give thanks to Thee, O YHVH, And Thy godly ones (faithful believers) shall bless Thee. They shall speak of the glory (esteem) of Thy Kingdom And talk of Thy power; To make known to the sons of men Thy mighty acts, And the glory of the majesty of thy kingdom. Thy Kingdom is an everlasting kingdom, And Thy dominion endures throughout all generations."**

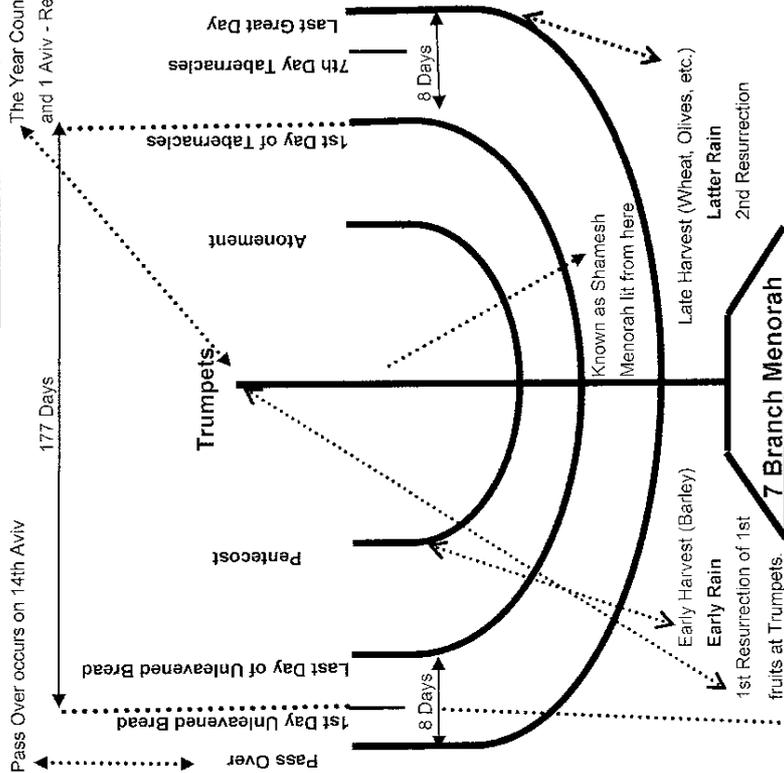
2. **The identity of Israel:** Very few people realize that the ancient nation of Israel was divided into two separate nations. The kingdom of Israel comprising 10 of the original 12 tribe nation of Israel, were taken captive by the Assyrians and later scattered into mainly the western nations of the world. They became known as the lost ten tribes of Israel, since they lost their language, faith and identity. The other two tribes formed the kingdom of Judah, and even though they were also taken captive; they retained their language, culture and faith in the one true Elohim. Some of the two tribes making up the kingdom of Judah were later resettled in their homeland. But most importantly, today more than 62 years ago, their descendants who were also eventually dispersed throughout the world, started resettling in the land which is today known as Israel. In addition few realize that a major portion of the prophecies given in the Scriptures about Israel and Judah, were given for our people at this time. They speak about world conditions of today, and could not be understood until now. As explained earlier in this chapter, the Israelite seed of Abraham were European colonist from the seventeenth through twentieth centuries. They made major investments in the areas that they colonized and these

investments benefited all parties – which is part of the blessing of Abraham, with which all the nations whom Israel came in contact with, were blessed. Even so, every prophecy in the Scriptures showing where our people (Israel) will be, just prior to the second coming of Messiah pictures them in captivity and slavery once again. Prophecies show how the punishment upon the western nations and in particular the USA and Britain, is beginning to escalate. The result will be corrected people. The punishment will teach us and break our spirit of rebellion against Elohim and His word. Punishment implies correction, which results in repentance. We need to understand that even though our nations as a whole are to be punished; those of us yielding at this time to accept Elohim's correction without punishment shall be protected, if we return Him to in obedience.

3. **Elohim's Set-apart Days:** These Set-apart days of Elohim, reveals His plan of salvation for all mankind. Each one of the seven annual Set-apart Days that YHVH commanded us to keep, pictures a step in the process of Elohim's plan of salvation for all mankind.
4. **The Sabbath Day** – The Sabbath command given in Exodus 20, is considered the test command. This is the command that Christianity and other religions refuse to obey. Obeying the Sabbath commandment often results in great tests of faith, requiring us to rely fully on Elohim. But obedience to this command also brings great blessings, to those observing it. The main reason for obeying the Sabbath and the other commandments are as we read in Psalm 111: 10, as follows: ***'The fear of YHVH is the beginning of wisdom; a good understanding have all those who do His commandments; His praise endures forever.'***
5. **Duality Principle in The Scriptures** - there is a duality which runs throughout the Scriptures and the plan that YHVH is working out on the earth. We read in 1 Corinthians 15: 45, ***'So also it is written, "The first man, Adam, became a living soul." The last Adam became a life-giving spirit.'*** Similarly there was the original Covenant which was physical and temporal. Then there is the Renewed Covenant which is spiritual and eternal. YHVH also made man mortal from the dust of the ground and of the human kind; but through Messiah we may be begotten immortal, spiritual and of the Elohim kind. As mentioned in the first chapter there are also two phases to the promises that YHVH made with Abraham; a promise of race and a promise of grace.

Also view the diagram entitled: 'The Genius of the Hebrew calendar', for additional information on the next page.

The Genius of the Hebrew Calendar - Agricultural Based Calendar



Pass Over occurs on 14th Aviv

177 Days

Pass Over

New Moon - concealed - plus/minus 2 days (See 1 Sam. 20:5, 27 & 34). The new moon is only 'watched' to determine

Trumpets and Atonement.

If Atonement will be on a Friday or a Sunday, Trumpets is moved one day on, ensuring that Atonement is never on a Friday or a Sunday.

If Passover or the is Day of Unleavened Bread will be before 22 march (the equinox), it is moved on, then the previous year becomes a leap year with 13 months

Traditions: (All Scriptures paraphrased)

1.) 1 Cor. 11: 1 & 2 Follow me (Paul) as I follow Messiah. Hold firmly to the traditions, just as I delivered them to you.

2.) 2 Thess. 3:6 Withdraw from every brother who walks disorderly and not according to the traditions which you received from us.

3.) 2 Thess. 2: 15 Hold the traditions you were taught.

4.) Acts 28:17b Practices or traditions of the Fathers.

Oracles: (All Scriptures paraphrased)

1.) Romans 3: 1-2; Romans 9:4; and Psalm 147: 19 & 20. The Oracles were given to the Jews (and the Israel that King David ruled - however the lost tribes of Israel have lost their identity, due to non-keeping of Sabbaths).

2.) Matt. 23: 2-3 Pharisees sit in Moses' seat.

3.) John 4: 22 Salvation is of the Jews.

4.) Genesis 49: 10 Ruler ship will remain with Judah, until Yahshua will come to rule. The first advent was to bring Salvation to all mankind and to die - to be able to marry His bride - United Israel.

5.) Mai 2: 1-8 Our Priests (Lost tribes of Israel's) have turned from the way and have caused many to stumble in Torah - You have corrupted the Covenant of Levi says YHVH of Hosts.

6.) Isaiah 47: 13 You are exhausted by your many counsels - those who predict by the new moon - let them save you.

7.) Final Proof - Zech 12:10 -14 Yahshua returns on Yom Teruah and He finds our Jewish brothers in the synagogue - men on one side on their own and woman on the other side on their own.

8.) Both Isaiah 52:7 and Nahum 1:15 tell us, "How beautiful on the mountains are the feet of him who brings good news (the Gospel), announcing peace, proclaiming news of salvation."

What is that "peace" in Hebrew "Shalom" does not just mean peace with YHVH. It also includes the idea of national unity (again, the reunification of both houses of Israel). Nahum 1:15 also adds, "O Judah, preserve the feasts!" Only this way could the Gospel retain its proper focus. So it is tied closely to (YHVH)'s appointed times (Lev. 23), for they teach us a multitude of details about what Yahshua came (and will come again) to accomplish.

9.) In Rom. 10:15 the same verse from Isaiah 52 is quoted, stating that they (the Jews) did not heed the Good News and in verse 19 we read a statement by Moses quoted from Deut.32: 21 "I will make you jealous by that which is not a nation...." This tells us that we, who are not an identifiable nation - the lost tribes, should make our Jewish brothers jealous. How, else will we make them jealous, but by keeping our Father's Set-apart days, as they do.

19 Year Time Cycle - to reconcile Hebrew Calendar with Calendar in use today.

365,2422 Days times 19 (Solar year) = 6939,6018 Days

29,530589 x 12 (Lunar Year) = 4252,4048 Days

29,530589 x 13 (Leap Lunar Year) = 2687,2836 Days

6939,6884 Days

Reasons for postponements: 1.) Atonement cannot be on a Friday or a Sunday, as there should be

a day of preparation before a Sabbath as well as on Atonement.

2.) The Last Day of Tabernacles cannot be on a Sabbath.

The Jewish Calendar is further aligned to the Gregorian Calendar in use in the

western world today, by means of the postponements to allow for preparation days.

19 years ago the Feast of Tabernacles started on the evening of 23/09/1991 and the Last Great Day was on 30/09/1991. The Feast of Tabernacles is on these exact same dates in the year 2010.

Chapter 6 - How long are we going to condone paganism?

Never has there been so urgent a need to proclaim the Kingdom of Elohim to a dying world, as there is today. Paganism under the guise of other religions is on the increase throughout the world. All the Christian churches of today are celebrating Easter believing that it is scripturally correct. They believe that since the word 'Easter' appears once in the King James Version of the Scriptures it validates the keeping of Easter instead of Passover. However, we see from the context in verse 3 of Acts 12, that where the word 'Easter' is used in Acts 12: 4 (KJV), it is actually talking about the Passover kept by Nazarene Israelites and Jews during the season of Unleavened Bread. This may also be confirmed by checking other translations of the Scriptures, like the 'New American Standard Bible' which is used and quoted throughout this book.

Easter is a celebration instituted by the Council of Nicaea: Under guidance of Constantine the Great, the Council of Nicaea decided to reject the Scriptural method of determining the correct date for the Passover, in favor of Easter Sunday. Even though we know that the celebration of birthdays is not Scriptural, nobody in their right mind would keep his/her birthday on the same day of the week every year. If you are one who celebrates your birthday and you were born on Friday the 3rd of June, you would not observe your birthday on the first Friday in June every year, but on the 3rd of June, which could be on any day of the week. If you think that this is a no-brainer, then you are in for a surprise, since this is exactly how Easter Sunday was instituted by the Roman Church. In fact Easter had a pre-Christian origin. It was a festival in honor of Eostre, a Teutonic springtime goddess of fertility. In other words, it was another form of Sun-worship. This goddess has many names and is the same as the Assyrian goddess named Istar. In classical mythology Istar was a romantic passionate goddess and any good reference book will testify to the fact that fertility symbols such as Easter eggs and the Easter bunny, originated with Istar. She is also known as the queen of heaven.

Not only was the time of the Scriptural feast of the Passover replaced by the pagan day's date, but the rites of the pagan Easter festival took over, namely the fertility pagan symbols of Easter eggs, the Easter bunny and hot-cross buns. The fact that this celebration has its roots in paganism is shrugged off, by most professing Christians, without delay. They continue to teach their children and grandchildren year after year to venerate an egg laying rabbit, known as the Easter bunny. Do you want to tell me that right minded people believe that rabbits lay eggs?

We are warned in Jeremiah 7: 18 about making hot-cross buns, as follows: ***"The children gather wood and the fathers kindle the fire, and the women knead the dough to make cakes for the queen of heaven; and they pour out libations to other gods in order to spite Me."*** A second witness to this is found in Jeremiah 44: 19, as follows: ***"And," said the woman, "when we were burning sacrifices to the queen of heaven, and were pouring out libations to her, was it without our husbands that we made for her sacrificial cakes in her image and poured out libations to her?"*** We are also warned about services such as 'Lent' and the 'Easter sunrise services' that Christians keep every year as in Ezekiel 8: 14 – 16: ***'Then He brought me to the inner court of Elohim's house which was toward the north; and behold, woman were sitting there weeping for Tammuz (similar to the forty days of Lent between Ash Wednesday and 'Good Friday', kept by Roman Catholics). (15) 'And He said to me, "Do you see this, son of man? Yet you will see still greater abominations than these." (16) Then He brought me into the inner court of Elohim's house. And behold, at the entrance to the temple of YHVH, between the porch and the altar, were about twenty-five men with their backs to the temple of YHVH and their faces toward the east; and they were prostrating themselves eastward toward the sun.'***

6.1 What about Xmas?

Each year as the Xmas season approaches, newspapers are full of historical facts showing how the customs surrounding this season all comes from paganism. Most biblical scholars agree that the Messiah was not born anywhere near the 25th of December. However, when this is pointed out to believers, they insist that it does not really matter when Yahshua was born, as long as they keep a day in memory of His birth. Even so, the most obvious mistake in the so-called nativity scene: where there is a manger, with Mary standing next to the baby; Joseph standing nearby and a small distance away a few shepherds with their sheep. Outside three people dressed in royal garments approach, carrying gifts with a bright star shining overhead. However, we see from Matthew 2: 1, that it simply says that magi (May-ji: meaning Rabbis learned in the Scriptures, astronomy, medicine and natural science) arrived in Jerusalem, from the East. Note it does not say how many arrived; it could have been ten or twenty, but most people assume that there were three, because they brought three specified gifts, namely gold, frankincense and myrrh. According to Matthew 2: 11, they came into the house and saw the Child with Mary His mother. Yes, by the time the magi arrived, the child was no longer in a manger, but in a house. In fact when the so-called wise men saw the star it was almost two years after Messiah's birth, as we are told in Matthew 2: 16 of Herod's killing of all male children of two years and below, in order to make sure that Yahshua is included in this decree.

We are not commanded to keep Yahshua's birthday anywhere in the Scriptures, instead, as with Jewish tradition; we are commanded to remember Yahshua's death once a year at the time of the Passover (as per 1 Corinthians 11: 23 – 26). How is it possible that these pagan ideas were brought into the Christian faith? It is vital to understand that the majority of Christian ministers and scholars have never seriously tried to follow the teachings of Yahshua our Messiah. As the Christian church developed into a world-wide organization, its leaders, in an effort to win over the pagan nations around them and to avoid persecution, tried to make their religion more acceptable to the pagan nations around them. As a result the original Nazarene faith, which was a sect of Judaism, was cast aside in favor of a counterfeit, paganized belief system. December the 25th became the supposed birth date of the 'Savior' in 354CE, when Liberius, a Bishop of Rome named it as such, as the Romans already observed it as a feast of Saturnalia. Saturnalia was a festival much like Xmas today; it involved much revelry, dancing, and feasting. Evergreen trees decorated homes, songs were sung in honor of Saturn and gifts were exchanged between friends.

Pagan worship is forbidden for us, as Nazarene Israelites who profess to be fully Torah observant, as we read from Deuteronomy 4: 12 – 19, ***“Then YHVH spoke to you from the midst of the fire; you heard the sound of words, but you saw no form – only a voice. (13) So He declared to you His covenant which He commanded you to perform, that is the Ten Commandments; and He wrote them on two tablets of stone. (14) And YHVH commanded me at that time to teach you statutes and judgments, that you might perform them in the land where you are going over to possess it. (15) So watch yourselves carefully, since you did not see any form on the day YHVH spoke to you at Horeb from the midst of the fire. (16) lest you act corruptly and make a graven image for yourselves in the form of any figure, the likeness of male or female, (17) the likeness of anything that creeps on the ground, the likeness of any fish that is in the water below the earth. (19) And beware, lest you lift up your eyes to heaven and see the sun and the moon and the stars, all the host of heaven, and be drawn away to worship them and serve them, those which YHVH your Elohim has allotted to all the peoples under the whole heaven.”***

We are warned in Deuteronomy 12: 29 – 31 not to follow the ways of the heathen, in this way: ***“When YHVH your Elohim cuts off before you the nations which you are going in to dispossess, and you dispossess them and dwell in their land, (30) beware that you are not ensnared to follow them, after they are destroyed before you, and that you do not inquire after their Elohim, saying, ‘How do these nations serve their Elohim, that I also may do likewise? (31) You shall not behave thus toward YHVH your Elohim, for every abominable act which YHVH hates they have done for their Elohim; for they even burn their sons and daughters in the fire to their Elohim.”*** YHVH warns us not to join unbelievers in their festivities and to come out of the confusion caused by the so-called religious celebrations of the world in 2 Corinthians 6: 14 – 17, ***‘Do not be bound together with unbelievers; for what partnership have righteousness and lawlessness, or what fellowship has light and darkness? (15) Or what harmony has Messiah with Belial, or what has a believer in common with an unbeliever? (16) Or what agreement has the temple of Elohim with idols? For we are the temple of the living Elohim; just as Elohim said, “I WILL DWELL IN THEM AND WALK AMONG THEM; AND I WILL BE THEIR ELOHIM. AND THEY SHALL BE MY PEOPLE. (17) THEREFORE, ‘come out from their midst and be separate,” Says YHVH. “AND DO NOT TOUCH WHAT IS UNCLEAN: And I will welcome you.’*** YHVH does not want us to mix true worship with idol worship. According to legends, Hercules, Bacchus, Tammuz, Buddha, Krishna and most other known sun-deities were born on December 25th.

We have created our own world of confusion, by not obeying our loving Father YHVH. It is time that we come out of that confusion, if we are serious about showing YHVH that we want to follow Him and be in His kingdom. YHVH is calling us to come out of the confusion of Babylon, as we read in Revelation 18: 4, ***‘And I heard another voice from heaven, saying, “Come out of her, my people, that you may not participate in her sins and that you may not receive of her plagues.”*** YHVH wants us to live in the world, but not be part of the systems of the world. He wants us to be a light to the people in the world. Yahshua lived in the world proclaiming the only real solution to the problems of the world – The coming Kingdom of Elohim. After six thousand years of man's rule on earth, the world as we know it is in real trouble and our problems are escalating on a daily basis, because of our pagan ways. People today need not be told that the world is on its way out, since most of those who are aware of their environment know that – it is so obvious. Our world today may be compared to the time of Noah. We read what Noah's time was like in Genesis 6: 5, as follows: ***‘Then YHVH saw that the wickedness of man was great on the earth, and that every intent of the thoughts of his heart was only evil continually.’*** Like at that time, we read stories in our newspapers of murder, rape, child abuse and leaders committing adultery and other crimes. This could be directly ascribed to us worshipping other elohim instead of YHVH.

Only the very naïve do not understand the signs of a dying world. YHVH created the earth especially for us. If we consider the evidence in the Scriptures and other records of creation, we can only conclude that what our Creator has invested in us far exceeds our understanding. This investment explains the value that YHVH places on us as potential sons of Elohim making it into His eternal Kingdom. This is why Yahshua explained in

Matthew 16: 26, ***“For what will a man be profited, if he gains the whole world, and forfeits his soul?”*** It is also for this reason that YHVH sent His Son to die for the redemption from the penalties of our sins. However, Yahshua did not only die on the execution stake to save us from the penalty of our sins, but that He might teach us about the Kingdom of Elohim, and how we may enter Elohim’s family for ever. After Yahshua’s resurrection and ascension to heaven, YHVH gave us His Set-apart Spirit, to teach us all things and to guide us into all truth. He wants us to know His plan of Salvation for all mankind. After immersion, we as begotten children of Elohim are obliged to seek the Truth. In doing so we will learn about Elohim’s plan of salvation for all mankind, by keeping the Feast Days of Elohim that all people are commanded to keep, instead of the pagan festivals that Christianity observes. This is all part of the plan of Elohim in preparing us for a position of responsibility in His everlasting Kingdom.

We all are aware of the fact that the fossilized fuels that YHVH placed at our disposal for use in the advanced technology that He inspired us to develop during the past hundred years, will only last for another 30 years or so. Think about it: Even in Satan’s rebellion, when the earth was totally destroyed, to the form we find it in Genesis 1: 2, i.e. formless and void, did the all knowing YHVH our Elohim, create fossilized fuels for use of mankind during the final few years, before Yahshua’s return to come and rule us, from Jerusalem. Friends, do you fully understand that He did all this for us. So why do we object when He who did all this for us, asks us to obey Him?

The entire subject of Easter; the way it emphasizes Sunday-keeping; its pagan symbols and rites, such as Easter sunrise services, the hiding of Easter eggs from little children is a lie most in Christianity are not prepared to change, since that is the only time they are prepared to spend on religion. Similarly is everything about Xmas a lie: the name, the time, the purpose and the so-called worship. The confusion of keeping a pagan festival like Xmas and singing false carols in celebration of the so-called birthday of Yahshua, is perpetuating the lie that people tell their children every year. Why not break the on-going cycle of lies and confusion and keep the real Feast Days commanded by our Father YHVH, instead. Why not start getting used to the things that we would do in the Olam Haba or world to come – eating only kosher and keeping Elohim’s festivals.

Most are too busy to study and learn about the pagan origins of the so-called ‘*holy days*’ that they keep. But, there is some good news for mankind; Yahshua is about to return to come and rule us from Jerusalem for a thousand years. That is the good news or gospel that Yahshua preached whilst he was on earth about 2000 years ago. We need to start preaching that same gospel – the only lasting solution to the problems in this world. The coming Kingdom of Elohim, will, like the flood in Noah’s days, bring an end to violence, murder, sickness and decay. When Yahshua our Messiah returns, He is going to change people; all the evil that Satan caused, will be stopped. Crime will be eradicated by divine force and people will be re-educated to know the Torah of Elohim and the benefits that can be enjoyed by keeping it.

During the millennium we will live in perfect harmony, according to the teachings/Torah of YHVH. Yahshua came to show us how to live, obeying the law with a Spiritual intent. The churches of the world do not know or preach the true gospel. They believe the true gospel to be about the life, death and resurrection of Yahshua (the one they refer to as Jesus). The fact that our Father loved the world so much that He gave His only begotten Son that whoever believes in Him should not perish, but have eternal life, is indeed very good news. However, few people know that that is not the true gospel. O yes, Yahshua came to be our Kinsman Redeemer and paid the penalty for the sins of the world, including ours. He died in our stead – however, we must never forget that He was resurrected from the grave, three days after His death. He returned to our Father in heaven, so that the Set-apart Spirit could come to help us live in this evil dying world, until Yahshua will return to come and rule the world for a thousand years.

The people in the world do not want Yahshua to return to rule us, they want their churches to fix the problems of the world, so that they may continue to worship G-d, the way the pagans worship their Mighty Ones, by keeping pagan holidays like Xmas, Easter and Sunday. However, that is definitely not what our Father wants. The warning given in Deuteronomy 12 is repeated in Jeremiah 10: 1 – 5, as follows: ***‘Hear the word which YHVH speaks to you, O house of Israel. (2) Thus says YHVH, “Do not learn the way of the nations (gentiles), And do not be terrified by the signs of the heavens Although the nations are terrified by them; (3) For the customs of the peoples are delusion; Because it is wood cut from the forest, The work of the hands of the craftsman with a cutting tool. (4) They decorate it with silver and with gold; they fasten it with nails and with hammers so that it will not totter. (5) Like a scarecrow in a cucumber field are they, and they cannot speak; they must be carried, because they cannot walk! Do not fear them, for they can do no harm, nor can they do any good.”*** This is definitely talking about Xmas and the tree normally associated with it. We need to understand that Xmas and Easter can never bring peace on earth; nor can any other pagan festival bring peace – so why continue celebrating these pagan festivals. In Mark 7: 7 & 8 we read: ***“But in vain do they worship Me, teaching as doctrines the precepts of men. (8) Neglecting the commandment of Elohim, you hold to the tradition of men.”***

Even with our best intentions we cannot and will not obey our Father. In Jeremiah 17: 9 we read: ***“The heart is more deceitful than all else and is desperately sick (wicked in the KJV); who can understand it?”*** By their disobedience to the commandments of YHVH in the Garden of Eden, our forefathers implied that they wanted to decide for themselves what is right and wrong. They did not want to listen to the teachings of Elohim – to know what is right and what is wrong. Our forefathers acted just like most teenage children of today. Whatever we as parents tell our children not to do that is exactly what they will do. Mankind does not want to be prescribed to as to what they should or should not do. Satan has deceived the whole world as it says in Revelation 12: 9. He wants us to be rebellious like he is, since he knows that his time is short and he continues to deceive mankind daily. It is only those who have been immersed in the name of Yahshua, who received a portion of the Set-apart Spirit of YHVH our Elohim, who will want to obey Him.

YHVH was concerned about us the nation of Israel, consisting of both the houses of Judah and Israel, since the time of Moses. He spoke about us eventually turning back to Him, like we are doing today. We read accordingly in Deuteronomy 30: 1 - 8, ***“So it shall be when all of these things have come upon you, the blessing and the curse which I have set before you (the curses happening to us during this age), and you call them to mind in all nations where YHVH your Elohim has banished you, (2) and you return to YHVH your Elohim and obey Him with all your heart and soul according to all that I command you today, you and your sons, (3) then YHVH your Elohim will restore you from captivity, and have compassion on you, and will gather you again from all the peoples where YHVH your Elohim has scattered you. (4) If your outcasts are at the ends of the earth, from there YHVH your Elohim will gather you, and from there He will bring you back. (5) And YHVH your Elohim will bring you into the land which your fathers possessed, and you shall possess it; and He will prosper you and multiply you more than your fathers. (6) Moreover YHVH your Elohim will circumcise your heart and the heart of your descendants, to love YHVH your Elohim with all your heart and with all your soul, in order that you may live. (7) And YHVH your Elohim will inflict all these curses on your enemies and on those who hate you, who persecuted you. (8) And you shall again obey YHVH, and observe all His commandments which I commanded you today.”***

We need to make an about turn. No sin is too small to overlook and no sin is too big to be repented of. We read in Matthew 4: 17, ***‘From that time Yahshua began to preach and say, “Repent, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand.”’*** Salvation is in obedience; we need to make sure that at this time our repentance is not a worldly sorrow, but a sorrow unto repentance as quoted here from verses 9 & 10 of 2 Corinthians 7: ***‘I now rejoice, not that you were made sorrowful, but that you were made sorrowful to the point of repentance; for you were made sorrowful according to the will of Elohim, in order that you might not suffer loss in anything through us. (10) For the sorrow that is according to the will of Elohim produces repentance without regret, leading to salvation; but the sorrow of the world produces death.’*** If we want to be the Israel of Elohim, we will have to be overcomers. However, repentance is a gift of YHVH and only a little flock will receive the Kingdom at this time.

Let us therefore, the called out ones determine to obey YHVH. Let us get out of the Babylon of confusion with their pagan practices, and let us proclaim the good news about the coming Kingdom of Elohim as a witness (not to convert them) to all nations, then the end of this age will come.

Chapter 7 - Clean and Unclean Foods.

Obedience to the Scriptural 'kosher' laws is considered to be an unusual practice by those outside the Jewish and Nazarene Israelite faiths. Christians in general will quote a passage or two in the Renewed Covenant in an effort to state that true believers are no longer obliged to keep the "Old Testament" laws.

However, ask yourself: How important are the clean food laws given in the Torah, to true worship? Are these laws only for our health, or are there more to them? Believe it or not, it was the breaking of a 'kosher' law that caused Adam and Eve to commit the original sin. YHVH endorses certain foods as acceptable and other foods as unacceptable for human consumption. It was that way at the creation of man and remains so even today. YHVH told our original parents which food was right and acceptable and which was not. It is only by obedience to Him, that we will succeed and prosper, i.e. it is for our good! We read in Malachi 3: 6 that neither He nor His standards ever change, as follows: ***"For I, YHVH, do not change; therefore you, O sons of Jacob are not consumed."***

The laws pertaining to clean and unclean animals, fish, birds, insects, and even dead creatures, are given in Leviticus 11 and Deuteronomy 14. As with the Ten Commandments, these 'kosher' laws were in operation long before they were repeated to Moses for use by the nation of Israel. We also see that they are still in force today, as Yahshua said that He did not come to abolish the law or the prophets in Matt 5: 17 & 18. Yahshua is the same yesterday, today and tomorrow, according to Heb.13: 8. He did not change His mind after His impalement. The only part of the law that He fulfilled, was doing away with the requirement to sacrifice the blood of animals every time we transgress the law. He laid down his life for His people and became a sacrifice for our past lawlessness. The law of clean and unclean food is still applicable. So are the laws prohibiting the eating of fat or blood, still in force today.

Consider for example edible plants; we read from Genesis 1:29, ***"Then Elohim said, "Behold I have given you every plant yielding seed that is on the surface of all the earth, and every tree which has fruit yielding seed; it shall be food for you.""*** Mushrooms as we know are fungi; definitely not green yielding seed; it may be full of parasites and therefore not fit for human consumption. All plants lacking either chlorophyll or seeds are therefore called into question.

Another example where we see the 'kosher' food laws in operation long before Mount Sinai is in Elohim's instructions to Noah. In Genesis 7: 2, YHVH told Noah that clean animals were to go into the ark by seven pairs, but that the unclean animals were limited to only one pair. Clearly Noah knew the difference between clean and unclean animals by then. Before the flood, mankind only ate plants, but in Genesis 9: 3 YHVH said to Noah: ***"Every moving thing that is alive shall be food for you (obviously only the clean animals already specified); I give all to you, as I gave the green plant."*** The laws of clean and unclean food are like the law of gravity and the moral laws; they were in effect since the creation of man. We may therefore not brush them aside with the argument that they were "Old Testament" laws given to the ancient nation of Israel only. Besides the health benefits to be enjoyed by not eating 'un-kosher' food, we need to be mindful of what is written in Deuteronomy 23: 14 ***"Since YHVH your Elohim walks in the midst of your camp to deliver you and to defeat your enemies before you, therefore your camp must be holy; and He must not see anything indecent among you lest He turn away from you."*** If we do not clean up our lives we cannot expect YHVH to be amongst us and protect us. Like with the Sabbath and the Set-apart Days of YHVH we should not compromise – as He does not!

Christian believers often remind us that we are living in the age of grace today. To them it means that their savior has done away with the strict laws of his father. But the question is: What is this 'grace' that they are talking about? We read about it from 1 Peter 1: 13 to 16, as follows: ***"Therefore, gird your minds for action, keep sober in spirit, fix your hope completely on the grace to be brought to you at the revelation of Yahshua Messiah. (14) As obedient children, do not be conformed to the former lusts which were yours in your ignorance, (15) but like the Holy (Set-apart) One who called you, be holy (set-apart) yourselves also in all your behavior; (16) because it is written, "YOU SHALL BE HOLY, FOR I AM HOLY."*** These last few words, printed in upper case, are a quote directly from Leviticus 11: 45, which deal with the Torah of clean and unclean meats. It is clear therefore, that even under 'grace'; the fact that Yahshua redeemed those of us who believe in Him, from the curse of the law (Galatians 3: 13), we are still required to keep the Law to receive the blessings of the Law, and to conform to Elohim's standard.

YHVH expects His present and future priests to make a difference between what is set-apart and what is not, and between what is clean and unclean, as we read from Leviticus 10: 10. Kosher laws help to maintain us as a set-apart people. Whereas, circumcision is a private matter, the kosher food laws make our faith a public matter. The English word 'kosher' comes from the Hebrew word (כשר) transliterated as 'Kashrut'. Most of the basic laws of kashrut are derived from the Torah books of Leviticus and Deuteronomy. The laws of kashrut are numerous and complex, but the main principles are as follows:

- Only meat from specific species is permissible.
- Mammals and fowls must be slaughtered in a specific way: slaughtering is done by a trained individual, using a special method of slaughtering, called shechita (see Deuteronomy 12: 23 & 24). The Shechita slaughterer known as a shochet severs the jugular vein, carotid artery, esophagus and trachea in a single continuous cutting movement, with a sharp un-serrated knife, essentially avoiding unnecessary pain to the animal. If one of these criteria is not attained, the meat is rendered unsuitable. Prior to slaughtering, the animal must be checked to ensure that it does not have a medical condition or defect that would have caused it to die within a year, which would make its meat un-suitable. The lungs of slaughtered animals should also be examined, to see that they are free of adhesions – so as to prevent the consumption of animals infected with tuberculosis. Sick and diseased animals are not clean. Animals which die naturally or are torn by beasts are also not fit for human consumption (see Leviticus 17: 15). In addition we are commanded not to eat a limb removed from a living beast as per Deuteronomy 12: 23.
- Blood must be removed as much as possible as per Leviticus 3: 17 and Leviticus 17: 10. This is done during the koshering process, by soaking and salting the meat.
- Meat and milk (or derivatives) cannot be mixed – i.e. meat and dairy products are not served at the same meal, or cooked together in a meal (Exodus 23: 19; 34: 26 & Deuteronomy 14: 21). There are many Nazarene/Messianic Israelites who insist that this does not apply to them, since it had to do with a forbidden pagan Canaanite fertility rite, which they do not practice, today. However, the Scriptures do not mention this pagan rite at all. In addition those who dispute this command quote Genesis 18: 8 where Abraham gave curds and milk together with the meat of a calf to his three visitors. Reading the entire chapter, reveal that the three visitors were two angels and YHVH himself. These were not human visitors who could harm their health by eating meat and milk products together, they were spirit beings. This is a health law which if contravened, will result in increasing cholesterol levels for human beings. Spirit beings do not need food and do not have digestive systems like ours. For example, whereas we read in Leviticus 3: 17 that we should not eat fat or blood, in verse 16 we read that **'all fat is Elohim's.'** The command not to boil a kid in its mother's milk appears three times in the Scriptures for a good reason. Disobeying it could result in a cholesterol problem, but also as in the case of Adam and Eve, it shows that we are disobedient to YHVH our Elohim. Do we try and reason away certain Torah commands? Do we have a smorgasbord religion where we may pick and choose which Torah commands we want to obey and which ones not?
- The sinew of the hip which is in the socket of the thigh of an animal must be removed and cannot be eaten (see Genesis 32: 32). We read in Genesis 32: 22 – 30 where Jacob's name was changed, after a wrestling match with the angel of YHVH, or rather YHVH Himself as is confirmed in Hosea 12: 3 – 5. Jacob understood that he was dealing with more than a human being and struggled to get a blessing from this Superior being. Before sunset the next morning he was blessed and praised for his determination. Jacob was determined to strive with all his might not to lose Elohim's blessing and eternal promises. His determination was greater than that of Esau, when he sold his birthright for a bowl of stew. He proved that he had strength of character to overcome his spiritual problems. The wrestling match was a test of character. Before Jacob's wrestling partner left, He told Jacob that his name would be changed from Jacob to **Israel**, which means one who overcomes. Elohim would not give His blessing and a birthright to a man who had taken it unfairly, from his weaker brother. YHVH appeared as a man to give Jacob the chance to prove himself as one who is able to overcome. As Jacob had to overcome to prove his strength of character, so each one of us, whom YHVH is calling at this time, has to overcome those sins which so beset us, before we will be allowed entry into the coming Kingdom of Elohim. The next morning Jacob was very sore in one hip, showing that Elohim's blessings do not always come without hardship and suffering. In addition we read in verse 32 of Genesis 32: **'Therefore, to this day the sons of Israel do not eat the sinew of the hip which is on the socket of the thigh, because he touched the socket of Jacob's thigh in the sinew of the hip.'** How many of you are able to recall how your mothers or grannies removed the sinew from a leg of lamb, prior to cooking it? If you can recall that, then you are most probably an Israelite. Even though most modern ladies have forgotten this skill, it was taught from mother to daughter throughout many generations (known in Judaism as Oral Torah). For this reason Kosher Butchers rarely sell you a leg of lamb or of any other kosher animal, as it is a fairly difficult process to remove the sinew.
- Fruit from trees which are less than four years old must not be eaten.

- Most vegetables, particularly leafy vegetables must be checked thoroughly for insect infestation.

YHWH instructed the children of Israel regarding clean and unclean animals, in Leviticus 11. Starting in verse 1 of Leviticus 11, we read: ***‘Then YHWH spoke again to Moses and to Aaron, saying to them, (2) “Speak to the sons of Israel, saying, ‘These are the creatures which you may eat from all the animals that are on the earth. (3) Whatever divides a hoof, thus making split hoofs, and chews the cud, among the animals, that you may eat.’”*** Animals that have split hoofs and chew the cud, such as cattle, sheep, deer, antelope and the like, are ‘kosher’. We may eat their meat; provided they are slaughtered according to the method described above and did not die of natural causes.

We continue in verses 4 to 8 of Leviticus 11, where the unclean animals are specified, in this way: ***“Nevertheless, you are not to eat of these, among those which chew the cud, or among those which divide the hoof: the camel, for though it chews cud, it does not divide the hoof, it is unclean to you. (5) Likewise, the rock badger, for though it chews cud, it does not divide the hoof, it is unclean to you; (6) the rabbit also, for though it chews cud, it does not divide the hoof, it is unclean to you; (7) and the pig, for though it divides the hoof, thus making a split hoof, it does not chew cud, it is unclean to you. (8) You shall not eat of their flesh nor touch their carcasses; they are unclean to you.”*** Listed here are the camel, the rock badger, the rabbit and the pig; they only have one of the two attributes that clean animals should have. They are unclean to us, but there are numerous other animals, without a single attribute that clean animals possess, such as cats, dogs, lions, hyena, monkeys, hippopotamus, etc. Most of these are carnivorous and some are scavengers. They are definitely unclean and not fit for human consumption.

The criteria used to determine which water creatures are kosher, are given in verse 9 of Leviticus 11, as follows: ***“These you may eat, whatever is in the water: all that have fins and scales, those in the water, in the seas or in the rivers, you may eat.”*** Continuing in verses 10 – 12 of Leviticus 11, we see which water creatures are unclean to us. ***“But whatever is in the seas and in the rivers, that do not have fins and scales among all the teeming life of the water, and among all the living creatures that are in the water, they are detestable things to you, (11) and they shall be abhorrent to you; you may not eat of their flesh, and their carcasses you shall detest. (12) Whatever in the water does not have fins and scales is abhorrent to you.”*** Fish such as sharks and swordfish do not have scales and are considered scavengers; shrimps, lobsters, oysters, mussels, clams, crabs, octopus or calamari are also considered scavengers and or filter feeders and consume foods that are harmful to human beings; they may accumulate harmful parasites or toxins and if consumed could be deadly to humans.

The birdlife which is unclean is specified in Leviticus 11: 13 – 19, as follows: ***“These, moreover, you shall detest among the birds; they are abhorrent, not to be eaten: the eagle and the vulture and the buzzard, (14) and the kite and the falcon in its kind, (15) every raven in its kind, (16) and the ostrich and the owl and the sea gull and the hawk in its kind, (17) and the little owl and the cormorant and the great owl, (18) and the white owl and the pelican and the carrion vulture, (19) and the stork, the heron in its kinds, and the hoopoe, and the bat.”*** Edible or kosher birds are chicken, turkey, quails, pheasant, grouse and the like.

We read from Leviticus 11: 20 that ***“All the winged insects that walk on all fours are detestable to you.”*** The insects which are edible are given in verses 21 & 22 of Leviticus 11, in this way: ***“Yet these you may eat among all the winged insects which walk on all fours: those which have above their feet joined legs with which to jump on the earth. (22) These of them you may eat: the locust in its kinds, and the devastating locust in its kinds, and the cricket in its kinds, and the grasshopper in its kinds.”*** This is the type of food that John (Yochanan) the Immerser ate with honey, whilst he lived in the Judean desert. If things begin to go bad for us in the near future, we might have to revert to eating locusts as well – at least we know they are kosher. We read about the unclean things that crawl on its belly, walk on all fours, have many feet and every swarming thing that swarms, from Leviticus 11: 23 – 43, as follows: ***“But all other winged insects which are four-footed are detestable to you. (24) By these, moreover, you will be made unclean: whoever touches their carcasses becomes unclean until evening, (25) and whoever picks up any of their carcasses shall wash his clothes and be unclean until evening. (26) Concerning all the animals which divide the hoof, but do not make a split hoof, or which do not chew cud, they are unclean to you: whoever touches them becomes unclean. (27) Also whatever walks on its paws, among all the creatures that walk on all fours, are unclean to you: whoever touches their carcasses becomes unclean until evening, (28) and the one who picks up their carcasses shall wash his clothes and be unclean until evening; they are unclean to you. (29) Now these are to you the unclean among the swarming things which swarm on the earth: the mole, and the mouse, and the great lizard in its kinds, (30) and the gecko, and the crocodile, and the lizard, and the sand reptile, and the chameleon. (31) These are to you the unclean among all the swarming things; whoever touches them when they are dead becomes unclean until evening. (32) Also anything on which one of them may fall when they are dead, becomes unclean, including any wooden article, or clothing, or a skin, or a sack – any***

article of which use is made – it shall be put in the water and be unclean until evening, then it becomes clean. (33) As for any earthenware vessel into which one of them may fall, whatever is in it becomes unclean and you shall break the vessel. (34) Any of the food which may be eaten, on which water comes, shall become unclean; and any liquid which may be drunk in every vessel shall become unclean. (35) Everything, moreover, on which part of their carcass may fall becomes unclean; an oven or a stove shall be smashed; they are unclean and shall continue as unclean to you. (36) Nevertheless a spring or a cistern collecting water shall be clean, though the one who touches their carcass shall be unclean. (37) And if a part of their carcass falls on any seed for sowing which is to be sown, it is clean. (38) Though if water is put on the seed, and a part of their carcass falls on it, it is unclean to you. (39) Also if one of the animals dies which you have for food, the one who touches its carcass becomes unclean until evening. (40) He too, who eats some of its carcass shall wash his clothes and be unclean until evening; and the one who picks up its carcass shall wash his clothes and be unclean until evening. (41) Now every swarming thing that swarms on the earth is detestable, not to be eaten. (42) Whatever crawls on its belly, and whatever walks on all fours, whatever has many feet, in respect to every swarming thing that swarms on the earth, you shall not eat them, for they are detestable. (43) Do not render yourselves detestable through any of the swarming things that swarm; and you shall not make yourselves unclean with them so that you become unclean.”

Verses 44 & 45 of Leviticus 11 gets us back to the section quoted in 1 Peter 1: 16, where YHVH tells us the reason for not eating un-kosher meats, as follows: **“For I am YHVH your Elohim. Consecrate yourselves therefore, and be holy; for I am holy. And you shall not make yourselves unclean with any of the swarming things that swarm on the earth. (45) For I am YHVH, who brought you up from the land of Egypt, to be your Elohim; thus you shall be holy for I am holy.”** In the final two verses of Leviticus 11, we see that this is the law of the clean and unclean beasts, fowl and living creatures that move in the waters and everything that swarms on the earth; to make a distinction between the edible and creatures which may not to be eaten.

We read in Ezekiel 22: 26, why our Father has poured out His righteous anger upon us, as the lost house of Israel: **“Her priests have done violence to My law and have profaned My holy things; they have made no distinction between the holy and the profane, and they have not taught the difference between the unclean and the clean; and they hide their eyes from my Sabbaths, and I am profaned among them.”**

The question is: Are we at this stage prepared to accept the Scriptures as the authority, as to what we may or may not eat? As much as the Hebrew language, the Sabbath and Set-apart Days of YHVH were preserved for us by the Jews, so were the kosher laws preserved for us, by them. Even though we are not told how to remove all the blood from meat in the Scriptures, Brother Judah preserved it for us in the oral Torah. For those who do not believe in the oral Torah; please tell me, how did Yahshua’s disciples know how far a Sabbath day’s journey is, as mentioned in the Renewed Covenant in Acts 1: 12?

Elohim’s Word prohibits the eating of both fat and blood in Lev. 3: 16 & 17; 7: 23 - 27. The fat of the animal was offered to YHVH in sacrifice (Lev. 3: 16). It belongs to Him. The life of the animal is found in its blood (Lev. 17:10 -14). Both the fat and blood of the sacrifice were treated separately from the meat of the sacrifice and neither was eaten. It is therefore necessary to remove all blood from the flesh of scripturally clean animals before eating and to avoid eating residual blood. At the time of slaughter, blood must be drained as quickly as possible. This process is unnecessary with fish, as very little blood remains in the meat of fish. Any remaining blood can be removed by soaking in coarse koshering salt (or brine). The Laws discussed here all come from the first five books of the Scriptures, known as the Torah. We read Yahshua’s own words in Mathew 5: 17, as follows: **“Do not think that I came to abolish the Law or the Prophets; I did not come to abolish, but to fulfill.”** Reading Matthew 5 from verse 18 to the end of the chapter, we come to understand that Yahshua came to make the Torah more binding.

7.1 Verses used to challenge clean food laws:

Below are four Renewed Covenant Scriptures often quoted in an attempt to challenge the clean food laws discussed in the Torah teachings of Elohim, as well as suitable answers to these erroneous beliefs:

- (a.) We read in Mark 7: 18, **‘And He (Yahshua) said to them, “Are you so lacking in understanding also? Do you not understand that whatever goes into the man from outside cannot defile him?’** This verse is erroneously interpreted as if Yahshua was condemning the Scribes and Pharisees for their strict laws, decreeing many foods to be unfit for human consumption. However, we find by reading the entire passage, that this was not the issue under discussion. At the beginning of the passage, we find Yahshua’s disciples eating with unwashed hands in plain sight of the Scribes and Pharisees. The Scribes and Pharisees had many rabbinical traditions that had been handed down through the ages, and one of those was ceremonial washing of hands before eating. We read accordingly in verses 3 & 4 of Mark 7, **“For the Pharisees, and all the Jews do not eat unless they carefully wash their hands, thus**

observing the traditions of the elders; (4) and when they come from the market place, they do not eat unless they cleanse themselves; and there are many other things which they have received in order to observe, such as the washing of cups and pitchers and copper pots." When the Scribes and Pharisees saw Yahshua's disciples eating before washing their hands, they accused Yahshua and His disciples of breaking their traditions. Yahshua was not pleased with their condemnation, but in turn accused them of placing their own man-made traditions above the commandments given by Elohim (see Mark 7: 6 – 9). Yahshua did not condemn them for compliance with the kosher food Laws found in the Scriptures, but condemns them for their doctrines of men. These doctrines were not part of the Torah teachings of YHVH, but were laws established by Jewish leaders through many generations. This section has nothing to do with the kosher food laws to be found in the Scriptures. In fact we read according to verses 18 & 19, **'And He said to them, "Are you so lacking in understanding also? Do you not understand that whatever goes into the man from outside cannot defile him; (19) because it does not go into his heart, but into his stomach, and is eliminated?" (Thus He declared all foods clean)**' The bracketed section was added by the Authors of the NASB to show that it is their personal interpretation. A similar sentence is added in most Christian Bibles. We read about the misinterpretations and additions to the word of Elohim, in Jeremiah 8: 8 – 9, as follows: **"How can you say, 'We are wise, and the law of YHVH is with us?' But behold, the lying pen of the scribes has made it into a lie. (9) The wise men are put to shame, they are dismayed and caught; behold they have rejected the word of YHVH, and what kind of wisdom do they have?"** Yahshua taught them in verse 18 that ingesting some dirt from unwashed hands will not defile them, but evil thoughts will defile because they come from the heart, as we read from verses 21 – 23, **"For from within, out of the heart of men, proceed the evil thoughts, fornications, thefts, murders, adulteries, (22) deeds of coveting and wickedness, as well as deceit, sensuality, envy, slander, pride and foolishness. (23) All these evil things proceed from within and defile the man."** Yahshua did not even make mention of the kosher food laws in Mark 7; He simply taught that we are to observe Elohim's physical Laws without neglecting His weightier (Spiritual) Laws.

- (b.) In Acts 10: 15, we read: **'And again a voice came to him a second time, "What Elohim has cleansed, no longer consider unholy."**' This verse is erroneously interpreted as if YHVH has cleansed all meats in the Renewed Covenant Era. To understand this verse, and Kepha's vision surrounding it, is to understand the context of the entire chapter. At the beginning of this passage we read about a Gentile named Cornelius. He is an army captain who is righteous and well respected by all those around him, including the Jews. YHVH sends an angel to deliver a message to Cornelius, saying in verse 5 of Acts 10: **"And now dispatch some men to Joppa, and send for a man named Simon, who is called Peter."** Cornelius did as instructed by the angel. Before the men arrive, Kepha goes onto the housetop to pray and whilst there he becomes hungry. As he prays he falls into a spiritual trance through which YHVH reveals a message that will change true worship forever. In his vision Kepha sees a great sheet come down from the sky and on the sheet he finds all types of unclean beasts. Next, Kepha hears a shocking statement; a voice saying: **"Rise, Peter; kill and eat."** Rav Kepha cannot believe what he hears. He is confused and mystified by this instruction. It is repeated three times by the angel before the sheet and its contents are taken away. Kepha argues that he has never eaten anything unclean (verse 14), not even 10 years after the death of Yahshua. Surely if the laws of clean and unclean foods had been done away with since the Savior's death, and Rav Kepha, one of the greatest apostles of the Renewed Covenant would have known about it soon after Yahshua's death? In addition Rav Kepha was filled with the Set-apart Spirit, which was supposed to lead the apostles into all truth (John 14:26). After the vision the men sent by Cornelius find Kepha and he returns with them to meet Cornelius. Once there, Kepha explains the meaning of his vision of the sheet, in Acts 10: 28, as follows: **"You yourselves know how unlawful it is for a man who is a Jew to associate with a foreigner or to visit him; and yet Elohim has shown me that I should not call any man unholy or unclean."** Thereafter Cornelius became the first Gentile convert to the faith. Here we have the simple explanation of this vision from the mouth of Rav Kepha himself: Gentiles, once considered unclean, may now enter the Covenant promise. YHVH simply used unclean food to symbolize "unclean" Gentiles, who can now enter the Promises. In Acts 10: 35, Kepha summarizes the lesson of his vision that he received in Joppa on the rooftop of the house of Simeon the Tanner, as follows: **'but in every nation the man who fears Him and does what is right, is welcome to Him.'** Clearly the vision seen by Kepha was to show him in a very profound way that Gentiles, who were once considered unclean, were now permitted into Elohim's covenant. Nowhere in this passage are Elohim's clean food Laws discussed or repealed. Kepha himself denies that he should ever eat anything that conflicts with the clean food Laws.

- (c.) We read in Colossians 2: 16: **“Therefore let no one act as your judge in regards to food or drink or in respect to a festival or a new moon or s Sabbath day.”** This is erroneously interpreted to say that we should not judge people in regard to the freedom that they now have in Messiah. However, Rav Shaul is speaking to the ecclesia (or Body of Messiah) and not to the world in general. If he was speaking to a pagan world that has neglected Elohim’s Word, then it would only make sense to conclude that Rav Shaul is saying that we are no longer under ‘Old Testament’ regulations and must not be judged by such matters. However, Rav Shaul is speaking to an obedient ecclesia of called out believers. Verse (17) is the key to understanding this, stating: **“things which are a mere shadow of what is to come; but the substance belongs to Messiah.”** This is essentially saying that those of us following Messiah should be judged by Him, or by His ecclesia and not by outsiders. It also has nothing to do with the kosher food laws found in the Scriptures.
- (d.) We read in 1 Timothy 4: 4, **‘For everything created by Elohim is good, and nothing is to be rejected, if it is received with gratitude;’** This is erroneously interpreted that it is acceptable to eat anything, as long as you are thankful for it. However, to fully understand what this portion of the Scriptures is saying, we have to read the very next verse (5), which reads like this: **“for it is sanctified by means of the word of Elohim and prayer.”** The question to answer here is: What is sanctified by means of the word of Elohim? The word sanctified simply means to set-apart or made ‘holy’. So the question is what foods are set-apart by the word of Elohim for use as food by mankind. The answer is obviously to be found in Leviticus 11 and Deuteronomy 14. Without any further ado it should be clear that Rav Shaul was not promoting the eating of ceremonially unclean animals: Who would argue that rats, bats, lizards, scorpions and skunks are good for food? The food that YHVH has set-apart in the Torah remains so, for all of those called out to follow His way.

The question that each one of us should answer, is: How important are clean foods to True Worshipers? We need to remind ourselves, that it was the breaking of a forbidden food law that caused Adam and Eve to commit the original sin. YHVH made certain foods for human consumption, whilst others are unacceptable to eat. It was that way at creation and remains so today. Our health and success in life depends on our obedience to Elohim’s laws, which He has put in place for our good. Neither He nor His standards will ever change as we read in Malachi 3: 6, **‘For I, YHVH, do not change; therefore you, O sons of Jacob, are not consumed.’** The kosher food laws and other commandments came into operation long before they were repeated to Moses and were handed down to the children of Israel at Mount Sinai. The laws of clean and unclean food are like the moral laws — they have been in effect since the beginning of creation. As a result, we cannot argue that they were given to ancient Israel only.

Elohim’s dietary laws remain for the benefit of His called-out ones: modern science verifies these Scriptural health laws, as it comes to understand more about food and how it affects our health; it becomes clear why YHVH prohibited specific so-called foods as unfit for human consumption. Even so, true believers in the way of Elohim do not need scientific facts, to justify what we eat or not – we follow the teachings of Elohim, because we worship and obey only Him. But, it is wise for us to be aware of what makes our Creator angry. We read accordingly from Isaiah 65: 3 – 4, **‘A people who continually provoke Me to My face, Offering sacrifices in gardens and burning incense on bricks; (4) Who sit among graves, and spend the night in secret places; Who eat swine’s flesh, and the broth of unclean meat is in their pots.’** These are things that we should absolutely avoid.

In conclusion, we are reminded of Yahshua’s words in Matthew 5: 19, as follows: **“Whoever then annuls one of the least of these commandments, and so teaches others, shall be called least in the kingdom of heaven; but whoever keeps and teaches them, he shall be called great in the kingdom of heaven.”** Do we worship YHVH on His terms, or do we want to decide for ourselves how to serve Him? Are there commandments in Torah which we do not obey, because we consider them to be unimportant, such as the wearing of Tzitzit; or fixing mezuzahs to our doors; or not to boil a kid in its mother’s milk? Do we find reasons for not keeping these Elohim’s given commandments, or do we like Abraham, follow YHVH without question?

7.2 Other Scriptural health laws:

Scriptural health laws are given mainly in Leviticus 11 through 17 and in Numbers 19, but also elsewhere in the Torah in Leviticus 5: 2 - 3; Deuteronomy 14: 2 - 21; 23: 10 -15; 24: 8; 26: 14; and Numbers 31: 19 - 20. These Scriptures tell us what makes us unclean. The main causes of defilement are eating from the unclean foods mentioned in Leviticus 11 and Deuteronomy 14; contact with leprosy – broadly defined as contagious diseases, molds and fungi (including mushrooms); discharges from the human body such as waste matter, seminal emissions or menstrual blood; mucus - when a person sneezes or spits; contact with dead bodies; contact with idols; and childbirth.

It is not usually necessary for Nazarene Israelites who were born into the faith to be reminded of these Scriptural health laws, as it should be part of our way of life. However, since YHVH is busy calling people from Christianity and other faiths to come into the truth and His way of life, it is necessary to explain these laws contained in Torah. The reason being, that gentiles do not as a norm believe or study the Torah; and Christianity on the other hand, insists that Yahshua abolished these laws. We know that in His own words Yahshua our Messiah and savior said that He did not come to abolish the Law or the prophets, but to make it more binding (in Matthew 5: 17 – 48). In addition we read in the New Covenant in 2 Corinthians 6: 14 - 18 ***‘Do not be bound together with unbelievers; for what partnership have righteousness and lawlessness, or what fellowship has light and darkness? (15) Or what harmony has Messiah with Belial, or what has a believer in common with an unbeliever? (16) Or what agreement has the temple of Elohim with idols? For we are the temple of the living Elohim; just as Elohim said, “I will dwell in them and walk among them; And I will be their Elohim, and they shall be my people. (17) Therefore, come out from their midst and be separate,” says YHVH. “And do not touch what is unclean; And I will welcome you. (18) “And I will be a father to you, And you shall be sons and daughters to me.” Says YHVH Almighty.’*** Yes, we should not touch what is unclean; a leper, discharges from a human body, idols, unclean meats, etc. If we do so by chance touch such objects, we will be unclean until the evening and should wash our clothes and bodies with (soap and) water.

Let’s examine each one of the categories listed in the opening paragraph in more detail:

- (a.) Eating unclean foods: As mentioned before, we read from Leviticus 11: 7 – 8, ***“and the pig, for though it divides the hoof, thus making a split hoof, it does not chew cud, it is unclean to you. You shall not eat of their flesh nor touch their carcasses; they are unclean to you.”*** Did you know that pork parasites can be contracted by simply handling fresh pork? When ingesting infected pork man is infected with the Trichinella larvae; the capsule that surrounds each larva is dissolved by the digestive juices and the larva attaches itself to the intestines, from where they enter the bloodstream. Pork tapeworm is another parasite that grows to almost two meters in length in the human body. Influenza (flu) is one of the illnesses which pigs share with humans. This illness is harbored in the lungs of pigs during summer months and tends to affect pigs and humans during winter. Sausage containing bits of pigs’ lungs and those who consume such sausages tend to suffer more during flu epidemics. Pig meat can also lead to itching and inflammation and the sulfur contained in deposits of its mucus in tendons and cartilage causes Arthritis and Rheumatism in human beings. In Leviticus 11: 10 – 11 we also read: ***“But whatever is in the seas and the rivers, that do not have fins and scales among all the teeming life of the water, and among all the living creatures that are in the water, they are detestable things to you, (11) and they shall be abhorrent to you; you may not eat of their flesh, and their carcasses you shall detest.”*** Shellfish such as shrimps, lobsters, oysters, mussels, clams and crabs are scavengers and consume foods harmful to human beings. They are contaminated with parasites, viruses and enteric organisms that cannot be killed even when cooked. These could cause Typhoid, Dysentery, Hepatitis B or paralysis of the muscles of the arms, legs or lungs, depending upon the degree of pollution of the water, in which they live. Do not ever eat shrimps or prawns after you have just taken Vitamin C pills; as this could result in death from arsenic poisoning within a short time.
- (b.) Leprosy and other contagious diseases: Examples of leprosy and similar contagious diseases are Hanson’s disease, Chickenpox, Smallpox, Typhoid, Polio and Scarlet fever. The Aids virus is very resourceful and escapes new medicines and the body’s defenses. People with these diseases should be isolated or quarantined (as per Leviticus 13: 4 & 5). Anything a person with these diseases touch must be washed (Leviticus 15: 11) and whoever touches such a person’s bed or skin must wash his clothes and himself (Leviticus 15: 1 – 7).
- (c.) Waste matter: The biggest health problem is that flies spread germs because they feed off decayed food and waste matter. Every time an Israelite goes to the toilet he must dig a hole and cover his dung with earth (Deuteronomy 23: 12 – 14). This should be done when we are camping outside, where there are no toilet facilities available. In the modern sense, we must flush the toilet and ensure that it is clean when we are done. We should also wash our hands after we’ve been to the toilet.
- (d.) Seminal emissions and menstrual blood: A woman beginning with menstrual flow must not have marital relations with her husband (Leviticus 18: 19) and after the end of her menstrual flow, she must count seven days (Leviticus 15: 19 & 28) and then immerse her entire body in water. Then, after a couple have had marital relations, both husband and wife should bath and are unclean until the evening (Leviticus 15: 18). By the way the uncircumcised are also considered unclean (see both Isaiah 52: 1 & Ezekiel 44: 9), since it is more difficult to clean properly under the skin.

- (e.) Contact with dead bodies: The carcasses of all animals are unclean (Leviticus 11: 8, 24, 29 – 31), including those permitted as food for mankind (Leviticus 11: 31 – 39). If a man touches it, he becomes unclean until the evening and should wash his clothes and his body. Touching a grave, a human corpse or a bone renders a person unclean (Numbers 19: 11 – 18; Leviticus 22: 4). This applies to funerals, autopsies and soldiers in war.
- (f.) Idols: We read in Genesis 35: 2: ***‘So Jacob said to his household and to all who were with him, “Put away foreign gods (idols) which are among you, and purify yourselves, and change your garments.”’*** We also read in Isaiah 30: 22 ***‘And you will defile your graven images, overlaid with silver, and your molten images plated with gold. You will scatter them as an impure thing; and say to them, “Be gone!”’*** And we further read in Ezekiel 36: 17 & 25: ***“Son of man, when the house of Israel was living in their own land, they defiled it by their ways and their deeds (eating pig and unclean foods, keeping pagan feasts and bringing Xmas trees into their homes, keeping pictures and statutes of Mary, J*e*s*u*s and even B*u*d*d*h*a*, as well as attending church in buildings with steeples); (25) “Then I will sprinkle clean water on you, and you will be clean; I will cleanse you from all your filthiness and from all your idols”*** The Scriptures do not specify how idols defile us, but we are told not to learn the way of the pagan nations and worship idols, for example Xmas-trees (see Jeremiah 10: 1- 5).
- (g.) Childbirth: After the birth of a baby boy, a woman must count seven days and wash in a mikvah. After the birth of a baby girl she must count fourteen days and wash in a mikvah as per Leviticus 12: 1 - 5.

Besides the health benefits to be had from not eating, and as far as is possible not coming into contact with the above mentioned, we also read from Deuteronomy 23: 14 ***“Since YHVH your Elohim walks in the midst of your camp to deliver you and to defeat your enemies before you, therefore your camp must be holy; and He must not see anything indecent among you lest He turn away from you.”*** If we do not clean up our lives, then we cannot expect Elohim to be amongst us, or to protect us. The point is who or what makes Elohim angry? We read in Isaiah 65: 3 – 4 ***‘A people who continually provoke Me to My face, Offering sacrifices in gardens and burning incense on bricks; (4) Who sit among graves, and spend the night in secret places; Who eat swine’s flesh, And the broth of unclean meat is in their pots.’***

Moses knew how to avoid contagious sexual diseases. In addition to the death sentence for homosexuals and adulterers as set out in Leviticus 20: 13, quarantine laws for victims infected with communicable diseases are given in Leviticus 13: 45 & 46. In Leviticus 13: 4 we read about Hyssop; hyssop oil is an antiseptic which kills fungi and bacteria. Branches of hyssop were used in water to clean an unclean person. We should be careful to touch unclean objects and wash daily (Numbers 19; Leviticus 11: 15) using soap (Numbers 19: 18). We should also avoid sitting on public benches or public toilets. We should wash our hands and the food we eat (Leviticus 22: 6). We should wash after going to the toilet (Deuteronomy 23: 12 – 14) and after touching dead bodies (Numbers 19: 16) insects and spiders (Leviticus 22: 5 – 6).

Willful violation of any Scriptural law is sin, but contamination is not always associated with sin. For example marital relations, giving birth, burying the dead, menstruating or becoming leprous all causes contamination, but none are sinful acts per se. So even though we cannot always avoid contact with objects that defile us, we need to make sure that we follow the Scriptural rules to become pure after such incidences. We may for example not partake of the Passover, if we have been in touch with dead bodies – when attending a funeral and assist as a pallbearer. In Numbers 9 : 9 - 12 we read what to do in such situations, as follows: ***‘Then YHVH spoke to Moses, saying, (10) “Speak to the sons of Israel, saying, ‘If any one of you or of your generations becomes unclean because of a dead person, or is on a distant journey, he may, however, observe the Passover to YHVH (11) ‘In the second month on the fourteenth day at twilight, they shall observe it; they shall eat it with unleavened bread and bitter herbs. (12) They shall leave none of it until morning, nor break a bone of it; according to all the statutes of the Passover they shall observe it.’*** This tells us that if we could not partake of the normal Passover, because we were considered unclean at the time, i.e. on the evening of the fourteenth of Aviv, then we should partake of it a month later. We must never neglect to partake of the Passover, since such an action could result in us being cut off from Israel, according to verse 13 of Numbers 9. However, we should also remember that we need to be circumcised in both the heart and the flesh to partake of the Passover.

The regulations and rules that medical doctors know and use today are all to be found in the Scriptures. Rules about scrubbing with soap and water after contact with a disease are found in Leviticus 14: 9; 15: 7, 13 -19; 17: 16; 22: 6; Numbers 19: 7 – 8 and Jeremiah 2: 22. Washing machines (clothes washers), sinks, bathtubs and showers are all Scriptural as per Numbers 31: 20 – 24. We use Hyssop as an antiseptic (Numbers 19: 18) and fuller’s soap (Malachi 3: 2) to clean ourselves. The law concerning quarantine is mentioned in Leviticus 12: 1 - 4 and 13: 46. Using a face mask such as the ones used by dentists and doctors are mentioned in Leviticus 13: 45. It is common practice in hospitals to shave off body hair for better hygiene

as mentioned in Leviticus 13: 33, 45 – 46; 14: 8 – 9. We see in Leviticus 15: 8 that spit is regarded as an infective discharge. Gonorrhoea and Herpes can both be contracted from clothing, bedding and towels as per Leviticus 11: 32. Unglazed pottery must be destroyed and cannot be easily cleaned of germs (Leviticus 11: 33), which means that chipped drinking cups and cracked dinnerware, should be discarded. Containers of food and drink must be covered to prevent dead bugs or flies and gnats from sitting or falling on it (Numbers 19: 15).

We know that many Christian believers obey some of the Scriptural rules without ever reading the Tanach, since they have been taught these rules by their parents. The question that I ask myself many times is why? O yes, some of these rules are common sense, but I am certain that some of these we have learnt from our parents by word of mouth, because they learnt it from their forefathers, who in the distant past, were from the tribes of Israel. This was the way Torah upon the lips used to be passed on from one generation to the next, in Scriptural times. There might also be many of these rules, which we transgressed, because those amongst us, who come from a Christian background, were taught incorrectly, by deceived parents. In that case brethren, it has become time for us to repent as we read in Jeremiah 16 verse 19: ***‘O YHVH, my strength and my stronghold, And my refuge in the day of distress, To thee the nations (the goyim) will come From the ends of the earth and say, “Our fathers have inherited nothing but falsehood, Futility and things of no profit”*** Friends, it is time for us to repent and return to full Torah observance – if we truly want Elohim to come and tabernacle with us again.

Chapter 8 - Circumcision remains valid for Nazarene Jews.

As Nazarene Jews/Israelites we like all Jews, believe that our male children should be circumcised, on the eighth day after birth, even though and because we believe in Messiah. We read accordingly from Galatians 3: 26 - 29, **'For you are all sons of Elohim through faith in Messiah Yahshua. (27) For all of you who were immersed into Messiah have clothed yourselves with Messiah. (28) There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither slave nor free man, there is neither male nor female; for you are all one in Messiah Yahshua. (29) And if you belong to Messiah, then you are Abraham's offspring, heirs according to promise.'** The promise that YHVH made to Abraham, was according to the covenant that He will give the land of Canaan to Abraham and his descendants after him, provided that every male among them are circumcised.

Whilst Yahshua our Messiah was on earth, most of His disciples and believers in Him were Jews. But after His death, resurrection and ascension to heaven, the good news about the coming Kingdom of Elohim, was eventually taught to the Gentile nations in the areas around Israel. Soon after Pentecost more believers came to hear the gospel and the Apostles experienced their first problem regarding the circumcision of adult gentile believers in Yahshua. We turn to chapter 15 of Acts, where this situation is being discussed. Commencing in verse 1 of Acts 15, we pick up where there was a dispute between Rav Shaul and Barnabas, about physical circumcision. However, in verse 2 we see that they determined that they together with certain others of them should go up to Jerusalem, to the apostles and elders concerning this issue. We see that their decision to take the matter to the priests and Levites in Jerusalem is in accordance with the Torah command found in Deuteronomy 17: 8 – 12, like this: **"If any case is too difficult for you to decide, between one kind of homicide or another, between one kind of lawsuit or another, and between one kind of assault or another, being cases of dispute in your courts, then you shall arise and go up to the place which YHVH your Elohim chooses. (9) So you shall come to the Levitical priest or the judge, who is in office in those days, and you shall inquire of them, and they will declare to you the verdict in the case. (10) And you shall do according to the terms of the verdict which they declare to you from that place which YHVH chooses; and you shall be careful to observe according to all that they teach you. (11) According to the terms of the law which they teach you, and according to the verdict which they tell you, you shall do; you shall not turn aside from the word which they declare to you, to the right or the left. (12) And the man who acts presumptuously by not listening to the priest who stands there to serve YHVH your Elohim, nor to the judge, that man shall die; thus you shall purge the evil from Israel."** Does this mean disobedience could result in the second death?

We read from Acts 15: 5, **'But certain ones of the sect of the Pharisees who had believed, stood up, saying, "It is necessary to circumcise them, and to direct them to observe the Law of Moses."**' We know that Rav Shaul was also from the Sect of the Pharisees, as may be read in Philippians 3: 5 **'circumcised the eighth day of the nation of Israel, of the tribe of Benjamin, a Hebrew of Hebrews; as to the Law a Pharisee.'** From verse 5 of Acts 15 we understand that Rav Shaul, a Pharisee and believer in Yahshua, had a disagreement with other Pharisees who were also believers in Yahshua. Continuing in Acts 15: 6 we see that the elders and the apostles came together to consider whether circumcision was indeed required, when Gentile believers come to believe in Yahshua the Messiah. We read Rav Kepha's reaction to the question at hand in Acts 15: 7 - 11, as follows: **'And after there had been much debate, Peter (Kepha) stood up and said to them, "Brethren, you know that in the early days Elohim made a choice among you, that by my mouth the Gentiles should hear the word of the gospel and believe. (8) And Elohim, who knows the heart, bore witness to them, giving them the Set-apart Spirit, just as He also did to us (meaning Jewish believers); (9) and He made no distinction between us and them, cleansing their hearts by faith. (10) Now therefore why do you put Elohim to the test by placing upon the neck of the disciples a yoke which neither our fathers nor we have been able to bear? (11) But we believe that we are saved through the grace of the Master Yahshua, in the same way as they also are.'**

According to verse 12 the entire multitude present at the meeting kept silent and listened to Barnabas and Rav Shaul, as they related to them about the signs and wonders Elohim had done through them among the Gentiles. In Acts 15: 13 – 21 we see that Rav Yaacov (James, Yahshua's half brother) confirms that the Gentiles came to believe in Messiah as prophesied by the Prophet Amos, and gives his judgment as follows: **'And after they had stopped speaking, Yaacov answered, saying, "Brethren listen to me. (14) Simeon (Peter) has related how Elohim first concerned Himself about taking from among the Gentiles a people for His name. (15) And with this the words of the Prophets agree, just as it is written, (16) 'AFTER THESE THINGS I will return, AND I WILL REBUILD THE TABERNACLE OF DAVID WHICH HAS FALLEN, AND I WILL REBUILD ITS RUINS, AND I WILL RESTORE IT, (this confirms that the Israel which David ruled, consisting of both Judah and Israel, will be restored one day soon) (17) IN ORDER THAT THE REST OF MANKIND MAY SEEK YHVH, AND ALL THE GENTILES WHO ARE CALLED BY MY NAME,' (18) SAYS YHVH, WHO MAKES THESE THINGS KNOWN FROM OF OLD. (19) Therefore it is my judgment that we do not trouble those who are turning to Elohim from among the Gentiles, (20) but**

that we write to them that they abstain from things contaminated by idols and from fornication and from what is strangled and from blood. (21) For Moses from ancient generations has in every city those who preach him, since he is read in the synagogues every Sabbath.”

Why do so many of us believe that Acts 15 is talking about two completely different ways, in which Jews and Ephraimites who believe in Yahshua our Messiah are to show their faith in YHVH through Him? The reason is that most of us think and believe that the so-called Old Testament was written for the Jews, and the so-called New Testament for non-Jews. Most reject what YHVH spoke through Moses and therefore interpret the Scriptures as two separate ‘Testaments’. In order then to have the correct understanding of Acts 15, we need to take a look at the Scriptures from a Hebraic perspective, to understand how the Torah and the Prophets relate to the Renewed Covenant. We read Yahshua’s own words in this regard in John 5: 43 – 47, as follows: **“I have come in My Father’s name, and you do not receive Me; if another shall come in his own name, you will receive him”³¹. (44) How can you believe, when you receive glory from one another, and you do not seek the esteem that is from the one and only Elohim? (here Yahshua who is Immanuel, meaning Elohim in the flesh confirms that there is only one Elohim) (45) Do not think that I will accuse you before the Father; the one who accuses you is Moses, in whom you have set your hope. (46) For if you believed Moses, you would believe Me; for he wrote of Me. (47) But if you do not believe his writings, how will you believe My words?”** Reading this, most believe that it is aimed at our Jewish brothers; however, verse 47 makes it clear, that we cannot believe Yahshua’s words, if we do not believe the writings of Moses.

The Torah and the prophets foretold the coming of Messiah, that there would be an end of our exile and that Yahshua the Messiah will re-gather both houses of Israel and return them back to the land of Israel. Yahshua tells his mainly Jewish audience in John 10: 16 & 17 that one reason for Him to die is to eventually re-gather both Judah and Ephraim, as follows: **“And I have other sheep, which are not of this fold; I must bring them also, and they shall hear My voice; and they shall become one flock with one shepherd. (17) For this reason the Father loves Me, because I lay down My life that I may take it up again.”** In addition we read the following in John 11: 49 – 52, **‘But a certain one of them, Caiaphas, who was high priest that year, said to them, “You know nothing at all, (50) nor do you take into account that it is expedient for you that one man should die for the people, and that the whole nation should not perish.” (51) Now this he did not say on his own initiative; but being high priest that year, he prophesied that Yahshua was going to die for the nation, (52) and not for the nation (Judah) only, but that He might also gather together into one the children of Elohim who are scattered abroad (namely Ephraim).’**

Just before Yahshua’s ascension to heaven, forty days after His resurrection, the apostles asked Him in Acts 1: 6, **“Master, is it at this time You are restoring the kingdom to Israel?”** Yahshua said to them in verses 7 & 8 of Acts 1, **“It is not for you to know times or epochs which the Father has fixed by His own authority; (8) but you shall receive power when the Set-apart Spirit has come upon you; and you shall be My witnesses both in Jerusalem, and in all of Judea and Samaria, and even to the remotest part of the earth (including the USA, the UK, the Falkland Islands as well as South Africa).”** Yahshua commanded His disciples in Matthew 28: 19 & 20, saying: **“Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations, immersing them in the name (one name) of the Father and the Son and the Set-apart Spirit, (20) teaching them to observe all that I commanded you; and lo, I am with you always, even to the end of the age.”** The commission is very clear: All nations are to be taught the Torah that Yahshua taught His disciples. It is therefore clear that all nations are to be taught to obey the commandments of Elohim and everything taught by Yahshua, whilst He was on earth.

The decision by the elders and the leaders in Jerusalem regarding the dispute about circumcision in Acts 15, was that, because repentance is a process, new believers need to be taught to abstain from meats offered to idols, from blood, from things strangled, and from fornication, before they are taught about the other requirements of Torah, such as the Sabbath, The Feast Days of Elohim, clean and unclean foods, the wearing of Tzitzit, and eventually circumcision. We read from Acts 15: 21 that they will learn these additional requirements as they attend synagogues near them, or through internet ministries such as ours. This is very similar to our father Abraham. It was only after he came to believe in YHVH (as is recorded in Genesis 15: 6) that he was circumcised, as we read in Genesis 17: 24, as follows: **‘Now Abraham was ninety-nine years old when he was circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin.’** We know from reading Galatians 3: 26 – 29, that a believer in Messiah becomes an heir of the promise that was made to Abraham. Whilst new believers are not circumcised, they are not joined to the covenant made to Abraham, and are therefore not members of the family of Abraham, or the Commonwealth of Israel.

³¹ Some accept traditions and teachings of men far more easily than believing what Yahshua the Word of Elohim, has to say about things; an example being the authority that Judah has regarding the Feast Days of Elohim.

If we understand the ruling of Acts 15 from a Hebraic perspective, we will know that it does not contradict Yahshua's teaching in Matthew 5: 19, saying: ***'Whoever then annuls one of the least of these commandments, and so teaches others, shall be called least in the kingdom of heaven; but whoever keeps and teaches them, he shall be called great in the kingdom of heaven.'*** We are aware that circumcision is not a requirement for salvation. However, if we as heirs of Abraham through Yahshua our Messiah want to inherit the Land of Israel, we will have to comply by doing our part in the covenant which YHVH made with Abraham, our father in the faith.

Having said that, we need to also look at the section of the Scriptures that Christians use to disagree with the above conclusion, namely Galatians 5. But, before continuing with Galatians, I would like to clear up a major misconception about the teachings of Rav Shaul. Many have viewed His teachings as speaking against the Torah portions which they do not wish to accept. However, Rav Shaul was really teaching about the importance of all the commandments including those viewed as least, or the ones that people believe they need not keep any longer; stressing that the Set-apart Spirit is the necessary agent for enabling righteousness. We need to follow the steps set-out in The Scriptures exactly if we want to receive the Set-apart Spirit, to enable us to start obeying Torah, which leads to righteousness. It is like we read from James 2: 26, ***'For just as the body without the spirit is dead, so also faith without works is dead.'*** However, we should never compel new believers to do things, for which they are not ready, yet. People should do things because they came to understand and believe the same. Repentance is a process and as people learn more by self-study and from teachers, who themselves went through the discipleship program; they will begin to understand better and start obeying from the heart. YHVH wants us to serve Him willingly from the heart and not because someone else forced us to serve Him. In addition Yahshua said that we should not lord it over people, since that is what the Gentiles do, as we read Mark 10: 42 – 45, ***'And calling them to Himself, Yahshua said to them, "You know that those who are recognized as rulers of the Gentiles lord it over them; and their great men exercise authority over them. (43) But it is not so among you, but whoever wishes to become great among you shall be your servant; (44) and whoever wishes to be first among you shall be slave of all. (45) For even the Son of Man did not come to be served, but to serve, and to give His life a ransom for many."***

This should be a warning to those who want to prescribe to others and judge what they wear in and outside worship services. I agree that our bodies should be properly covered, so as not to give offence, or to lead people of the opposite gender into temptation. The fact that when we come to services we appear before the King of the Universe, should not only motivate us to wear our best, but also to be dressed modestly. We are not a cult prescribing a certain dress code for our members, as long as they are mindful of the aforementioned principles. The point is that we should judge ourselves, by comparing ourselves to Messiah and not amongst fellow believers. It is as we read in James 4: 10 – 12, in this way: ***'Humble yourselves in the presence of YHVH, and He will exalt you. (11) Do not speak against one another, brethren. He who speaks against a brother, or judges his brother, speaks against the law, and judges the law; but if you judge the law, you are not a doer of the law, but a judge of it. (12) There is only one Lawgiver and Judge, the One who is able to save and to destroy; but who are you who judge your neighbor?'*** Yes, men should not wear female clothing and similarly should ladies not wear male clothing. However, in a city like Port Elizabeth in South Africa, ladies are far better protected, when wearing female slacks than dresses, because the wind blows at almost gale force for at least 30% of the time. Even though we do not get lots of rain in Port Elizabeth, it is as it says in the first part of Job 37: 9, like this: ***"Out of the south comes the storm."*** Our reasons for teaching against certain practices, should come from Torah, and should not be based on teachings of men, as we read from Colossians 2: 20 – 23, as follows: ***'If you have died with Messiah to the elementary principles of the world, why, as if you were living in the world, do you submit yourself to decrees, such as, (21) "Do not handle, do not taste, do not touch!" (22) (Which all refer to things destined to perish with using) - in accordance with commandments and teachings of men? (23) These are matters which have, to be sure, the appearance of wisdom in self-made religion and self-abasement and severe treatment of the body, but are of no value against fleshly indulgence.'*** This obviously refers to such customs, as eating fish on Fridays and expecting priests to remain celibate.

With that out of the way, let's commence in verse 1 of Galatians 5, ***'It was for freedom that Messiah set us free; therefore keep standing firm and do not be subject again to the yoke of slavery.'*** Yahshua has set us free from the slavery of sin. He provided us with freedom from sin – not freedom from Torah as some believe. Sin is in fact the transgression of the Law (or Torah) as we read in 1 John 3: 4, as follows: ***'Everyone who practices sin also practices lawlessness; and sin is lawlessness.'*** Since any attempt to obey Torah by ourselves is futile, without Yahshua, we cannot trust in anything but Him to give us the power to overcome sin. Continuing from verse 2 of Galatians 5, we read: ***'Behold I, Shaul, say to you that if you receive circumcision, Messiah will be of no benefit to you.'*** Circumcision does not ensure our salvation. Yahshua the salvation of YHVH is the only way for us to attain Salvation. He is the door and if we do not go through Him, we remain lost, circumcised or not. We read accordingly from verse 3, ***'And I testify again to every man who receives circumcision, that he is under obligation to keep the whole law.'*** Like Abraham, we

should not be circumcised before we are sure that we want to follow Yahshua all the way. The first step in our walk with Elohim is as Rav Kepha explained to those who came to believe in Yahshua, in Acts 2: 38, as follows: **“Repent, and let each of you be immersed in the name of Yahshua Messiah for the forgiveness of your sins** (transgressions of Torah); **and you shall receive the gift of the Set-apart Spirit.**’ Without having taken this step, it is impossible for us to obey Torah. Circumcision is the final step that we should take, because without the Set-apart Spirit indwelling us, we cannot obey Torah. By the time we are ready to ask for circumcision, we will want to obey Elohim fully, and will therefore want to be circumcised out of our own free will.

Torah applies to all who follow the way of Elohim, as we read in Exodus 12: 49, as follows: **“The same law shall apply to the native as to the stranger who sojourns among you.”** We know that this was in fact talking about the fact that those who partake of the Passover should be circumcised. However, it also implies that all the commandments apply to those who follow the way of Elohim, as is confirmed in Numbers 15: 15, as follows: **‘As for the assembly, there shall be one statute for you and for the alien who sojourns with you, a perpetual statute throughout your generations; as you are, so shall the alien be before YHVH.’** Despite those who deceive believers to believe that Yahshua came to do away with Torah, He said just the opposite in Matthew 5: 17 – 19. When Yahshua became the sacrifice (for the sins of the world), the only portion of the Law that was put to an end, was the Sacrificial Law in respect of sin. The covenant of circumcision made with Abraham, was at least 430 years before the introduction of the Sacrificial Law (as is confirmed in Galatians 3: 17), and was definitely not part thereof. In addition we know that Yahshua was both immersed (as per Mark 1: 9) and circumcised (as per Luke 2: 21); and that we the called out ones, who follow His perfect example should therefore do likewise. But, before we continue, we need to understand that neither the keeping of the Law nor circumcision ensures our salvation. We are saved by the grace of YHVH through faith. However, it is as we read in James 2: 24, **‘You see that a man is justified by works, and not by faith alone.’** We prove our faith by what we do. If we say that we believe in the Sabbath and Feast Days of Elohim, but refuse to attend services during these days, our faith is of no use.

It is therefore easier to understand what Rav Shaul is saying to Gentiles and those who were not circumcised eight days after birth, as we read from verses 4 & 5 of Galatians 5, **‘You have been severed from Messiah, you who are seeking to be justified by law; you have fallen from grace. (5) For we through the Spirit, by faith, are waiting for the hope of righteousness.’** As sinners we need to repent first, then be immersed and only then will we want to obey Elohim from the heart. After immersing a new believer, the teacher who immersed him/her is according to the commission given us by Messiah (in Matthew 28: 18 – 20); responsible to teach the believer everything that Yahshua taught His disciples. That is why Yahshua introduced a discipleship program, to ensure that there will always be teachers available, who were themselves taught by someone who has gone through the same discipleship program before them. It is during this discipleship program that new believers are taught about the additional requirements of Torah, such as the Sabbath, The Feast Days of Elohim, clean and unclean foods, the wearing of Tzitzit, and eventually circumcision.

Continuing in verse 6 of Galatians 5, we read: **‘For in Messiah Yahshua neither circumcision nor uncircumcision means anything, but faith working through love.’** It does not matter whether you were circumcised or not, before coming to believe in the way of Elohim, as He is only interested in those who obey and serve him from the heart (through faith). If you were circumcised thinking that it will assure your salvation, you are wrong. However, if your motivation for circumcision was out of love, because you know that those who belong to Messiah are Abraham’s offspring; heirs (of the Promised Land) according to the promise (or everlasting covenant) that He made with YHVH (as we read in Galatians 3: 29), you are on the right track. Proceeding with the idea of faith working through love, we read from verses 7 & 8 of Galatians 5, **‘You were running well; who hindered you from obeying truth? (8) This persuasion did not come from Him who calls you.’** Our Father does not want us to do things against our will and will never persuade us to do so. He is only interested in obedience from the heart – He gave us free will because He is not interested in robots, all made to follow Him because they are forced to do so. With this in mind, let’s continue reading verses 9 – 13, as follows: **‘A little leaven leavens the whole lump of dough. (10) I have confidence in you in the Master, that you will adopt no other view; but the one who is disturbing you shall bear his judgment, whoever he is. (11) But I, brethren, if I still preach circumcision (for salvation), why am I still persecuted? Then the stumbling block of the cross has been abolished. (12) Would that those who are troubling you would even mutilate themselves. (13) For you were called to freedom (from slavery of sin), brethren; only do not turn your freedom into an opportunity for the flesh, but through love serve one another.’**

Another section which some of our Jewish brothers and others use to discredit the teachings of Rav Shaul come from Acts 21. In order to provide clarity on this section of the Scriptures, we turn to Acts 21: 17, where we read: **‘And when we had come to Jerusalem, the brethren received us gladly.’** This is talking about Rav Shaul and his entourage, returning to Jerusalem after an extensive missionary journey. The next day he reported to Rav Yaacov (James) and all the elders who were present, telling them about his journey and

about the things that Elohim has done among the Gentiles through his ministry. After relating the happenings to the elders, they glorified Elohim and said to Rav Shaul in verses 20 & 21, ***“You see, brother, how many thousands there are among the Jews of those who have believed, and they are all zealous for the Law; (21) and they have been told about you, that you are teaching all the Jews who are among the Gentiles to forsake Moses, telling them not to circumcise their children nor to walk according to the customs.”*** Because many misunderstood the teachings of Rav Shaul at that time, they, like today, twisted his words to make it appear as if he was preaching against Torah. However, Rav Shaul was really teaching about the importance of all the commandments including those viewed as least; stressing that people are only able to keep Torah, if they have been given a portion of the Set-apart Spirit to enable them to perform the righteous deeds, specified in the Torah, from the heart. However, the elders warned Rav Shaul, because they realized that these Law abiding, believing Jews will soon hear that he is back in Jerusalem, to be prepared to address their concerns, even if these were based on hearsay.

So in order to prove to these Jewish brothers that Rav Shaul, is not preaching against circumcision or any other Torah command for that matter, they suggested that he purify himself along with four other men who were under a Nazirite vow. Persons who took a Nazirite vow are forbidden to shave their hair for the duration of the vow. But, at the end of the vow, they are required to shave off all their dedicated hair and hand it to the priest, who will wave it before YHVH, as an offering, together with the breast of a ram offered by waving and a thigh offered by lifting up; and afterward the Nazirites may drink wine. The elders suggested that Rav Shaul join the four men and pay the expenses to have their heads shaved; and all will know that there is no truth in the things that have been said about him, and that he is still walking orderly, keeping the Law. We read the additional instructions given Rav Shaul by the elders (from verse 25) as follows: ***‘But concerning the Gentiles who have believed, we wrote, having decided that they should abstain from meat sacrificed to idols and from blood and from what is strangled and from fornication.’*** These were the exact same requirements specified in Acts 15. However, as we have seen in Acts 15, these were the requirements for new believers, who were also required to attend synagogues, where they would eventually learn about keeping the remainder of Torah. The main idea behind this teaching, is as we read previously: Repentance is a process and new believers are never forced to do anything, until they come to believe in it, and start obeying from the heart.

We see from verse 26 of Acts 21 that Rav Shaul obeyed the elders and took the men, and purified himself along with them, and went into the temple, giving notice of the completion of days of purification, until the sacrifice was offered for each one of them. But we read in verses 27 & 28, ***‘And when the seven days (of their purification) were almost over, the Jews from Asia, upon seeing him in the temple, began to stir up all the multitude and laid hands on him, (28) crying out, “Men of Israel, come to our aid! This is the man who preaches to all men everywhere against our people, and the Law, and this place; and besides he has even brought Greeks into the temple and has defiled this holy place.”*** Nevertheless, we see that even in this assumption, the Jewish brethren were wrong as we read from verse 29, in this way: ***‘For they had previously seen Trophimus the Ephesian in the city with him, and they supposed that Shaul had brought him into the temple.’*** This enraged the crowd and all the city and the people took hold of Rav Shaul and dragged him out of the temple. But, whilst they were trying to kill him, a report about what was happening reached the commander of the Roman court, and he immediately took along some soldiers and centurions and ran down to where they held Shaul, so the people stopped beating him. We see here that like today, misunderstandings and stories about the teachings of Rav Shaul, caused a great deal of confusion.

It is therefore important for us who are following the way of Elohim, to understand what Shaul taught, as even Rav Kepha (Peter) confirmed that Rav Shaul's teachings are part and parcel of The Scriptures, as we read from 2 Peter 3: 14 - 16, as follows: ***‘Therefore, beloved, since you look for these things, be diligent to be found by Him in peace, spotless and blameless, (15) and regard the patience of YHVH to be salvation; just as also our beloved brother Paul (Rav Shaul), according to the wisdom given him, wrote to you, (16) as also in all his letters, speaking in them of these things, in which are some things hard to understand, which the untaught and unstable distort, as they do also the rest of the Scriptures, to their own destruction.’***

We always used to say that if we are going to keep the Sabbath during the millennium we should also keep it today, as we read in Isaiah 66: 23 and Ezekiel 44: 24. However, by reading from verses 6 – 9 of Ezekiel 44, we see that those who are going to serve in the temple will have to be both circumcised in both the heart (immersed) and in the flesh, as follows: ***‘And you shall say to the rebellious ones, the house of Israel, “Thus says YHVH Elohim, ‘Enough of all your abominations, O house of Israel, (7) when you brought in foreigners, uncircumcised in heart and uncircumcised in flesh, to be in My sanctuary to profane it, even My house, when you offered My food, the fat and the blood; for they made My covenant void-this in addition to all your abominations. (8) And you have not kept charge of My holy things yourselves, but you have set foreigners to keep charge of My sanctuary.’” (9) Thus says YHVH Elohim, “No foreigner, uncircumcised in heart and uncircumcised in flesh, of all the foreigners who are***

among the sons of Israel, shall enter My Sanctuary.” We also read from Joel 3: 17, **‘Then you will know that I am YHVH your Elohim, dwelling in Zion My set-apart mountain. So Jerusalem will be set-apart, and strangers** (meaning uncircumcised gentiles) **will pass through it no more.’** Now that we are clear about circumcision and its purpose for all believing Israelite men, we also need to determine who is eligible to partake of Yahshua’s memorial Passover, today?

8.1 Circumcision, Immersion and the Passover:

We commence reading from Colossians 2: 9 – 13, as follows: **‘For in Him (Yahshua) all the fullness of Deity dwells in bodily form, (10) and in Him you have been made complete, and He is the head over all rule and authority; (11) and in Him you were also circumcised with a circumcision made without hands, in the removal of the body of the flesh by the circumcision of Messiah; (12) having been buried with Him in immersion, in which you were also raised up with Him through faith in the working of Elohim, who raised Him from the dead. (13) And when you were dead in your transgressions and the un-circumcision of your flesh, He made you alive together with Him, having forgiven us all our transgressions.’** We see here that immersion has become the ‘circumcision of Messiah’. We also read in Galatians 3: 27 – 29 as follows: **‘For all of you who were immersed into Messiah have clothed yourselves with Messiah. (28) There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither slave nor free man, there is neither male nor female; for you are all one in Messiah Yahshua. (29) And if you belong to Messiah, Then you are Abraham’s offspring, heirs according to promise.’**

The promise was an eternal covenant, which is between YHVH and Abraham and his offspring. The covenant made with Abraham was as recorded in Genesis 17 and especially verse 12: **“And every male among you who is eight days old shall be circumcised throughout your generations, a servant who is born in the house or who is bought with money from any foreigner, who is not of your descendants.”** The conditions of the covenant are recorded in verse 8 of Genesis 17 as follows: **“And I will give to you and to your descendants after you, the land of Canaan, for an everlasting possession; and I will be their Elohim.”** We see therefore that the covenant of circumcision has nothing to do with salvation, but it has to do with living in the land of Canaan.

In addition we read in Roman 6: 1 – 8, **‘What shall we say then? Are we to continue in sin that grace might increase? (2) May it never be! How shall we who died to sin still live in it? (3) Or do you not know that all of us who have been immersed into Messiah Yahshua have been immersed into His death? (4) Therefore we have been buried with Him through immersion into death, in order that as Messiah was raised from the dead through the esteem of the Father, so we too might walk in newness of life. (5) For if we have become united with Him in the likeness of His death, certainly we shall be also in the likeness of His resurrection, (6) knowing this, that our old self was impaled with Him, that our body of sin might be done away with, that we should no longer be slaves to sin; (7) for he who died is freed from sin. (8) Now if we have died with Messiah, we believe that we shall also live with Him.’** Our father in the faith Abraham was circumcised at a very old age. However, we see in his case that he believed YHVH before he was circumcised. This is recorded for us in Genesis 15: 6 as follows: **‘Then he believed in YHVH; and He (YHVH) reckoned it to him (Abram) as righteousness.’** When he was circumcised as a sign of the covenant between him and YHVH, his name was changed to Abraham. Since then all male Israelites and their male children were circumcised at the age of eight days old. Even so, many of us Israelites, who lost our identity as Israel, became like gentiles and stopped circumcising our children, because we believed that the Torah was done away with. In some of our cases, our renewed belief in Yahshua our Messiah also came first.

Rav Shaul, who was personally and privately taught by Yahshua according to Galatians 5: 11 – 12, made it clear that he did not teach circumcision as a requirement for salvation, or as (initially) necessary for new converts. They will eventually, as they attend the synagogues on the Sabbath, learn to obey the Torah teachings of Elohim. We have already learnt that Abraham obeyed the Torah teachings of YHVH well before it was given to Moses on Mount Sinai. We read about this in Genesis 26: 5 as follows: **‘because Abraham obeyed Me and kept My statutes and My commandments, My statutes and my Laws.’** Is this not interesting? Most ministers in Christianity have taught for many years that the Commandments, Statutes and Laws of YHVH, came through Moses, who did not come on the scene until 430 years later. But here the Scriptures says that the Torah was known and practiced by Abraham 430 years before Moses.

The original covenant made with Abraham is the same covenant renewed at Mount Sinai with Moses and the Israelites. The only difference being, that because of sin, the Sacrificial Law practiced by the Levitical Priesthood was added. The only thing that was different is not Torah, but how the administration for the remission of sins was carried out. We continue to read from Genesis 17: 7, 10, and 13, in this way: **“And I will establish My covenant between Me and you and your seed after you in their generations for an**

everlasting covenant, to be Elohim to you and your descendants after you. (10) This is My covenant which you shall keep between Me and you and your descendants after you: Every male child among you shall be circumcised. (13) A servant who is born in your house or who is bought with your money shall surely be circumcised; thus shall My covenant be in your flesh for an everlasting covenant.”

This is rather interesting, because when people speak against circumcision as such, they speak of it as if it originated in the Torah given to and through Moses. However, we know that the covenant between YHVH and Abraham was sealed with a sign of circumcision, 430 years earlier. It had nothing to do with the sacrificial law, as so many who teach against circumcision asserts. Our father Abraham was a man of faith and as Yahshua said to the Jews in John 8: 56 **“Your father Abraham rejoiced to see My day, and he saw it and was glad.”** Abraham a man of faith translated his faith into works as we read in James 2: 21 as follows: **‘Was not Abraham our father justified by works, when he offered up Isaac his son on the altar? Brethren, Abraham heard the gospel and knew the grace of YHVH, even as we did; yet, as we have read before, he obeyed the Torah fully. Abraham and his children were circumcised. Moses and the children of Israel were likewise circumcised. We also know that Yahshua was circumcised on the eighth day after His birth as may be read in Luke 2: 21.**

The sacrificial system was changed and not Torah. Circumcision was never part of the sacrificial system. The book of Hebrews explains this and is a key to understanding the book of Galatians, showing how remission of sin through the payment of debt through animal sacrifices was replaced with justification through the blood of Messiah. This means that anyone who comes to believe in Yahshua as Messiah has to be immersed to receive the promise of the Set-apart Spirit. We know that both Yahshua our Messiah and Rav Shaul, being Jewish were circumcised when they were only eight days old. We also know that both of them were immersed. In Matthew 3: 16 we read: **‘And after being immersed, Yahshua went up immediately from the water; and behold, the heavens were opened, and he saw the Spirit of Elohim descending as a dove, and coming upon Him.’** We also read about Rav Shaul’s immersion in Acts 9: 18 **‘And immediately there fell from his eyes something like scales, and he regained his sight, and he arose and was immersed.’**

Rav Shaul was taught for three years after his immersion, to become one of Yahshua’s apostles. We read about this in Acts 9: 22 – 23 **‘But Saul kept increasing in strength and confounding the Jews who lived at Damascus by proving that this Yahshua is the Messiah. (23) And when many days (three years³²) had elapsed, the Jews plotted together to do away with him.’** In Galatians 1: 1 we read that: **‘Rav Shaul an apostle (not sent from men, nor through the agency of man, but through Yahshua Messiah, and Elohim the Father, who raised Him from the dead).’** It took three years for Rav Shaul to learn the way (or Halacha) that Yahshua taught, even though he was a Jew by birth. The other apostles were similarly taught by Yahshua for about three and a half years, before they were ready to immerse other believers and teach them the Halacha that Yahshua taught them – bearing in mind that they were also mostly Jews by birth and therefore already circumcised.

As Rav Shaul was inspired to write in Romans 2: 25 – 29 **‘For indeed circumcision is of value, if you practice the Law; but if you are a transgressor of the Law, your circumcision has become un-circumcision. (26) If therefore the un-circumcised man keeps the requirements of the Law, will not his un-circumcision be regarded as circumcision? (27) And will not he who is physically un-circumcised, if he keeps the Law, will he not judge you who though having the letter of the Law and circumcision are a transgressor of the Law? (28) For he is not a Jew who is one outwardly; neither is circumcision that which is outward in the flesh. (29) But he is a Jew who is one inwardly; and circumcision is that which is of the heart, by the Spirit, not by the letter; and his praise is not from men, but from Elohim.’** At this time YHVH is calling people out of the darkness of this world into His marvelous light. He is calling us by the word of truth to be first fruits³³ among His creatures, who if we make it into the Kingdom will become kings and priests under Yahshua for a thousand years and into eternity. We read about this in Revelation 5: 10 as follows: **“And Thou hast made them to be a kingdom and priests to our Elohim; and they will reign upon the earth.”** For a second witness to this we read in the last part of Revelation 20: 4, **‘And they came to life and reigned with Messiah for a thousand years.’**

To tie up the loose ends, let’s again read Galatians 5: 1 – 7, as follows: **“It was for freedom that Messiah set us free; therefore keep standing firm and do not be subject again to a yoke of slavery. (2) Behold I, Paul say to you that if you receive circumcision, Messiah will be of no benefit to you. (3) And I testify again to every man who receives circumcision, that he is under obligation to keep the whole Law. (4)**

³² Galatians 1: 17 & 18 (Rav Shaul talking) **‘Nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who were apostles before me; but I went away to Arabia, and returned once more to Damascus. Then three years later I went up to Jerusalem to become acquainted with Cephas, and stayed with him fifteen days.’**

³³ See James 1: 18 **‘In the exercise of His will He brought us forth by the word of truth, so that we might be as it were, the first fruits among His creatures.’**

You have been severed from Messiah, you who are seeking to be justified by law; you have fallen from grace. (5) For we through the Spirit, by faith, are waiting for the hope of righteousness. (6) For in Messiah Yahshua neither circumcision nor un-circumcision means anything, but faith working through love. (7) You were running well; who hindered you from obeying the truth?"

This sounds as if Rav Shaul is saying that anyone who allows himself to be circumcised has lost his salvation. Does it not? However, he is saying that the so-called Judaizers were teaching salvation by works, and not by grace. This is not easily understood. We cannot work for our salvation and yet we cannot be saved without 'works' – which proves our faith. Commandment keeping on its own will not bring salvation. We must also have Yahshua's grace to forgive us our past sins. It takes both – obedience and Yahshua's grace to bring us to salvation. Immediately after the Jerusalem Conference, where circumcision was discussed in Acts 15, we notice that Rav Shaul goes on to have Timothy his disciple circumcised. This is recorded in Acts 16: 1 – 3 as Follows: ***'And he came also to Derbe and to Lystra. And behold, a certain disciple was there, named Timothy, the son of a Jewish woman who was a believer, but his father was a Greek, (2) and he was well spoken of by the brethren who were in Lystra and Iconium. (3) Paul wanted this man to go with him; and he took him and circumcised him because of the Jews who were in those parts, for they all knew that his father was a Greek.'***

Do you believe that Rav Shaul caused Timothy to lose his salvation by having him circumcised? From his writings it appears as if Rav Shaul was against circumcision. However, we see here that he actually upheld the covenant of circumcision. Remember that Rav Shaul's writings about circumcision have been misread, misunderstood and taken out of context, essentially 'giving' him the 'power' to change the Torah, which he never had. He was never supposed to be a 'law giver'³⁴. We find that the anti-law teachers similarly twist Rav Shaul's teachings about the Sabbath, clean food and the annual Set-apart Days. In fact Rav Shaul never spoke against Torah on any of these subjects, despite the many un-learned arguments to the contrary.

Now onto the subject of circumcision of the heart. Immersion is believed by many to be the renewed covenant circumcision – the circumcision of Messiah. We know that this is true, as we have read it earlier in the Scriptures. However, when we look into the Scriptures we find that circumcision of the heart was already mentioned in Deuteronomy 10: 16 as follows: ***"Circumcise then your heart and stiffen your neck no more."*** We read more about this in Deuteronomy 30: 6 as follows: ***"Moreover YHVH your Elohim will circumcise your heart and the heart of your descendants, to love YHVH your Elohim with all your heart and with all your soul, in order that you may live."*** Other scriptures talking about circumcision of the heart may be found in Jeremiah 4: 4 and 9: 26. We who are called during this age and who know that Yahshua is the Rock of our Salvation are according to the teaching in 1 Peter 2: 8 & 9 , a chosen race (the Israel of Elohim), a royal priesthood, a Set-apart Nation, a people for Elohim's own possession.

In Ezekiel 44: 1 we read about the outer gate of the sanctuary, which faces the east and was shut. In verse 2 we read: ***"And YHVH said to me, "This gate shall be shut; it shall not be opened, and no one shall enter by it, for YHVH Elohim of Israel has entered by it; therefore it shall be shut."*** In verse 3 it mentions a prince who shall enter by way of the porch of the gate, and shall go out by the same way. This is a scene from the future when Yahshua will have returned already. We are reminded in verse 9 of Elohim's words, as follows: 'Thus says YHVH Elohim, ***"No foreigner, uncircumcised in heart and uncircumcised in flesh, of all the foreigners who are among the sons of Israel, shall enter My sanctuary.'*** This quote from Ezekiel is a thought provoking end-time prophecy. If we who believe that we are already a kingdom of priests, think we are circumcised in heart, and refuse to be circumcised in the flesh, is that not rebellion? Can we really have a circumcised heart, and refuse the commandment to be circumcised in the flesh? It is only a matter of which comes first. We have seen that Abraham was circumcised in heart, first. His obedience and faith in YHVH preceded his circumcision. But, when YHVH gave him that condition of His promise, saying: ***"And you shall be circumcised in the flesh of your foreskin"***, Abraham didn't argue at all..

From the above we come to the conclusion that all new believers in Yahshua have to be immersed, whether they are Jews or Gentiles. After immersion they have to learn the Torah and to observe all that Yahshua commanded His disciples. It is whilst Gentile believers learn Torah, that they will be taught about the need for male believers to be circumcised as well. They will also learn that as Abraham's offspring they will have to be circumcised as specified in the covenant given in Genesis 17: 10 – 12, bearing in mind that circumcision was never part of the sacrificial system. In addition we know that the covenant between YHVH and Abraham was never abolished.

³⁴ James 4: 12 *'There is only one Lawgiver and Judge, the One who is able to save and to destroy; but who are you who judge your neighbor?'*

The Passover points toward Yahshua's sacrifice to pay the death penalty that we incurred by our law-breaking, as we read in 1 Corinthians. 5: 7 - 8 as follows: ***'Clean out the old leaven that you may be a new lump, just as Messiah our Passover also has been sacrificed. (8) Let us therefore celebrate the feast, not with old leaven, nor with the leaven of malice and wickedness, but with the unleavened bread of sincerity and truth.'*** By His shed blood Yahshua reconciled us to the Father, making it possible for us to have direct access to the throne of YHVH. We believe that repentance; immersion in Yahshua's Name and accepting His sacrifice, constitutes a covenant with YHVH. The terms of which are sealed with the shed blood of Messiah Yahshua and is renewed yearly when we partake of the Passover, as we read in Hebrews 9: 11 - 12 & 15: ***'But when Messiah appeared as a high priest of the good things to come, He entered through the greater and more perfect tabernacle, not made with hands, that is to say, not of this creation; (12) and not through the blood of goats and calves, but through His own blood, He entered the holy place once for all, having obtained eternal redemption. (15) And for this reason He is the mediator of a new covenant, in order that since a death has taken place for the redemption of the transgressions that were committed under the first covenant (Priesthood), those who have been called may receive the promise of the eternal inheritance.'*** Yahshua's Passover during the night that He was betrayed constitutes the new covenant in His blood as we read in 1 Corinthians 11: 23 - 26 (verses 23 and 24 not quoted here): ***'In the same way He took the cup also, after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood; do this as often as you drink it in remembrance of Me."*** (26) ***For as often as you eat this bread and drink the cup, you proclaim Yahshua's death until He comes.'***

As the Non-Jewish part of Israel, most of us were in the wilderness of false doctrines for almost 2000 years since Yahshua our Messiah became our Passover lamb. We have over the past decade (some for three to four decades) returned to the way (Halacha) of YHVH the Elohim of all Israel. We started keeping the Torah teachings of YHVH; by observing the Sabbath, the clean and unclean food laws and the Set-apart Days of YHVH our Elohim. When the Israelites came out of the wilderness they were circumcised, before partaking of the Passover, as we read in Joshua 5: 3 - 5 and 10: ***'So Joshua made himself flint knives and circumcised the sons of Israel at Gibeath-haaraloth (the hill of foreskins). (4) And this is the reason why Joshua circumcised them: all the people who came out of Egypt who were males, all the men of war, died in the wilderness along the way, after they came out of Egypt. (5) For all the people who came out were circumcised, but all the people who were born in the wilderness along the way as they came out of Egypt had not been circumcised.'*** (10) ***'While the sons of Israel camped at Gilgal, they observed the Passover on the evening of the fourteenth day of the month on the desert plains of Jericho.'***

It is at this time also required that we return to the rest of the Torah teachings of YHVH our Elohim: and according to Torah both be circumcised in the heart and the flesh (in preferably that order, for Gentile believers), to partake of Yahshua's Passover - the annual memorial of His death. Jewish believers need to be immersed in Yahshua's saving Name and to learn to observe all that Yahshua commanded His disciples. This is in line with what we read in Romans 2: 9 - 13, as follows: ***'There will be tribulation and distress for every soul of man who does evil, of the Jew first and also of the Greek, (10) but glory and honor and peace to every man who does good, to the Jew first and also to the Greek. (11) For there is no partiality with Elohim. (12) For all who have sinned without the Law will also perish without the Law; and all who have sinned under the Law will be judged by the Law; (13) for not the hearers of the Law are just before Elohim, but the doers of the Law will be justified.'***

Chapter 9 - Do we wear tzitzit?

We are all familiar with Yahshua's words in Matthew 5: 17 – 19, stating (paraphrased) that He did not come to abolish the Torah, but to make it more binding, and that whoever annuls the least of these Commandments, shall be called least in the Kingdom of Elohim, and whoever teaches them, shall be called great in the Kingdom of Elohim. We also know that many in Churchianity teach that the Torah which they refer to as the 10 Commandments, has been abolished. However, when you question them, asking questions like: Is it in order to murder another person? Or, is it in order if someone steals your car or other property? Then you will soon learn that it is only the fourth Commandment; the one about the Sabbath that they believe to be abolished. The Catholic Church altered their version of the Ten Commandments to exclude the second commandment. They still have ten but split the tenth Commandment into two separate Commandments to accomplish this bit of forgery.

Another Commandment disregarded by Churchianity, because of misunderstanding, is the third Commandment. This is the Commandment about the Name of our heavenly Father. We know that the Name of Elohim is very important to Him, as we are assured in Joel 2: 32, ***“And it will come about that whoever calls on the name of YHVH Will be delivered; For on Mount Zion and in Jerusalem there will be those who escape, As YHVH has said, Even among the survivors whom YHVH calls.”*** Jews and Christians both agree that the Name of YHVH should not be used, but their explanations for not using the Name, are completely opposite. Jews maintain that the Name of the Eternal (YHVH) is too sacred to be used, whilst Christians teach that it does not really matter what you call the Creator – since He knows your heart in any event.

However, the truth is: The Torah of Elohim was never abolished, and the Scriptures explicitly say in Isaiah 52: 6, ***“Therefore My people shall know My name; therefore in that day I am the one who is speaking Here I am.”*** Are these two groups, by refusing to use the Name of YHVH, saying that they are not His people? Yahshua's words which we quoted in the beginning from Matthew 5, was what He taught at the beginning of His ministry. He essentially said that the Torah will remain forever – in fact it will be the basis of His rulership during the Millennium and also on into eternity. In the first part of verse 14 of Romans 7, Rav Shaul says: ***‘For we know that the Law is spiritual’*** and from 1 Corinthians 15 we understand that in the end only the Spiritual will survive. According to Revelation 20: 14, even death and Hades (the grave) will be thrown into the lake of fire to be destroyed. If the Torah being spiritual will remain into eternity, we better pay much more attention to it.

In Numbers 15: 15 we read that there is one law for all, whether they are Jews or former Gentiles, as follows: ***‘As for the assembly, there shall be one statute for you and for the alien who sojourns with you, a perpetual statute throughout your generations; as you are, so shall the alien be before YHVH.’*** To a Jewish person, the word Torah simply means the *‘teachings of Elohim’*, also known as the *‘word of Elohim’*. We know that of the 613 laws in the Tanach, not every one applies to each and every one of us. There are laws that apply to farmers – not sow two different kinds of seed together; and not plow with two different types of animals, such as an ox and a donkey at the same time. Certain laws apply to Judges and others apply specifically to ladies. However, the laws that apply to each one of us are for example the Ten Commandments in Exodus 20; the clean and unclean meat laws in Leviticus 11; the laws regarding the weekly and annual Sabbaths in Leviticus 23; circumcision for men; the laws against incest; and the laws against eating fat or blood.

Most of us believe that that is it – there cannot be any more Commandments applicable to us. But, there are many other Commandments which we have not mentioned yet, which we should also obey. We who claim to be part of the commonwealth of Israel by quoting Ephesians 2: 11 – 16, as follows: ***‘Therefore remember, that formerly you, the Gentiles in the flesh, who are called “Uncircumcision” by the so-called “Circumcision,” which is performed in the flesh by human hands – (12) remember that you were at that time separate from Messiah, excluded from the commonwealth of Israel, and strangers to the covenants of promise, having no hope and without Elohim in the world. (13) But now in Messiah Yahshua you, who formerly were far off, have been brought near by the blood of Messiah. (14) For He Himself is our peace who made both groups (Jews and those Israelites who think that they are Gentiles as well as a few genuine Gentiles) into one (Israel), and broke down the barrier of the dividing wall.’*** Also we, who for the same reason, quote Galatians 6: 16, in this way: ***‘And those who walk by this rule,³⁵ peace and mercy be upon them, and upon the Israel of Elohim.’*** If we are indeed part of Israel, then we need to keep all the Laws applicable to all Israel.

³⁵ The rule given in Romans 9: 6 & 7 ***‘But it is not as though the word of Elohim has failed. For they are not all Israel who are descended from Israel; neither are they all children because they are Abraham’s descendants, but “THROUGH ISAAC YOUR DESCENDANTS WILL BE NAMED.”’*** We like Isaac are children of promise (see Galatians 4: 28).

Let us therefore reflect on Elohim's teaching concerning the wearing of tassels or fringes (transliterated as 'tzitzit' in Hebrew). We read about it from Numbers 15: 37 – 40, **'YHVH also spoke to Moses, saying, (38) "Speak to the sons of Israel, and tell them that they shall make for themselves tassels on the corners of their garments throughout their generations, and that they shall put on the tassel of each corner a cord of blue. (39) And it shall be a tassel for you to look at and remember all the commandments of YHVH, so as to do them and not follow after your own heart and your own eyes, after which you played the harlot, (40) in order that you may remember to do all My commandments, and be Set-apart to your Elohim."** These tassels are to be worn to remind us to do all the Commandments of YHVH – that they are Set-apart to Him. A second witness to this Command may be read in Deuteronomy 22: 12, as follows: **"You shall make yourself tassels on the four corners of your garment with which you cover yourself."**

Even so, those of us who come from Churchianity have been taught that we are spiritual and should not hang onto these physical reminders. This is true – we should be spiritual and have faith in Yahshua, as His sacrifice is sufficient to atone for our past sins. However, what about present and future sins? In addition, how spiritual are we really? To determine how spiritual you really are, take the well known pin prick test. Simply take a pin and prick yourself with it – if you feel pain and blood appears at the pinprick, you are definitely not spiritual at all. Also realize that being "Spiritual" does not give us a license to continue to break our Father's Commandments and unless He gives us a clear cut command, that does away with His written words in Torah or changing them in some way, we are taking an enormous risk, if we declare such laws done away with.

The time has come for us to consider the word of Elohim carefully, to see what we do not understand yet. For example: we who keep the Feast Days of Elohim like to quote Zech 14: 16 - 19³⁶ to demonstrate that since it will be mandatory to keep these Feast Days during the millennium, we should also keep them during this age. Ezekiel 44 is another Scriptural reference to the millennium; where we read from verse 18, that part of the priestly attire at that time will be turbans or caps. Churchianity teaches that when you appear before YHVH or a dignity, you must remove your head covering. Yet, when YHVH spoke to Moses in the wilderness, He told Moses to remove his sandals, as the ground that he was standing on was Holy. He did not say to Moses, 'remove your head covering', but his sandals. This event happened before the first Passover, which always occurs in early spring in the northern hemisphere. In other words this was during winter in the wilderness. Most of the middle-eastern dwellers of that time used to wear some sort of a headcovering, be it a turban or a hat to protect their heads from the wind and the midday sun. I am positive that Moses also wore a head covering for protection. We see according to Exodus 29: 9 that the Priests were commanded to wear caps or headgear and that according to Leviticus 21: 10, they were not permitted to uncover their heads.

Those who teach against head-coverings usually quote from 1 Corinthians 11, to confirm their claims. They quote specifically verse 4, to say that men should not cover their heads during prayer and worship services. However, in the Greek from which the Renewed Covenant was (ultimately) translated into English, this verse reads that a man should not have something that *'hangs down over'* his head whilst praying or prophesying, else he disgraces his head. This chapter also instructs women to have something hanging down over their heads during prayer and worship services. In verse 10 the word for covered is *'katakalypto'*, a word that refers to the covering a woman puts on her head, composed of the prefix kata meaning 'down' and kalypto meaning to 'cover'. This means it should be a scarf or veil, not a headband or decorative lint tied into a bow. The verse that those who preach against head-coverings use to validate their argument, is verse 15 of 1 Corinthians 11. But, we see here that Rav Shaul uses a different word in Greek than what he used in the previous few verses. In verse 15 Rav Shaul uses the word *'Peribolaion'*, which refers to the woman's hair as a natural covering. *'Peribolaion'* uses the prefix peri which means around as in the English word perimeter, i.e. the hair serves as a perimeter around the woman's head. This is similar to the Greek word *'peritome'* used to describe the foreskin of a baby boy prior to circumcision on the eighth day after birth. In the same way a woman's hair is a natural covering, but not the only covering spoken about in this section of the Scriptures. The word *'Therefore'* used in verse 10, is Rav Shaul's concluding statement that a woman ought to have a symbol of authority on her head. After Rav Shaul has discussed the need for the head-covering in detail in these verses, he will not shoot himself in the foot by negating in verse 15 what he said in especially verse 10. The head-covering acts as a symbol of authority on the woman's head. By willingly wearing a veil or scarf on her head as a sign of submission, the woman as an ambassador of the Kingdom of Elohim is depicting Elohim's rule on earth.

The question is: Does Rav Shaul teach that men should not wear anything on their heads when praying, at all? Even though that is what it appears like on the surface, if we read the English translation of 1 Corinthians

³⁶ Zech. 14: 16 – 19 says in essence that those of all the nations who will not keep the Feast of Tabernacles, in Jerusalem, during the millennium, will not get any rain – until the next year.

11: 4 & 7 alone. But, does this verse rule out caps or Yarmulka's as worn by us and our Jewish brothers during Sabbath services? I do not think so. In Exodus 28: 40 and 29: 9 YHVH commands that the priests should cover their heads in turbans/caps. In Leviticus (10: 6 and 21: 10) YHVH commands the High Priest not to uncover his head. In addition, the Greek word katakalupto describes something that 'hangs down over' the head, which can definitely not refer to a Yarmulka or a cap. Rav Shaul is merely saying that men should not wear a veil like a woman, when praying or prophesying – which is in line with Deuteronomy 22: 5 where we read: ***“A woman shall not wear man's clothing, nor shall a man put on woman's clothing; for whoever does these things is an abomination to YHVH your Elohim.”*** As YHVH in the flesh Yahshua was not inferior to Elohim, but he emptied himself, taking the form of a man, thus declaring Himself to be under the Authority of YHVH (Philippians 2: 6 - 8). In the same way woman is not inferior to man as a human being, but we read in 1 Corinthians 11 that she is under the authority of her husband. Obviously not all agree with the word of Elohim, as we are told in Jude 4.

Do we who claim to become priests under the Messiah, during the Millennium, refuse to wear head coverings today? In fact we see in both 1 Peter 2: 8 & 9 and Revelation 1: 6 that because we do not stumble over Yahshua, ***“A STONE OF STUMBLING AND A ROCK OF OFFENSE”*** we ***“...are*** (already) ***A CHOSEN RACE, A royal PRIESTHOOD, A HOLY NATION, A PEOPLE FOR ELOHIM'S OWN POSSESSION, that you may proclaim the excellencies of Him who has called you out of darkness into His marvelous light.”*** Since we are already priests, we wear head coverings similar to what the priests in the original covenant did. As priests our wives light candles at least 20 minutes before the Sabbath starts at sunset (Exodus 27: 21). YHVH has decreed that men wear Tzitzit in Numbers 15: 38. In the same way, the word of Elohim has decreed that believers remember Yahshua's death, until He returns in 1 Corinthians 11: 26, and that women have something hanging down over their heads during worship services and prayer. Additional confirmation of the last mentioned, is found in Numbers 5 where the head-covering of a woman suspected of being unfaithful was removed by the priest.

We also see that King David wore a head covering to pray at the summit (or head) of the Mount of Olives, where Elohim was worshipped in 2 Samuel 15: 30 & 32, as follows: ***“And David went up the ascent of the Mount of Olives, and wept as he went, and his head was covered and he walked barefoot. Then all the people who were with him each covered his head and went up weeping as they went. (32) It happened as David was coming to the summit, where Elohim was worshipped, that behold, Hushai the Archite met him with his coat torn, and dust on his head.”*** King David covered his head to pray and so did the people who were with him.

Even so, there are some in our Nazarene Israelite community, who insist, that the custom of wearing a cap (kippah)/turban, comes from Babylon. King David wore a head covering whilst praying, and we know for a fact that he was never in captivity in Babylon. So are these people correct in their assumption? I don't think so. In addition, we know that Daniel and his three friends, Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego were some of the Jewish people who were definitely in captivity in Babylon. Did they perhaps get the custom of wearing head coverings from Babylon? Again I do not think so. In fact Daniel's three friends were thrown into a furnace of fire, because they were defying king Nebuchadnezzar, by not worshipping the golden image that he set up – See Daniel 3: 21. They were thrown into the fire with all their customary clothing on, which included their caps. So do not tell me that these Jews who were in defiance of king Nebuchadnezzar learnt to wear head coverings in Babylon.

The wearing of caps came from Israel, before these men were taken to Babylon. In fact we see that Yahshua joined the three men in the fire because in verse 25 the high official answered the king, saying that he saw four men walking about in the midst of the fire without harm and the appearance of the fourth man was like a son of the gods. Even though it does not say so in Daniel, I believe that Yahshua also had some sort of head covering on in the fire, similar to the ones worn by Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego.

Preposterous you say? I do not think so. In Zechariah 3 the prophet sees a vision of Joshua the high priest. In verse 3 he sees that Joshua was clothed with filthy garments and standing before the Angel. This is really a reference to Yahshua, who according to Galatians 3: 13 has redeemed us from the curse of the law: having become a curse for us – for it is written, ***“Cursed is everyone who hangs on a tree.”*** Yahshua became dirty with our sin and was cursed on our behalf. In verse 5 of Zechariah 3, we read that a clean turban is put on His head. In verse 8 we read a reference about 'the Branch' who we know refers to Yahshua. In Zechariah 6: 11 we see it talks about Joshua again and in verses 12 – 13 we read about the Branch who will build the Temple of YHVH and who will have two offices, namely, that of both King and Priest. We know that kings wear crowns and a High Priest wears a turban. So yes our KING and High Priest Yahshua will certainly wear some sort of a head covering in the millennium kingdom. Yahshua has qualified to be our High Priest as may be read about in Hebrews 7: 24 –28.

There are a few more commandments mentioned in Deuteronomy 6: 4 – 9 which are applicable to all, as follows: ***“Hear, O Israel! YHVH is our Elohim YHVH is one! (5) And you shall love YHVH your Elohim with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your might. (6) And these words, which I am commanding you today, shall be on your heart; (7) and you shall teach them diligently to your sons and shall talk of them when you sit in your house and when you walk by the way and when you lie down and when you rise up. (8) And you shall bind them as a sign on your hand and they shall be as frontals on your forehead. (9) And you shall write them on the doorposts of your house and on your gates.”*** Do we teach this (known as the Sh'ma) to our children? If not, why not? Is it perhaps because we believe that since the birth of the Messiah this is no longer valid, because those who believe in a twinity allege that He is a second, but lesser YHVH? We know that this is not true, because when Yahshua was asked by one of the scribes in Mark 12: 30, ***‘What command is the foremost of all?’*** He answered as recorded in verses 29 – 30, as follows: ***“The foremost is, ‘HEAR, O ISRAEL! YHVH OUR ELOHIM IS ONE; (30) AND YOU SHALL LOVE YHVH YOUR ELOHIM WITH ALL YOUR HEART, AND WITH ALL YOUR SOUL, AND WITH ALL YOUR MIND, AND WITH ALL YOUR STRENGTH.”*** In addition He said in John 10: 30 ***“I and the Father are one.”*** Which is in agreement with what YHVH himself said in Isaiah 43: 10 & 11, as follows: ***“You are My witnesses, ”declares YHVH, “And My servant whom I have chosen, In order that you may know and believe Me, And understand that I am He. Before Me there was no Elohim formed, And there will be none after Me. I, even I, am YHVH; And there is no savior besides Me.”***

Do we bind the Sh'ma on our hands and on our foreheads (using tefillin)? The lesson of tefillin is very important, as it teaches the believer that he must dedicate both his heart and his mind in service to YHVH. The point is; even if we do not choose to don tefillin at this stage, we will be able to benefit from the message of it: The heart is the source of our passions or desires, whereas the mind is the source of our intellect. Human nature tempts us to give free reign to our passions and then to create intellectual justifications for succumbing to them. This is why the Law requires us to don the arm tefillin before the forehead tefillin. The box on the arm is opposite to the heart, teaching us to channel our passions to YHVH and only then may we dedicate our intellect to Him. It further teaches that we should do Torah first and then learn it. Do we write the Sh'ma on the doorposts of our homes (contained in Mezuzahs)? The Mezuzah is to remind us that we ought to keep the Torah every time when we enter our homes. It also tells outsiders that the residents are Torah observant, believing in YHVH the one and only Elohim. Even so, be aware that a Mezuzah does not protect our homes, as some believe.

Continuing to read from Acts 7: 42 we see that Elohim has given Israel over to worship the host of heaven, as follows: ***“But Elohim turned away and delivered them up to serve the host of heaven; as it is written in the book of the prophets, ‘IT WAS NOT TO ME THAT YOU OFFERED VICTIMS AND SACRIFICES FORTY YEARS IN THE WILDERNESS, WAS IT, O HOUSE OF ISRAEL?’”*** The footnote against verse 42 in ***“The Scriptures”*** (a Bible published by the Institute for Scriptural Research in Johannesburg, South Africa) reads: ***‘Because they would not obey Mosheh who had received the living words v39.’*** The worship of the host of heaven is confirmed in Revelation 12: 1, where it talks about the woman, which is symbolic of the religious systems of the world, or Israel, and in this case can mean both; clothed with the sun, the moon and the stars, in this way: ***‘And a great sign appeared in heaven: a woman clothed with the sun, and the moon under her feet, and on her head a crown of twelve stars.’***

However, talking specifically about Judah in verse 1 of Jeremiah 17, we read: ***‘The sin of Judah is written down with an iron stylus; with a diamond point it is engraved upon the tablet of their heart, and on the horns of their altars.’*** What does this mean? Because of the severe treatment that the Jewish nation suffered throughout the ages, their sins are written in their hearts and they are fearful of YHVH. In an effort not to suffer punishment, they keep Torah because of this fear: It is (in my opinion) due to this fear that during the Babylonian captivity, the Priests of Judah decided to change the vowel-pointing(s) of the name of the Almighty, so that it is now pronounced as *‘Adonai’*. This was done primarily to prevent the gentile nations from blaspheming the name of the Elohim of Israel. Prior to the captivity, His Name was freely used in worship services, but the religious leaders in Judah have in addition to the above reason, adopted the Babylonian tradition, whereby the names of their deities were said to be in-effable (un-pronounceable): The name of the Almighty could only be used by the High Priest during Atonement and the rest of the people were not permitted to use the name at all. This was initially done, to put an end to the pagan nations blaspheming the name of YHVH, but because of the Babylonian influence the religious leaders went too far, and might have misguided the nation of Judah regarding the name.

On the other hand the first two verses of Malachi 2, has been misunderstood by many Nazarene Israelite and like minded believers to be about not using false names and titles like *‘the Lord’* and *‘G-d’*. However, it has to do with honoring the name of YHVH, rather than using His name. We read in Exodus 20: 7, ***“You shall not take the name of YHVH your Elohim in vain, for YHVH your Elohim will not leave him unpunished who takes His name in vain.”*** The Hebrew word for vain is *‘shavah’*, meaning to bring to nothing. It does

however not mean that we are not allowed to use the name of YHVH at all – in fact it means just the opposite, since misspelling the name does in fact bring it to nothing.

Even so, when we use the name of YHVH we better make sure that we honor it: We honor the name of YHVH, by not twisting The Scriptures to fit the doctrines of men, such as Xmas and Easter, or by claiming that praying over any food in His name, renders such food clean. This is exactly what some claim the first book of Timothy is saying in Chapter 4: 4, to justify their eating of unclean food, in this way: ***‘For everything created by Elohim is good, and nothing is to be rejected, if it is received with gratitude;’*** Such people usually stop quoting the Scriptures at verse 4. However, notice the punctuation mark at the end of verse 4 shows that the sentence is incomplete and that we need to read the next verse as well, to fully understand the significance of this passage of The Scriptures. We continue accordingly in verse 5 of first Timothy 4, as follows: ***‘for it is sanctified by means of the word of Elohim and prayer.’*** We know that YHVH has set-apart food considered clean for human consumption in both Leviticus 11 and Deuteronomy 14. So unless the food that we are receiving with prayer and gratitude is clean according to these Scriptures, we may pray over it as much as we like, it will not become clean and by eating such unclean food even after praying for it to become clean, will be dishonoring the name of YHVH. Similarly will praying in the name of YHVH at a feast not ordained by YHVH, be dishonoring His name.

However, as a result of their fearfulness, the religious Jews keep the laws of YHVH to what outsiders might call a *‘pharisaical extent’*, nevertheless, they are even now keeping it, and have not like the lost ten tribes, forgotten the Torah of Elohim. That is also why we can know with certainty, that they have the oracles of Elohim, as is confirmed in Romans 3: 1 - 4. That is also why we read in Zechariah 8: 23, ***“Thus says YHVH of hosts, ‘In those days ten men (the latter day ten lost tribes) from all the nations will grasp the garment of a Jew saying, “Let us go with you, for we have heard that Elohim is with you.””*** At this point in time YHVH has blinded our Jewish brothers to the identity of Messiah (as per Romans 11: 32), but at His return on Yom Teruah (also known as Rosh Hashana), He will open their eyes, and they will see Him whom we (including them) have pierced (as per Zechariah 12: 10). They will repent and recognize Yahshua as their Master and Savior; then all Israel, including the remnant of the lost ten tribes who are being called at this time, will be saved (as per Romans 11: 25 & 26). However, the engraving of their sins on their heart had the opposite effect to the New Covenant, where the Law will be written on the hearts of believers, so that they will want to keep it, out of love for YHVH. Our motive, as well as those who keep Torah because of fear, will change, and we will all obey, because we love YHVH and His ways, from our hearts.

Everything that our Father does, He does with a purpose. YHVH is our creator and as we read in the book of Malachi, He decides to whom He shows favor and to whom not. We read in Malachi 1: 2 – 4, ***“‘I have loved you,” says YHVH. But you say “How hast Thou loved us?” “Was not Esau Jacob’s brother?” declares YHVH. “Yet I have loved Jacob; (3) but I have hated Esau, and I have made his mountains desolation, and appointed his inheritance for the jackals of the wilderness.” (4) Though Edom says, “We have been beaten down, but we will return and build up the ruins”; thus says YHVH of hosts, “They may build, but I will tear down; and men will call them the wicked territory, and the people toward whom YHVH is indignant forever.”*** The same thought is resumed in Malachi 2, where reading from verses 2 to 17 we can deduce that YHVH has chosen the nation of Judah, to be the defender of the covenant that He made with Levi, concerning His Feast Days. We read in verse 10: ***“Do we not all have one father? Has not one Elohim created us? Why do we deal treacherously each against his brother so as to profane the covenant of our fathers?”***

The note alongside this verse in the New American Standard Bible refers us to Isaiah 63: 16, which states: ***‘For Thou art our Father though Abraham does not know us, And Israel does not recognize us. Thou, O YHVH, art our Father, Our Redeemer from of old is Thy name.’*** This undoubtedly has to do with the way we are dealing with Judah (and the other way round). In verse 11 of Malachi 2, YHVH tells us through Malachi that Judah, like her sister Israel, has dealt treacherously towards Him. In verse 12 & 13 of Malachi we read: ***“As for the man who does this, may YHVH cut off from the tents of Jacob everyone who awakes and answers, or who presents an offering to YHVH of hosts. (13) And this is another thing you do: you cover the altar of YHVH with tears, with weeping and with groaning, because He no longer regards the offering or accepts it with favor from your hand.”*** We see here, YHVH saying that everyone who awakes and answers (those who wake up to the truth and who answer His call - the first fruits³⁷), or who presents an offering to YHVH of hosts (those keeping His Set-apart Days), deals treacherously against his brother, shall be cut off from the tents of Jacob (the people of Elohim). Malachi likens it to a man who has dealt treacherously with the wife of his youth. In verse 16 YHVH tells us that He hates divorce and him who

³⁷ In James 1: 18 we read that: *‘In the exercise of His (Elohim’s) will He brought us forth by the word of truth, so that we might be, as it were, the first fruits among His creatures.’*

covers his garment with wrong. We know from Jeremiah 3: 8 that YHVH divorced Israel because of all her adulteries, and even though Judah followed Israel in her harlotry, YHVH did not divorce Judah for her deeds.

Continuing in verse 17 of Malachi 2, we read: ***‘You have wearied YHVH with your words. Yet you say, “How have we wearied Him?” In that you say, “Everyone who does evil is good in the sight of YHVH, and He delights in them,” or “Where is the Elohim of justice?”’*** What is the gist of Malachi 2? Reading between the lines, we can conclude that it has to do with believers who assume that even though the Scriptures affirm Judah to be the custodians of the Oracles of Elohim; it does not hold water any longer, as they have also profaned the sanctuary of Elohim. Such believers have consequently, decided to determine the ‘correct’ timing for their feasts (and in some cases when the Sabbath starts) from guidelines found in the Scriptures rather than to follow the calculated calendar that the Jews observe. Malachi 2 also declares that by so doing, these called out believers are questioning Elohim’s judgment, inferring that He delights in those who do evil in His sight. Malachi argues that since YHVH is our creator, He like a master potter has the right to decide our destiny. YHVH accordingly states in verse 9 of Malachi 2: ***“So I also have made you despised and abased before all the people, just as you are not keeping My ways, but are showing partiality in the instruction.”*** The question that we need to answer is: How long are we going to deal treacherously with brother Judah? When we learn to obey the word of Elohim, we will also stop corrupting Elohim’s covenant with Levi. The Scriptures contain all the information we require to exist and respond to YHVH in an acceptable way. All we need to do is follow His teachings, instead of that of men. We need to be mindful of Yahshua’s words in Matthew 22: 14, saying: ***“For many are called, but few are chosen.”***

Let’s get back to the fact that YHVH divorced Israel. The problem is: although our past sins have been forgiven, because of the law of divorce and remarriage, we are still divorced from YHVH. We read accordingly the Scriptures what the law says concerning divorce and remarriage³⁸, in Deuteronomy 24: 1 – 4: (1) ***“When a man takes a wife, and marries her, and it happens that she find no favor in his eyes because he has found some indecency in her, and he writes her a certificate of divorce and puts it in her hand and sends her out from his house, (2) and she leaves his house and goes and becomes another man’s wife, (3) and if the latter husband turns against her and writes her a certificate of divorce and puts it in her hand and sends her out of his house, or if the latter husband dies who took her to be his wife, (4) then her former husband who sent her away is not allowed to take her again to be his wife, since she has been defiled; for that is an abomination before YHVH, and you shall not bring sin on the land which YHVH your Elohim gives you as an inheritance.”*** Once Israel was divorced from YHVH, He dispersed them throughout the nations; eventually sifting our forefathers throughout the whole of the world. When Yahshua walked the earth, the northern kingdom (Ephraim) had been in dispersion for many years, inter-mixing with the nations and thus becoming a multitude of nations. It is important to understand this, to understand the significance of Yahshua’s work on the execution stake in relation to our betrothal to Him.

Rav Shaul wrote in Romans 6: 23, ***“For the wages of sin is death, but the free gift of Elohim is eternal life in Yahshua Messiah our Master.”*** He continued in Romans 7: 1 – 4 as follows: (1) ***“Or do you not know, brethren (for I am speaking to those who know the law), that the law has jurisdiction over a person as long as he lives? (2) For the married woman is bound by law to her husband while he is living; but if her husband dies, she is released from the law concerning the husband. (3) So then if, while her husband is living, she is joined to another man, she shall be called an adulteress; but if her husband dies, she is free from the law, so that she is not an adulteress, though she is joined to another man. (4) Therefore, my brethren, you also were made to die to the law through the body of Messiah, that you might be joined to another, to Him who was raised from the dead, that we might bear fruit for Elohim.”*** Rav Shaul was not saying that we are dead to Torah, but that the penalty which the law (of divorce and remarriage) requires, has been fulfilled. Messiah died, and since we died in Him, when we were immersed in water in His name, He is free to remarry us again. This is why His final words on the execution stake were as recorded in John 19: 30, in this way: ***“It is finished”*** – ‘Kalah’ in Hebrew, which also means ***“My Bride”*** – meaning now I am free to remarry My Bride.

To get back to the original question: What is the purpose for wearing tassels? We read in Numbers 15: 39 that it is worn to remind us to obey the Commandments of Elohim. Are we going to show our love to our Father by our deeds – are we going to start wearing tassels and do whatever else we are commanded? Are those who are not circumcised yet, going to make the necessary arrangements to have it done?

³⁸ This is not talking about people who divorced before they were called into the truth. YHVH forgave your past mistakes. But realize, that if you remarried after you were called, that it is till death do you part.

Chapter 10 - Born again?

Only a few people today, understand that the fact that being born again is directly linked to the gospel of the coming Kingdom of Elohim. This was also true in the time of Yahshua and as much as Nicodemus did not understand when Yahshua spoke to him in John 3: 3, saying: ***“Truly, truly, I say to you, unless one is born again, he cannot see the Kingdom of Elohim.”***, most people have not ever and do not even now, understand the meaning of these words. How many today know that the Gospel that Yahshua preached was not a message about His life, death and resurrection, as many claim, but about the coming Kingdom of Elohim. Ask yourself: Why have these truths never been understood by most people in the world? The reason is that the spiritual leaders of Yahshua’s time rejected it and because Christianity distorted and maligned it so much, that the whole world has been deceived and totally misunderstands it.

The good news about the Kingdom of Elohim is as Yahshua preached, after His temptation by Satan in the wilderness, as we read from Mark 1: 14 & 15, in this way: ***‘And after John had been taken into custody, Yahshua came into Galilee, preaching the gospel of Elohim, (15) and saying, “The time is fulfilled, and the Kingdom of Elohim is at hand; repent and believe in the gospel.”*** The question is: What did Yahshua mean by the Kingdom of Elohim? We know that a kingdom is usually made up of a nation, ruled by a king. We read in the Tanach how the children of Israel became the Kingdom of Israel, under king Saul. In a similar way to what the ancient Kingdom of Israel was made up of the human children of Israel, so the Kingdom of Elohim will be made up of spiritual born children of Elohim. Even so, what does this have to do with being born again? It is vitally important that we get to know the answer to this question. It is also necessary that we find out every thing possible about it, since we now know, that only spirit begotten children of Elohim will one day be the born again into His Kingdom, also known as the Israel of Elohim.

The prophet Daniel prophesied about the Kingdom of Elohim after telling king Nebuchadnezzar about the major kingdoms of the world, starting with the Babylonian Empire in Daniel 2: 44, as follows: ***“And in the days of those kings the Elohim of heaven will set up a kingdom which will never be destroyed, and that kingdom will not be left for another people; it will crush and put to an end all these kingdoms, but it will itself endure forever.”*** It is important to understand from what Daniel is saying here that the coming Kingdom of Elohim will be a world ruling kingdom. Daniel further clarifies the connection between being born again and the coming Kingdom of Elohim, in verses 17 & 18 of Daniel 7, in this way: ***‘These great beasts, which are four in number, are four kings who will arise from the earth. (18) But the saints of the Highest One (the called out ones) will receive the kingdom and possess the kingdom forever, for all ages to come.’*** The word saints, as used here, simply mean believers; so we see that this section of the Scriptures informs us that these believers will have become immortal, to possess the Kingdom of Elohim forever.

Reading from Revelation 11: 15, we see that the coming Kingdom of Elohim will be ushered in at the return of Yahshua our Messiah, as follows: ***“And the seventh angel sounded; and there arose loud voices in heaven saying, “The kingdom of the world has become the kingdom of YHVH and His Messiah; and He will reign forever and ever.”*** Despite this and many other clear Scriptural witnesses about the Kingdom of Elohim, Satan and his deceived agents, in the form of false religious leaders, have deceived people to believe that the Kingdom of Elohim is something to be established in their hearts. Groups believing in the coming Kingdom of Elohim only started proclaiming the same, since the previous century. The reason why this message has not been proclaimed before requires that we reflect on the ancient history of mankind and before. Whereas it was never trendy to talk about the existence of Satan, the Scriptures emphasize his existence extensively. It is important for us to understand that in the beginning the earth was ruled by Elohim. We see further from Acts 3: 20 & 21, that the Government of Elohim will again be set-up when Messiah returns, as follows: ***“and that He may send Yahshua, the Messiah appointed for you, (21) whom heaven must receive until the period of restoration of all things about which Elohim spoke by the mouth of His Set-apart prophets from ancient time.”*** But, what is puzzling at this time is: Why can’t we have Elohim’s Government right now? And why has it come to an end?

For the answers to these questions, we need to go right back to the very beginning of creation. When Elohim created the universe including the earth at the very beginning, it was perfect and extremely beautiful, so much so that the angels shouted for joy, as we read from Job 38: 7, ***‘When the morning stars sang together, and all the sons of Elohim shouted for joy?’*** Right from the start YHVH planned to create beings that could become his ‘helpers’. He planned for these helpers or ‘children’, to eventually become like Him, in every respect. Over time they would have His character reproduced in them by His Set-apart Spirit. At first Elohim started His plan by creating spiritual beings called angels. They were free moral agents, with the ability to choose between right and wrong, and for many years these angels followed Elohim’s instructions in exact detail. But, one day, a third of them followed the archangel Lucifer in rebellion against Elohim, when he decided to take over the throne of Elohim in the third heaven. They fought against the other two thirds of the angels, who remained loyal to Elohim, but, were defeated and thrown down to earth, where they now reside

as fallen angels or demons. These angels, who are spirit beings, sinned with full knowledge and as a result could not change once they decided to follow a life of wrongdoing. We read consequently from Isaiah 14: 12 – 14, **“How you have fallen from heaven, O star of the morning, son of the dawn! You have been cut down to the earth, you who have weakened the nations! (13) But you said in your heart, ‘I will ascend to heaven; I will raise my throne above the stars of Elohim, and I will sit on the mount of the assembly in the recesses of the north. (14) I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will make myself like the Most High.”** This universe-wide rebellion by Satan and his demons resulted in the destruction and chaos of the surface of the earth and the rest of the planets, to the condition we find the earth in before YHVH re-created it in Genesis 1: 2.

At that time Elohim decided not to create his future children as spirit beings again. Instead He decided to initially create us from physical matter, in His image with creative mind power to think, make decisions, and plan our lives. Again He gave us free moral agency to decide between good and evil. Elohim’s intention was that He wanted us to prove throughout our lives, that we would develop His perfect character and follow His way of life. But, we know that induced by Satan’s lies and temptation our forefathers Adam and Eve sinned. After Yahshua’s immersion by John the Immerser, He was also tempted by Satan as we read from Mark 1: 12 & 13, as follows: **“And immediately the Spirit impelled Him to go out into the wilderness. (13) And He was in the wilderness forty days being tempted by Satan; and He was with the beasts, and the angels were ministering to Him.”** Yahshua came to qualify to replace Satan as the ruler of Elohim’s Government on the earth. But He also had to go through temptation by Satan, in a similar way that Adam and Eve was tempted, but the difference is, that He did not sin.

This is why we read, that immediately after qualifying to become the managerial administrator of Elohim’s Government on earth, Yahshua started preaching the gospel about the coming Kingdom of Elohim, as we read from Mark 1: 14 & 15, **‘And after John had been taken into custody, Yahshua came into Galilee, preaching the gospel of Elohim, (15) and saying, “The time is fulfilled, and the Kingdom of Elohim is at hand; repent and believe in the gospel.”** Again this leaves us with the following questions: How was the time fulfilled? And why was the Kingdom of Elohim at hand then, and not earlier? The answer is simple; the gospel could not be announced before Yahshua qualified to replace Satan as the earth’s ruler. But, contrary to what some thought at that time, it was not Elohim’s intention, for Yahshua to take over the rulership right there and then. YHVH is dealing with mankind over 7000 years. During the first 6000 years, He is allowing us to experiment with different forms of government; culture; education and religion, thereby letting us see for ourselves, that living life free of His leadership only leads to failure.

In addition, Yahshua is coming to set-up a world ruling government with administrators consisting of qualified, experienced kings and priests. Mankind has proven during the past 6000 years that under the influence of Satan, we are incapable of solving our day-to-day problems, let alone ruling ourselves. The governments of the world have proven over the past 6000 years that they cannot ensure peace and prosperity for their citizens. However, they stubbornly refuse to admit their failures, even at this late stage. They are hopelessly trying to work for world peace and to solve the fast changing climatic conditions resulting in global warming and natural disasters! That my friends, is exactly the reason why we need to be born again.

But, as mentioned before, the term ‘born again’ has been misunderstood by the most people. For lack of an appropriate word, Elohim’s Government will be a ‘Spiritual Government’, by fully converted, Torah observing believers, who will be changed into Spirit beings, at Yahshua’s return. Those born again of Elohim’s Set-apart Spirit will be spirit beings, as much as those born of a human father are human beings. They will be born again at the first resurrection and as immortal beings will enter the Kingdom of Elohim. This is as Yahshua told Nicodemus; flesh and blood cannot inherit the Kingdom of Elohim, as we must be born again as spirit beings to enter. Elohim’s plan of salvation requires that we, who were severed from Him because of sin, be reconciled to Him, through the penalty that Yahshua paid, by dying on our behalf. Subsequently to dying for us, He was resurrected so that we may receive Elohim’s gift of the Set-apart Spirit, as a deposit with a view to Eternal life. Yahshua ascended to the third heaven to become our High Priest, during which time we are being trained and developed, as fellow heirs of Elohim to assist Yahshua in the administration of Elohim’s Government. According to the parable of the nobleman in Luke 19, Yahshua went to heaven to receive the Kingdom, before He will return to rule us from Jerusalem. Whilst Yahshua was on earth, His disciples and others could not understand why He could not set-up the Kingdom of Elohim at that time.

Similarly the Jewish leaders in Yahshua’s time expected Him to take over the rulership of the world, as prophesied about Him in Numbers 24: 17, in this way: **“I see him, but not now; I behold him but not near; A star shall come forth from Jacob, and a scepter shall rise from Israel, and shall crush through the forehead of Moab, and tear down all the sons of Sheth** (the footnote against this name reads: i.e. tumult).” Nicodemus a Pharisee who believed in Yahshua came to Him in private; because he and other Pharisees understood Yahshua’s message about the Kingdom of Elohim and that it will replace all human governments. Even so, they feared because Yahshua, a Jew like them, was proclaiming the Kingdom of Elohim: They

thought that He was planning to overthrow Roman rule immediately, which could result in them losing their power and perhaps be put to death for threatening to overthrow the government. That is why Yahshua clearly stated that the Kingdom of Elohim is not of this world, but of the world that is to come. The reason is, that it will not be made up of flesh and blood human beings, but of immortal spirit beings. We should not forget that Yahshua told Nicodemus that unless a man is born again from above, he cannot enter the Kingdom of Elohim. Nicodemus did not understand what Yahshua meant, witnessed by his question in John 3: 4, **“How can a man be born when he is old? He cannot enter a second time into his mother’s womb and be born, can he?”** He obviously knew what it meant to be born as a little baby, but he did not understand the concept of being born again. Yahshua showed clearly that the Kingdom of Elohim will not be something which we as flesh and blood human beings could enter, but confirmed that if we are born again one day, we may enter.

To further explain the subject, about being born again, let’s compare it with the birth of a human baby: When a baby is born, it is delivered from its mother’s womb into this world. Similarly will a person being born again of the Spirit be delivered into the Kingdom of Elohim, at the resurrection of the dead. Rav Shaul explained in 1 Corinthians 15: 47 - 52 that even though we are presently flesh and blood beings, we will be changed into spirit beings when we are born again, as follows: **“The first man is from earth, earthy; the second man is from heaven. (48) As is the earthy, so also are those who are earthy; and as is the heavenly, so also are those who are heavenly. (49) And just as we have borne the image of the earthy, we shall also bear the image of the heavenly. (50) Now I say this, brethren, that flesh and blood cannot inherit the Kingdom of Elohim; nor does the perishable inherit the imperishable. (51) Behold, I tell you a mystery; we shall not all sleep, but we shall all be changed, (52) in a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, at the last trumpet; for the trumpet will sound, and the dead will be raised imperishable, and we shall be changed.”**

We see from verse 53 of 1 Corinthians how this change will come about: **“For this perishable must put on the imperishable, and this mortal must put on immortality.”** We will only inherit eternal life in the Kingdom of Elohim, after the first resurrection. We continue in the second part of Romans 8: 9, where we read: **‘But if anyone does not have the Spirit of Messiah, he does not belong to Him.’** It is only by immersion into Yahshua’s saving name (as per Acts 2: 38) and after the laying on of hands by the elders (as per Acts 8: 12 – 16) that we receive a portion of Elohim’s Set-apart Spirit. The Set-apart Spirit entering us could be compared to a sperm cell impregnating an ovum, thereby giving us spiritual life, later to be born again as a spirit being. A fertilized ovum is not yet a born human being; at conception life is passed on from the human father (in other words the father has begotten a new life), but at that point neither the embryo nor the fetus is ready to be born as a person yet. In similar manner a spirit begotten human is not a Spirit being yet. But, we are told in Romans 8: 11, **‘But if the Spirit of Him who raised Yahshua from the dead dwells in you, He who raised Messiah Yahshua from the dead will also give life to your mortal bodies through His Spirit who indwells you.’** So it is clear, there is a direct comparison between being born of the flesh, and being born again of Elohim.

After a human father has impregnated an egg cell from the mother, the father has begotten the child, but the child remains in the mother’s womb for the gestation period of nine months before it is delivered into this world. In the same way, the process of being born again begins when Elohim gives us a portion of His Set-apart Spirit after immersion, and the laying on of hands. The Set-apart Spirit from the Father combines with the spirit of man (in us) and we are begotten anew, to be born again as spirit beings, when we are resurrected (or changed if we remain alive) at Yahshua’s return. The human mother’s womb serves the function of feeding the unborn child with physical food, so that it may develop and grow physically. After immersion, we also need to grow in grace and knowledge and are fed Spiritual food by those whom YHVH called into discipleship, before us. It is through the guidance of the Set-apart Spirit that our teachers feed us Spiritual food, but, it is important for us to make sure that what they teach us, comes from The Scriptures.

We are told in Ephesians 4: 11 – 15 that after Yahshua’s ascension: **‘(And) He (Yahshua) gave some as apostles, and some as prophets, and some evangelists and some as pastors and teachers, (12) for the equipping of the Set-apart ones (Set-apart by the Set-apart Spirit) for the work of service, to the building up of the body of Messiah; (13) until we all attain to the unity of the faith, and of the knowledge of the Son of Elohim, to a mature man, to the measure of the stature which belongs to the fullness of Messiah. (14) As a result, we are no longer to be children, tossed here and there by waves, and carried about by every wind of doctrine, by the trickery of men, by craftiness in deceitful scheming; (15) but speaking the truth in love, we are to grow up in all aspects into Him, who is the head, even Messiah.’** At Messiah’s return, those of us who died in Messiah will be resurrected, after which those believers, who are still alive, will be changed into Spirit begotten children of Elohim. Yahshua, who is the first born of many brethren, came to show us the way. We read accordingly from Romans 8: 29, **“For whom He foreknew, He also predestined to become conformed to the image of His Son, that He might**

be the first-born among many brethren.” He led the way, thus setting us the example that we too may be born of Elohim.

We see according to Philippians 3: 20 & 21 that when we are resurrected (or changed) one day, we will become like Yahshua, as follows: ***‘For our citizenship is in heaven, from which also we eagerly wait for a Savior, the Master Yahshua Messiah; (21) who will transform the body of our humble state into conformity with the body of His esteem, by the exertion of the power that He has even to subject all things to Himself.’*** The Scriptures confirm that being born again is a process, involving a time element, as much as being born as a human being involves a gestation period. When YHVH begets us with His Set-apart Spirit, we become His children, but we are still human. In similar fashion, when a human father begets a child, the unborn child is already his child. So after immersion we are already children of Elohim, but we still require a period of time (similar to the gestation period) to grow and develop spiritually, but are not born again yet. As a human embryo must grow till it becomes a fetus, and then grow to the point of being born into the human family, so a new believer, who was immersed into Yahshua’s name and in whom spiritual life has been started, must grow toward perfection to be born again as a child of Elohim.

Rav Kepha gives an analogy of this in 1 Peter 1: 23 - 25 saying: ***‘for you have been born again not of seed which is perishable but imperishable, that is, through the living and abiding word of Elohim. (24) For “ALL FLESH IS LIKE GRASS, AND ALL ITS GLORY LIKE THE FLOWER OF GRASS, THE GRASS WITHERS, AND THE FLOWER FALLS OFF, (25) BUT THE WORD OF YHVH ABIDES FOREVER.” And this is the word which was preached to you.’*** Rav Kepha continues in verse 2 of chapter 2, saying: ***‘like newborn babes, long for the pure milk of the word, that by it you may grow in respect to salvation.’*** He compared the Spiritual gestation period of a true believer with that of a newborn baby, simply, because at that time, without ultra sound scans and the like, it was not easy to compare it to a physical embryo and fetus. He showed that similar to the way in which a new born baby has to be nurtured to grow physically, so must new believers grow spiritually (as we see from 2 Peter 3: 18). However, when we are born again one day, we shall not be helpless spiritual babies, but perfect spirit beings incapable to sin.

We have the gift of the Set-apart Spirit within us, but like a human embryo or fetus, we could still lose eternal life and be aborted. Abraham and our fathers in the faith were like us also begotten of Elohim; they had Elohim’s Spirit within them, but have not yet been born again, as we read in Hebrews 11: 39 & 40, as follows: ***‘And all these (talking about Abraham, Isaac and Jacob), having gained approval through their faith, did not receive what was promised, (40) because Elohim had provided something better for us, so that apart from us, they should not be made perfect.’*** Yahshua was indeed the first to be born of Elohim; the first born of many brethren. That was His second birth, as the resurrection will be ours and that of our fathers in the faith. When Yahshua returns one day, all those who will be in the first resurrection (or those alive at His return that will be changed) will be born again, at the same time. Our flesh and blood bodies will be changed and made like Yahshua in His glorified body.

Those who will be in the first resurrection, will be born of the Spirit and as Yahshua said in Matthew 22: 30, ***‘For in the resurrection they neither marry, nor are given in marriage, but are like angels in heaven.’*** Marriage is decidedly a physical fleshly union. In the Kingdom of Elohim, when we are born again of the Set-apart Spirit, we will be composed of spirit, not flesh. Yahshua did not say that we will be angels, but will be like them, composed of Spirit. Angels were created spirit beings, not begotten and born of Elohim, as the children of Elohim, as is confirmed by Yahshua in Luke 20: 34 – 36, in this way: ***‘And Yahshua said to them, “The sons of this age marry and are given in marriage, (35) but those who are considered worthy to attain to that age and the resurrection from the dead, neither marry, nor are given in marriage; (36) for neither can they die any-more, for they are like angels, and are sons of Elohim, being sons of the resurrection.”’*** We will therefore have higher positions than the angels in the Kingdom of Elohim, as we read from Hebrews 2: 6 – 8 (quoted from Psalm 8), as follows: ***‘But one has testified somewhere, saying, “WHAT IS MAN, THAT THOU REMEMBEREST HIM? OR THE SON OF MAN, THAT THOU ART CONCERNED ABOUT HIM? (7) THOU HAST MADE HIM FOR A LITTLE WHILE LOWER THAN THE ANGELS; THOU HAST CROWNED HIM WITH GLORY AND HONOR, AND HAST APPOINTED HIM OVER THE WORKS OF THY HANDS; (8) THOU HAST PUT ALL THINGS IN SUBJECTION UNDER HIS FEET.”’*** At this point it should be abundantly clear, why Satan (a fallen angel) would like to destroy our ministry (and like minded believers) and us as individual believers.

The only way in which we have access to the Father is through Yahshua our Messiah, as confirmed in Hebrews 9: 8, where we read: ***‘The Set-apart Spirit is signifying this, that the way to the Set-apart place has not yet been disclosed, while the outer tabernacle is still standing.’*** Hebrews 8 - 10 is a discussion by Rav Shaul, about two priesthoods and here in the quoted section, the Set-apart Spirit tells us that the Levitical priesthood did not provide the people of Elohim with direct access into His presence, but restricted them from entry, since access had to come by another way. It teaches that we cannot have access to the Father, without the death of Yahshua our Messiah, because there was no way to the Father via the sacrificial

system. We read accordingly about Yahshua's death in Luke 23: 44 - 49, **'And it was now about the sixth hour (12 o'clock in the afternoon), and darkness fell over the whole land until the ninth hour (3 o'clock in the afternoon), (45) the sun being obscured; and the veil of the temple was torn in two. (46) And Yahshua, crying out with a loud voice, said, "Father, INTO THY HANDS I COMMIT MY SPIRIT." And having said this, He breathed His last. (47) Now when the centurion saw what had happened, he began praising Elohim, saying, "Certainly this man was innocent." (48) And all the multitudes who came together for the spectacle, when they observed what had happened, began to return, beating their breasts. (49) And all His acquaintances and the women who accompanied Him from Galilee, were standing at a distance, seeing these things.'** Similarly, we cannot inherit eternal life, before we die or are changed at Yahshua's return.

The quoted section from Luke 23, presents us with another falsehood to correct; in fact it confirms that the belief that Yahshua was impaled on Golgotha, is not true. Yahshua, similar to any sacrifice to make atonement, was killed *'before YHVH'*, meaning in His presence, at the doorway of the tent of meeting, as may be seen from Leviticus 1: 3 & 5. We read accordingly in Hebrews 13: 11 & 12, **'For the bodies of those animals whose blood is brought into the Set-apart place by the high priest as an offering for sin, are burned outside the camp. (12) Therefore Yahshua also, that He might sanctify the people through His own blood suffered outside the gate.'** For this to be true, Yahshua had to be impaled on the Mount of Olives, opposite the gate of the temple³⁹. How can I say that? It is clear to see from the quoted section in Luke 23 that the spectacle that people came to observe from the place where Yahshua was impaled, was the veil of the temple that was torn in two (verse 45). Despite the sun being obscured, they could see into the Holy of Holies in the light provided by the menorah, since the Mount of Olives was due east from the entrance to the temple, at the time.

In closure, we need to understand that, we who have been immersed in Yahshua's name, are already begotten sons of Elohim, but we cannot yet see what we shall be like. But we are promised in 1 John 3: 1 & 2, as follows: **'See how great a love the Father has bestowed upon us, that we should be called children of Elohim; and such we are. For this reason the world does not know us, because it did not know Him. (2) Beloved, now we are children of Elohim, and it has not appeared as yet what we shall be. We know that, when He appears, we shall be like Him, because we shall see Him just as He is.'** YHVH the creator of the Universe is not prepared to give His power over to those who are not prepared to follow him fully. We read accordingly from Romans 8: 14, **'For all who are being led by the Spirit of Elohim, these are sons of Elohim.'**

If we continue to be led by the Spirit of Elohim and grow in grace and knowledge, to become more and more like Elohim in spiritual character, we will be born again as spiritual children of Elohim (else we could be aborted). That is the reality of being born again, which if we qualify will be far more glorious than the false so-called 'born again' experiences that many deceived thousands think that they have already had.

³⁹ The fact that Yahshua was impaled in a place called the Skull simply implies that He was impaled on the head or summit of a mountain, since we all know that every mountain has a summit or peak (Golgotha simply means head or skull). Another meaning implied by the word Golgotha, is that Yahshua is the Gaol Galut meaning the redeemer of the exiles, as He confirmed in Matthew 15: 24, as follows: **'But He answered and said, "I was sent only to the lost sheep of the house of Israel."**

Chapter 11 - Who has the oracles of YHVH our Elohim?

There are many groups who believe that they have been given the oracles of Elohim. The question is; where did this belief come from? Most members of the Roman Catholic Church know the answer to this question; They believe it comes from the incident where Yahshua asked His disciples in Matthew 16: 15 ***“But who do you say that I am?”***

We read in Matthew 16: 16, ***‘And Simon Peter (Kepha) answered and said, “Thou art the Messiah (the anointed one), the Son of the living Elohim.”*** In verses 17 to 19 of Matthew 16, we read Yahshua’s response to Peter’s answer, as follows: ***‘And Yahshua answered and said to him, “Blessed are you Simon Barjona, because flesh and blood did not reveal this to you, but My Father who is in heaven.” “And I also say to you that you are Peter (a small pebble), and upon this rock (Messiah Himself as we read in the last part of 1 Corinthians 10: 4) I will build my Ecclesia; and the gates of Hades shall not overpower it (the ecclesia, also known as the body of Messiah will not all die out, before His return).” “I will give you (talking specifically to Peter and the other disciples) the keys of the kingdom of heaven (the truth about the kingdom of heaven - see Acts 2: 38⁴⁰ and Romans 8: 11⁴¹); and whatever you shall bind on earth shall be bound in heaven, and whatever you shall loose on the earth shall be loosed in heaven.”*** The original disciples and by implication also us, their modern day descendants, have been given the keys of how to access the Kingdom of Elohim and the knowledge of Elohim’s plan of salvation for all mankind, provided we keep the Feast Days ordained by Elohim.

We see from the Scriptures given above and quoted in the footnote below, that both Rav Shaul and Rav Kepha understood, that Yahshua was talking about Himself as the Rock in Matthew 16: 17 - 19. Kepha (Peter) goes into this in more detail in 1 Peter 2: 1 – 10. According to the Rav Kepha, we who are called during this age, who understand that Yahshua is YHVH in the flesh and hence also the Rock of our salvation (spoken about in Isaiah 44 in the last part of verse 8⁴²), do not stumble any longer over who Yahshua is and he calls us for this reason (in 1 Peter 2: 9), ***‘A CHOSEN RACE, A royal PRIESTHOOD, A SET-APART NATION, A PEOPLE FOR ELOHIM’S OWN POSSESSION, that you may proclaim the excellencies of Him who has called you out of darkness into His marvelous light.’***

We know that the Ecclesia is built on Yahshua the Rock of our Salvation, but, our Catholic brothers interpret Matthew 16: 17 – 19 as if Yahshua was telling Peter that He (Yahshua) has given him (Peter – whom they also believe to be the first Pope) more than just the knowledge about Elohim’s Kingdom. They believe that Yahshua has given them the so-called oracles of Elohim; meaning they have the authority to decide when and how we worship YHVH our Elohim. They believe that the Pope is the vicar of Messiah (the one they call Christ) – meaning that the Pope is currently in place of Messiah on the earth. They also accordingly believe that whatever the Pope says from the pulpit is binding on all of Christianity. Preposterous! Aren’t we blessed that we are not Christian.

But, as explained before, there are also some Nazarene Israelites and other like-minded believers, who believe, that the Oracles of Elohim were taken away from the Jews because of the unbelief of some of the Jews, and were given to them via the Rav Kepha. But these believers did not get the Oracles of Elohim, else Rav Kepha would have written about it. Instead he wrote in Acts 4: 11 & 12, ***“He (Yahshua) is the STONE WHICH WAS REJECTED by you, THE BUILDERS, but WHICH BECAME THE VERY CORNER stone. (12) And there is salvation in no one else; for there is no other name under heaven that has been given among men, by which we must be saved.”*** He also confirmed in 1 Peter 2: 7 & 8, ***‘This precious value, then, is for you who believe. But for those who disbelieve, “THE STONE WHICH THE BUILDERS REJECTED, THIS BECAME THE VERY CORNER stone,” (8) and, “A STONE OF STUMBLING AND A ROCK OF OFFENCE”; for they stumble because they are disobedient to the word, and to this doom they were also appointed.’*** In addition we know that Rav Shaul confirmed after Yahshua’s resurrection and ascension, that the Jews still have the Oracles of Elohim in Romans 3: 1 & 2. A second witness by Rav Shaul is given in Romans 9: 4, ***‘I could wish that I myself were accursed, separated from Messiah for the sake of my brethren, my kinsmen according to the flesh (Jews), (40 who are Israelites (yes, Jews are also Israelites), to whom belongs the adoption as sons and the esteem (glory) and the covenants and the giving of the Law and the temple service and the promises.’*** Even though these believers like the advocates of most religions, are sincere in what they believe, they are sincerely wrong. Yes, these believers who claim that the Oracles of Elohim were taken away from the Jews and given to them, are simply deceived and are according to Roman 3: 3 & 4 (quoted elsewhere) liars.

⁴⁰ Acts 2:38, ***‘And Peter said to them, “Repent, and let each one of you be immersed in the name of Yahshua Messiah for the forgiveness of your sins; and you shall receive the gift of the Set-apart Spirit.”***

⁴¹ Romans 8: 11, ***‘But if the spirit of Him who raised Yahshua from the dead dwells in you, He who raised Messiah Yahshua from the dead will also give life to your mortal bodies through His spirit who indwells you.’***

⁴² In the last part of Isaiah 44: 8 we read: ***“Is there any Elohim besides Me, Or is there any other Rock? I know of none.”***

We know that the Tanach was the public literature of the ancient nation of Israel. They were organized as Elohim's nation and congregation and they were entrusted with His oracles – Elohim's revelation to mankind of important knowledge. In Acts 7: 38 we see the martyr Stephen, talking about Moses and the original congregation, saying: ***“This is the one who was in the congregation in the wilderness together with the angel who was speaking to him on Mount Sinai, and who was with our fathers; and he received living oracles to pass on to you.”***

We also have Yahshua's words recorded for us in Matthew 23: 1 - 3 on the matter, as follows: ***Then Yahshua spoke to the multitudes and to His disciples, (2) saying, “The scribes and the Pharisees have seated themselves in the chair of Moses; (3) therefore all that they tell you, do and observe, but do not do according to their deeds; for they say things, and do not do them.”*** This whole discussion happened well after the event discussed earlier in Matthew 16. From this it is clear to me, that we should follow the oracles or standards preserved for us by the Jews, when it comes to observing Elohim's Set-apart days and not those of the leaders in Israel. This is confirmed in Ezekiel 13: 2 – 4 and 9 as follows: ***“Son of man prophesy against the prophet of Israel who prophesy; and say to those who prophesy from their own inspiration ‘Listen to the word of YHVH’ (3) Thus says YHVH “Woe to the foolish prophets who are following their own spirit and have seen nothing. (4) O Israel your prophets have been like foxes among ruins.” (9) “So My hand will be against the prophets who see false visions and utter lying divinations. They will have no place in the council of my people (the council who decides about the Set-apart Days of Elohim; the Sanhedrin), nor will they be written down in the register of the house of Israel, nor will they enter the land of Israel, that you may know that I am YHVH Elohim.”***

There is a warning not to follow false prophets/leaders in keeping the oracles of Elohim, in Jeremiah 23: 32 – 36 as follows: ***“Behold I am against those who have prophesied false dreams.” declares YHVH “and related them, and led my people astray by their falsehoods and reckless boasting; yet I did not send them or command them, nor do they furnish this people the slightest benefit.” Declares YHVH. (33) “Now when this people or a prophet or a priest asks you saying, ‘what is the oracle (or burden/standard) of YHVH?’ Then you shall say to them, “What oracle?” YHVH declares ‘I shall abandon you.’ (34) “Then as for the prophet or the priest or the people who say, The ‘oracle of YHVH.’ I shall bring punishment upon that man and his household. (35) “Thus shall each of you say to his neighbor and to his brother, ‘what has YHVH answered?’ or ‘what has YHVH spoken?’(36) “For you will no longer remember the oracle of YHVH, because every man's own word will become the oracle and you have perverted the oracles of the living Elohim, YHVH of host our Elohim.” Here we are told that we will forget Elohim's oracles, because every man's own word will become the oracle and as a result we have perverted the word of the living Elohim. I believe that this has in fact happened in our day?***

Deuteronomy 17 deals with the particulars surrounding legal matters. Of specific importance is the focal point that we read about in verses 8 to 13, as follows: ***“If any case is too difficult for you to decide, between one kind of homicide or another, between one kind of lawsuit or another, and between one kind of assault or another, being cases of dispute in your courts, then you shall arise and go up to the place which YHVH your Elohim chooses. (9) So you shall come to the Levitical priest or the judge who is in office in those days, and you shall inquire of them, and they will declare to you the verdict in the case. (10) And you shall do according to the terms of the verdict which they declare to you from that place which YHVH chooses; and you shall be careful to observe according to all that they teach you. (11) According to the terms of the law which they teach you, and according to the verdict which they tell you, you shall do; you shall not turn aside from the word which they declare to you, to the right or the left. (12) And the man who acts presumptuously by not listening to the priest who stands there to serve YHVH your Elohim, nor to the judge, that man shall die; thus you shall purge evil from Israel. (13) Then all the people will hear and be afraid, and will not act presumptuously again.”*** This section of the Scriptures is essentially understood by the Jewish sages as being ‘halakah’, or the way in which we should walk. Verse 11 above, tells us that Moses and the Levitical priests and judges appointed by him, are the ones who are responsible to determine the way in which we should walk. They, the ones appointed in place of Moses, or the ones sitting in Moses' seat, decide about the difficult issues in the way we walk, such as the need for postponements, to ensure that the Day of Atonement does not fall immediately before or after a weekly Sabbath.

Let's consider a related issue for a moment: There are those who insist that the calculated calendar as used by our Jewish brothers, came about as a result of a decision by Hillel II, whose responsibility it was as part of the Sanhedrin to regulate the calendar. He was required by the Catholic Church to issue a decree during the years 358 – 359 CE to institute the authority of the fixed or calculated Hebrew calendar that we know today. However, we know that the Jews used a calculated calendar before this time, since we have a historical witness from no less than Roman Emperor Constantine, that three centuries after Yahshua's crucifixion, the true disciples were still reckoning the festival dates by the same calendar used by the Jewish community. It

was decreed, by the Council of Nicea, held in 325 CE, where the timing of the Paschal festival was discussed. Even though the early Christians were replacing Passover with Easter, they still retained the term pasha, as used in The Greek Scriptures. An excerpt of Constantine's decree, preserved by the Church historian Eusebius, is as follows: He wrote that it seemed *"a most unworthy thing that we should follow the custom of the Jews in the celebration of the most holy solemnity, rejecting the practice of his people, we should perpetuate to all future ages the celebration of this rite, in a more legitimate order. Let us then have nothing in common with the most hostile rabble of the Jews. Let us withdraw ourselves, my much honored brethren, from that most odious fellowship. It is indeed in the highest degree preposterous, that they should superciliously vaunt themselves, that truly without their instruction, we cannot properly observe this rite, they continue, wandering in the grossest error, instead of duly reforming their calculations."* *A historical View of the Council of Nicea, Eusebius, pp. 52 – 53*). The sighting of the New Moon was always used to verify or confirm the calculated calendar established by Moses. The figure used anciently to calculate the Hebrew calendar, 29.53059 days per month, was the same one used by NASA up to 1968 when satellite and computer technology allowed them to take the number out one more decimal place.

We know that the Rabbinical Jews or the modern day Pharisees are responsible for such matters as the timing of the calendar today, as Yahshua also confirmed in John 4: 22, where He said to the woman at the well, ***"You worship that which you do not know; we worship that which we know, for salvation is from the Jews."*** However, the Karaite Jews (based in Israel), who identify themselves as the modern day Sadducees in their webpage, dispute the meaning of what Yahshua said in Matthew 23, despite the fact that they do not even believe in Him. But from reading verse 29 of Matthew 22, we saw Yahshua's judgment regarding their interpretation of the Scriptures, when He answered their question about the resurrection, in which they also did not believe, as follows: ***"You are mistaken, not understanding the Scriptures, or the power of Elohim."*** Since Yahshua was our perfect example, we do not consider a judgment by this group of latter day Sadducees as being legitimate. In addition we know that those who follow such groups, will eventually be left wanting, as we understand from the warning in Malachi 2: 1 – 8 as follows: ***"And now, this commandment is for you, O Priests. (2) If you do not listen, and if you do not take it to heart to give honor to My Name," says YHVH of hosts, "then I will send the curse upon you, and I will curse your blessings; and indeed, I have cursed them already, because you are not taking it to heart. (3) Behold, I am going to rebuke your offspring, and I will spread refuse on your faces, the refuse of your feasts; and you will be taken away with it. (4) Then you will know that I have sent this commandment to you, that My covenant may continue with Levi," says YHVH of hosts. (5) "My covenant with him was one of life and peace, and I gave them to him as an object of reverence; so he revered Me, and stood in awe of My name. (6) True instruction was in his mouth, and unrighteousness was not found on his lips; he walked with Me in peace and uprightness, and he turned many back from iniquity. (7) For the lips of a priest should preserve knowledge, and men should seek instruction from his mouth; for he is the messenger of YHVH of hosts. (8) But as for you, you have turned aside from the way; you have caused many to stumble by the instruction; you have corrupted the covenant of Levi," says YHVH of hosts.'*** The priests or judges in office today are the Rabbinical Jews.

A second witness to this comes from Numbers 17, where we see that after the rebellion of Korah and the subsequent rebellion of the congregation, when YHVH started a plague that killed 14,700, besides those who died on account of Korah (in Numbers 16), YHVH has now gained the attention of the nation. He tells Moses to take the rods of all the leaders according to their father's households and write their names on their rods. YHVH also tells Moses to write Aaron's name on the rod of Levi. Then YHVH tells Moses to deposit the rods in the tent of meeting in front of the ark, saying that it will come about that the rod of the man whom YHVH chooses will sprout. Moses did as YHVH told him and the next day, he saw that Aaron's staff not only sprouted buds, but also bear flowers and almonds. Moses brought the rods out in the presence of YHVH showing it to all the sons of Israel. Each man took his rod, but YHVH instructed Moses to put Aaron's rod before the Ark to bear testimony, to be kept against the rebels that they may put an end to their grumblings against YHVH, so that they should not die. This clearly showed the ancient Israelites, that Levi is in charge of religious matters.

We know that Yahshua will return on Yom Teruah (known as Rosh Hashana by the Jews) one day, in the near future. We read from Zechariah 12, that when He returns, our Jewish brothers will be in their synagogues (where men sit separate from their wives) and will see Him whom they (and all mankind) have pierced (in verse 10). What will they be doing in synagogue at that time? Obviously keeping Rosh Hashana, also known as The Feast of Trumpets. If the calendar based on the sighting of the crescent moon, is about two days behind the Hebrew calendar, are the ones observing it, and the ones who formed an alliance with them, going to be keeping The Feast of Trumpets at the same time as the Rabbinical Jews do? Or are they going to be a day or two too late?

Yahshua our Messiah did not abolish the Torah of Moses at all, but made certain corrections to the Hebrew calendar, such as keeping the Passover the evening before our Jewish brothers kept it. Now you might say if

what we have just covered is true, why do we follow Yahshua in keeping the Passover, a day before the Rabbinical Jews do? The answer to this question is to be found in verses 18 & 19 of Deuteronomy 18, where Moses informs the people that YHVH told him, as follows: ***'I will raise up a prophet from among their countrymen like you, and I will put My words in his mouth, and he shall speak to them all that I command him. (19) And it shall come about that whoever will not listen to My words which he shall speak in My name I Myself will require it of him.'*** Yahshua our Messiah is the one that Moses wrote about here. In fact Yahshua mentioned this after His resurrection in Luke 24: 44 & 45, as follows: ***'Now He said to them, "These are My words which I spoke to you while I was still with you, that all things which are written about Me in the Law of Moses and the Prophets and the Psalms must be fulfilled." (45) Then He opened their minds to understanding the Scriptures.'*** Yahshua said further in John 5: 43 – 47, ***"I have come in My Father's name (Yahshua or the Salvation of YHVH), and you do not receive Me; if another shall come in his own name, you will receive him. (44) How can you believe, when you receive glory from one another, and you do not seek the glory that is from the one and only Elohim? (This is true of some who follow a calendar, invented by groups who determine new months by watching for the crescent moon) (45) Do not think that I will accuse you before the Father; the one who accuses you is Moses, in whom you have set your hope. (46) For if you believed Moses, you would believe Me; for he wrote of Me. (47) But if you do not believe his writings, how will you believe My words?"*** We may twist and turn as much as we like, we are still required to believe or keep the Torah given by the hand of Moses, to fully understand and believe Messiah's words.

In Genesis 49: 10 we read: ***"The scepter shall not depart from Judah (as far as religious matters are concerned), Nor the ruler's staff from between his feet, until Shiloh (Yahshua) comes, and to him shall be the obedience of the peoples."*** Whilst Yahshua's first advent was to bring Salvation to all mankind and to die, to be able to remarry His bride, His second advent is to come and rule the world from Jerusalem, when all people will obey Him. We know that all people did not obey Him at his first coming, but that every knee will bow before Him at His return, as we read from Philippians 2: 9 - 11, as follows: ***'Therefore also Elohim highly exalted Him, and bestowed on Him the name which is above every name, (10) and at the name of Yahshua EVERY KNEE SHOULD BOW, of those who are in heaven and on earth and under the earth.'***

Yahshua is according to Deuteronomy 18 the only person who may change the Laws preserved by the Levites. However, He did not change any of the commands kept by Judah, but criticized their excessive hand washing custom in Mark 7. He also corrected the occurrence of the Passover, when He kept it a whole 24 hours before the Jews of His day did. That was the only adjustment that He made to the annual Set-apart Day cycle at that time – He kept the other Set-apart days with His people Judah and will if necessary also correct any other problems regarding the Hebrew calendar, when He returns to rule one day. The Passover is essentially about Yahshua who was according to John the Immerser the Lamb of Elohim who takes away the sins of the world! The fact that YHVH has blinded the Jews to the identity of Yahshua means that they also do not accept the corrections that He made to the calendar whilst He was on earth. But they will accept Him as their Passover, when He returns to find them in their synagogues on Rosh Hashana.

There are millions of anti-Semitic people across the world; many of them do not even know why they are opposed to Judaism. I believe that it has to do with jealousy, but the perpetrators do not even know why they are jealous. It could also have something to do with the theory that those who stand behind the door (those who are prone to breaking the commandments) want others to stand behind the door with them; else they simply do not like you. Anti-Semitism has at times been taking on such proportions that even the translators of modern Bibles have been influenced by it. A case in point is found in some of the modern English translations listed below:

- (a.) A test verse namely Hosea 11: 12 correctly translated in the King James Version, as follows: ***'Ephraim (a name used for the 10 lost tribes of Israel in many places throughout the Scriptures) compasseth me about with lies, and the house of Israel with deceit: but Judah yet ruleth with G-d (Elohim) and is faithful with the saints (believers).'***
- (b.) The same verse in the Revised Standard Version correctly reads: ***'Ephraim has encompassed me with lies, and the house of Israel with deceit; but Judah is still known by G-d (Elohim), and is faithful to the Holy (Set-apart) One.'***
- (c.) But this verse is incorrectly translated in the New American Standard Bible, as follows: ***'Ephraim surrounds Me with lies, And the house of Israel with deceit; Judah is also unruly against G-d (Elohim), even against the Holy One who is faithful.'***
- (d.) And the New International Version incorrectly translates the same verse, in this way: ***'Ephraim has surrounded me with lies, the house of Israel with deceit. And Judah is unruly against G-d, even against the faithful Holy One.'***

A question that I would like to ask those who say that they now have the oracles of Elohim, is: Why is the following end time prophesy recorded in Zechariah 8: 23, ***“Thus says YHVH of hosts, ‘In those days ten men (non-Jewish Israelites) from all the nations will grasp the garment of a Jew saying, “Let us go with you, for we have heard that Elohim is with you.”*** As mentioned before in Malachi 2: 1 – 8 ,YHVH is not pleased with Feast days not ordained by Levi, and as we read in Nahum 1: 15, He condones the Feast Days kept by Judah, as follows: ***‘Behold, on the mountains the feet of him who brings good news, who announces peace! Celebrate your feasts, O Judah; pay your vows. For never again will the wicked one pass through you; he is cut off completely.’*** From the wording of verse 15, and the duality principle that runs throughout the Scriptures, it is safe to assume that this is also a prophecy about the Millennium rule of Yahshua.

An account recorded in the book of Jeremiah confirms that the Jews were in control of Legal matters in the days of Jeremiah. In order to understand a little about the context of the account we commence reading from Jeremiah 32: 6 & 7 ***‘And Jeremiah said, “The word of YHVH came to me, saying, (7) ‘Behold, Hanamel the son of Shallum your uncle is coming to you, saying, “Buy for yourself my field which is at Anathoth, for you have the right of redemption to buy it”’*** We see from verse 8 of Jeremiah 32, the event unfold exactly the way YHVH said to Jeremiah, as follows: ***‘Then Hanamel my uncle’s son came to me in the court of the guard according to the word of YHVH, and said to me, ‘Buy my field, please, that is at Anathoth, which is in the land of Benjamin; for you have the right of possession and the redemption is yours; buy it for yourself. Then I knew that this was the word of YHVH.’*** We see further from verses 9 & 10 that Jeremiah bought the land, signed and sealed the deed, called in witnesses to the transaction and weighed out the silver on the scales.

According to verses 11 & 12, he took the deed of purchase, the sealed copy containing the terms and conditions, and an open copy and gave the deed of purchase to Baruch the son of Neriah, the son of Mahseiah, in the sight of Hanamel his uncle’s son, and in the sight of the witnesses who signed the deed of purchase, before all the Jews who were sitting in the court of the guard⁴³. Next Jeremiah commanded Baruch to come before them, saying (in verses 14 & 15), ***‘Thus says YHVH of hosts, the Elohim of Israel, “Take these deeds, this sealed deed of purchase, and this open deed, and put them in an earthenware jar, that they may last a long time.”*** (15) ***‘For thus says YHVH of hosts, the Elohim of Israel, “Houses and fields and vineyards shall again be bought in this land.”*** This is a prophecy that came true when the Jews returned from captivity in Babylon; but it also came true when the modern nation of Israel, consisting mainly of Jews was resettled in the land of Israel in 1948. In addition it also refers to a time when we, the remnant of latter day descendants of the lost ten tribes, will return to the land of Israel, one day soon.

11.1 Elohim’s covenant promise about King David’s Throne:

The moon is very important to YHVH as we read in Psalms 89: 34 – 37, ***“My covenant I will not violate, nor will I alter the utterance of my lips. (35) Once I have sworn by My holiness (Sanctuary)⁴⁴; I will not lie to David. (36) His descendants shall endure forever, And his throne as the sun before Me. (37) It shall be established forever like the moon, and the witness in the sky is faithful.”*** This is saying that the moon is Elohim’s witness, that David’s descendant Yahshua will rule the nation of Israel from Jerusalem during the coming Kingdom of Elohim and into eternity. But it is also saying that there will always be someone occupying David’s throne, until Yahshua comes to rule us from Jerusalem. However, most believe that according to Scriptural history King David’s throne ceased with King Zedekiah of Judah. But, can this really be true? Did YHVH our Elohim, who cannot lie forget His covenant with David?

It is very important that we get the Scriptural answer for this apparent discrepancy in the Scriptures, before moving on, We pick up the account in 1 Kings 2: 1 – 4, to where David is about to die, as follows: ***‘As David’s time to die drew near, he charged Solomon his son, saying, (2) “I am going the way of all the earth. Be strong, therefore, and show yourself a man. (3) And keep the charge of YHVH your Elohim, to walk in His ways, to keep His statutes, His commandments, His ordinances, and His testimonies, according to what is written in the law of Moses, that you may succeed in all that you do and wherever you turn,*** (the message is simple and applies to all mankind; if we want to succeed in what we do, we need to obey the Torah of Elohim) ***(4) so that YHVH may carry out His promise which He spoke concerning me, saying, ‘If your sons are careful of their way, to walk before Me in truth with all their heart and with all their soul, you shall not lack a man on the throne of Israel.’”*** Many believers do not believe all the promises that YHVH made in His word. The underlined sentence above is one such promise (made to King David), which many doubt for the reasons explained as follows:

⁴³ The Jews who were sitting in the court of the guard are the ones mentioned in Deuteronomy 17: 8 – 12, representing the Sanhedrin, who were responsible to judge religious and civil matters in all Israel.

⁴⁴ The word holiness here is also mentioned in Psalm 60: 6, which leads onto verse 7, as follows: ***‘Elohim has spoken in His holiness: “I will exult, I will portion out Shechem and measure out the valley of Succoth. Gilead is Mine, and Manasseh is Mine; Ephraim also is the helmet of My head; Judah is My scepter (or lawgiver).”*** ⁴⁵ In verse 6 the footnote against the word holiness reads, or sanctuary.

The last king recorded in the Scriptures and secular history as having sat on King David's throne was King Zedekiah of Judah. We read about him in 2 Kings 24: 18, in this way: **'Zedekiah was twenty-one years old when he became king, and he reigned eleven years in Jerusalem; and his mother's name was Hamutal the daughter of Jeremiah of Libnah.'** Very few people are aware of the important functions that Jeremiah the prophet played in the lives of the leaders in Judah. Jeremiah warned the kings, religious leaders and people of Judah, about coming calamities because of the nation's sin, but they refused to listen to his warnings and imprisoned him. It is because they did not heed Jeremiah's many warnings, that YHVH eventually caused them to go into captivity, as we read from Jeremiah 39: 1, **'Now it came about when Jerusalem was captured in the ninth year of Zedekiah king of Judah, in the tenth month, Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon and all his army came to Jerusalem and laid siege to it.'** We read further from verse 6 – 8 of Jeremiah, how Nebuchadnezzar dealt with Zedekiah and his offspring, as follows: **'Then the king of Babylon slew the sons of Zedekiah before his eyes at Riblah; the king of Babylon also slew all the nobles of Judah. (7) He blinded Zedekiah's eyes and bound him in fetters of bronze to bring him to Babylon. (8) The Chaldeans also burned with fire the king's palace and the houses of the people, and they broke down the walls of Jerusalem.'** We see in Jeremiah 52: 11, that king Zedekiah remained in prison until his death.

Let's consider these facts again: To begin with, we see that Nebuchadnezzar slew all Zedekiah's sons, who were essentially the heirs to King David's throne. In addition we see that Zedekiah died in prison. It is therefore clear why the whole world believe that the throne of King David ceased with no possible heirs. It is also true that the throne of David never again existed in Judah. But, at the same time a former king of Judah, namely king Jeconiah (also called Jehoiachin) was also held captive in the Babylonian dungeon. One of Jeconiah's sons named Salathiel, who was the father of Zerubbabel also known as Zerubbabel, was the royal seed through whom Yahshua traced His royal lineage to David, as we see from Matthew 1: 12.

70 years after the captivity of Judah, YHVH caused king Cyrus of Persia, to make a decree with Zerubbabel to rebuild the Temple in Jerusalem. However, neither Jeconiah nor his descendants reigned as kings over Judah. The reason is that YHVH determined to remove the crown from the line of Pharez and give it to the son of Zarah. Even so, the royal line from David remained, so that Messiah could be born of David's seed. In addition YHVH had to keep His promise to David that he would never lack a descendant to sit on his throne. There are those who deny that Yahshua was the Messiah, because they allege that Elohim himself told Jeremiah that Jeconiah will be childless.

Nevertheless, Jeconiah had children, and Elohim Himself caused this to be recorded in 1 Chronicles 3: 17, as well as we've seen in Matthew 1: 12. But as far as the throne of David was concerned, Jeconiah was childless, as none of his children ever occupied David's throne. However, before we continue, we need to consider what happened to the breach that occurred in the days of Judah, one of Jacob's sons. Judah had twin sons named Pharez and Zarah, as is recorded in Genesis 38: 28 – 30, as follows: **'Moreover, it took place while she (Tamar) was giving birth, one put out his hand, and the midwife took and tied a scarlet thread on his hand saying, "This one came out first." (29) But it came about as he drew back his hand, that behold, his brother came out. Then she said, "What a breach you have made for yourself!" So he was named Perez (meaning breach). (30) And afterward his brother came out who had the scarlet thread on his hand; and he was named Zerah.'** Why are these particulars recorded in the Scriptures? The breach between the two brothers never healed in their lifetime. The breach had to do with relocating the scepter from Pharez to Zerah. Zerah's descendants did not get to heal the breach to sit on David's throne in their lifetime. The relocation of the scepter did not occur before or after Zedekiah king of Judah, was toppled when Nebuchadnezzar took Judah captive. King David, Zedekiah and Messiah were all descendants of Pharez. In addition the throne was promised to David's descendants forever.

At this point we have reached the second part of Jeremiah's mission. Jeremiah was taken captive to Babylon with Judah. But we see that he was later freed by the captain of the guard, as per Jeremiah 40: 5, in this way: **'As Jeremiah was still not going back, he said, "Go on back then to Gedaliah the son of Ahikam, the son of Shaphan, whom the king of Babylon has appointed over the cities of Judah, and stay with him among the people; or else go anywhere it seems right for you to go." So the captain of the bodyguard gave him a ration and a gift and let him go.'** We read from verse 6 of Jeremiah 40, **'Then Jeremiah went to Mizpah to Gedaliah the son of Ahikam and stayed with him among the people who were left in the land (of Judah).'** Gedaliah was the governor over the remaining Jews. He made his headquarters in Mizpah, because Jerusalem was already destroyed. However later the king of Ammon plotted with one of the Jews in Mizpah to assassinate Gedaliah together with part of Judah under his rule.

But, Jeremiah survived, as is witnessed in Jeremiah 41: 10, as follows: **'Then Ishmael took captive all the remnant of the people who were in Mizpah, the king's daughters and all the people who were left in Mizpah, whom Nebuzaradan the captain of the bodyguard had put under the charge of Gedaliah the son of Ahikam; thus Ishmael the son of Nethaniah took them captive and proceeded to cross over to**

the sons of Ammon. Do you realize that here among the remaining Jews were King Zedekiah's daughters? Even though King Zedekiah died in prison and all his sons were killed, we see here that his daughters survived. Jeremiah escaped and later fled with the remaining Jews to Egypt. Again YHWH warned these Jews through Jeremiah that they will die in Egypt by the sword and by famine, but a number shall again escape, as we read from Jeremiah 44: 28, like this: ***'And those who escape the sword will return out of the land of Egypt to the land of Judah few in number. Then all the remnant of Judah who have gone to the land of Egypt to reside there will know whose word will stand, Mine, or theirs.'***

We see that Baruch, Jeremiah's secretary who had written down the words of the book of Jeremiah was like Jeremiah protected throughout their journey. The daughters of Zedekiah were with Jeremiah when they escaped from Egypt to return to Judah. But what happened to Jeremiah, Baruch and Zedekiah's daughters from this point on? The truth about the planting and rebuilding of the throne of David is revealed as a riddle and a parable in Ezekiel 17. J.H. Allen in his book first published in 1902, entitled: **'JUDAH'S SCEPTRE AND JOSEPH'S BIRTHRIGHT'**, explains it in Chapter VII of part 2 as follows:

"The first part of the riddle is given, as follows: "Thus saith the Lord God: A great eagle with great wings, long-winged, full of feathers, which had divers colors, came unto Lebanon, and took the highest branch of the cedar; he cropped off the top of his young twigs, and carried it to a land of traffick; he set it in a city of merchants."

A few moments' reflection will convince us that, whatever else it may mean, the great eagle is intended to represent a means of transportation; for the declaration is that "*it came*" to a certain place, "*and took*" something which was in that place to which it came, and "*carried it into*" some other "*land.*"

We are also told that this means of transportation came to Lebanon. Since Lebanon is a mountain range in Palestine, then the place to which it came, and from which it departed is, most certainly, Palestine.

That which was taken away is declared to be "*young twigs,*" which were taken from "*the highest branch of the cedar*" of Lebanon. Since the personal pronoun "*his*" is used, having "*the cedar*" for its antecedent, it must represent a person. This person is of the masculine gender, and father of the "*young twigs*"; hence, these young scions are also persons.

Furthermore, it is a well-authenticated fact that the cedar of Lebanon is a symbol of royalty. Since the riddle contains within itself such abundant evidence of this fact, which will be made clear as we proceed, we will not need to go elsewhere for proof.

Again, inasmuch as it is true of twigs that they must be set, grafted, or planted, in order that they may grow and bear fruit, Or increase, so also it is declared of these young royal scions that they were "*set.*" The place also where they were set was certainly well adapted for increase of population, or subjects; that is, "*a city of merchants, in a land of traffick.*"

The second part of this riddle reads as follows: "He took also of the seed of the land, and planted it in a fruitful field; he placed it by great waters, and set it as a willow tree. And it grew, and became a spreading vine of low stature, whose branches turned toward him, and the roots thereof were under him; so it became a vine, and shot forth sprigs."

"*The seed of the land*" is most certainly the people of the land. The land from which "*he took*" this seed, or people, is Palestine; and the people of Palestine are distinctly Israelites. And numerically, hence preeminently, they are always the ten-tribed kingdom of Israel.

So these people who had been taken out of their own land were "*planted*" in another, and that other has become to them "*a fruitful field,*" which is located "*by great waters.*" Not by the Mediterranean Sea, or the Great Sea, as it is called in Scripture. But the new home of this removed people is "*by great waters.*" In their new home Israel "*grew and became a spreading vine.*" And since this riddle is dealing with the breach --as we shall see -- in which the "*high*" and the "*low*" princes of the royal house are to exchange places, we are not surprised that this spreading or out-reaching vine is said to be of "*low*" stature, nor that its branches and sprigs turned toward him, or that its roots, or growing power, was under him. If under him, then he was over them, i.e., their ruler.

This riddle further says: "There was also another great eagle with great wings and many feathers; and behold this vine did bend her roots toward him, and shot forth her branches toward him, that he might water it by the furrows of her plantation. It was planted in a good soil by great waters, that it might bring forth branches, and that it might bear fruit, that it might be a goodly vine." Here we have the record of the arrival of another passenger, who also came to that land of "*good soil,*" which is by "*great waters,*" and who was brought there by the same means of transportation, i.e., a "*great eagle with great wings,*" as that which brought the royal sons. This was not the same eagle, but "*another*" eagle, or ship, for we believe this means of transportation to have been the ships of Dan; since it is declared that "*Dan abode in ships,*" and that "*they have taken Cedars from Lebanon to make masts*" for their ships. We also know that the seaport of Tyre, in Palestine, was the port into which they must come for the cedars of Lebanon. ***Yes, for the cedars of Lebanon!!!*** be they used as masts for their ships, or as types of their royal princes.

The tribe of Dan also used the eagle as their standard, and they are said to have used great carved eagles with outstretched wings as the figureheads on the bows of their vessels. Also it is a common thing to symbolize ships which are under full sail as flying birds; and in this riddle the "*long wings*" represent the long sails, which, like wings carry the "*great*" ship -- the large bird, or eagle ship -- and her passengers to the land of traffic.

We are forced to the conclusion that the object which the writer has in view in mentioning the coming of this second ship is, that we may guess that another important personage had arrived; for, after mentioning the ship's arrival, his next expression is: "Behold, this vine did bend *her* roots toward him."

Thus we learn that the person who came in the second ship was a woman, and that her inclination and desire was toward the prince who had preceded her into the same land.

Then, still under the similitude of a vine, and that which is essential to its life and growth, viz., land and water, there follows that which clearly indicates a unity of life, claims and purpose. In fact, there was a marriage between the "*her*" and the "*him*" of this riddle, the result of which was that she, too, was "*set*" or "*planted*" in that land of a "*goodly vine*," albeit that goodly vine is of "Low Stature"; and bore "*fruit*." That is, offspring.

Since it is true that a prince can wed only with a princess, it will be well for us, at this juncture, to remember that we left Jeremiah and his little royal remnant of king's daughters on their way to a land which was strange, or unknown, to them; yet to a place where this preserved seed of David's line was to be "planted," again "take root," and "bear fruit."

Now, it is a fact that the man and the woman of this riddle were united. Also it is a fact that the woman was "planted" in that land of good soil, into which she did "take root," and these things were accomplished in order that she "might bear fruit." In other words, that which hitherto has been the subject of prophecy concerning Jeremiah's commission, and concerning his royal charge, is now recorded as a matter of history. The analogy is complete.

Still the explanation of this riddle makes all these things so plain that we are not left to conjecture. For at the eleventh verse the prophet says: "Moreover, the word of the Lord came unto me, saying, Say now to the rebellious house, Know ye not what these things mean? Tell them, Behold the king of Babylon is come to Jerusalem, and hath taken the king thereof and the princes thereof, and led them to Babylon."

The king of Babylon was Nebuchadnezzar, as we know. The king of Jerusalem, and the princes thereof, were, as we also know, Zedekiah and his sons.

Then follows a brief account of Zedekiah's treachery with the king of Babylon, how he rebelled against him, and sent to the king of Egypt for help.

Then comes a prophecy concerning the fact that King Zedekiah shall die in Babylon.

After this comes the prophetic account of that band of fugitives going to Egypt, and the declaration that they should fall by the sword, etc., all of which we have given in detail.

But the outcome of it all, and that which pertains to our immediate subject, begins again with the twenty-second verse. The prophet, still using the symbols of the riddle, explains as follows:

"Thus saith the Lord God, I will take of the highest branch of the high cedar, and will set it." This is the royal prince who came in Ship Number 1. He then proceeds to say: "I will crop off from the top of his young twigs a tender one, and will PLANT it upon a high mountain and eminent." This is the second importation of royal branches, but this time it is the "top" or one whose right it is to rule, a "tender one." That is, it is a tender young girl, the topmost one of the young twigs that came in Ship Number 2.

Where was she planted? "In the mountain of the height of Israel," is the Divine reply. "What, ISRAEL?" Yes, Israel, national Israel. Israel as a nation; but not Jewish-Israel, for that kingdom is overthrown; the people are gone into the Babylonish captivity; the king, with his eyes put out, is doomed to die in chains in a Babylonish prison; the princes are dead; the king's daughters have escaped out of Jerusalem; and the topmost one of these tender twigs is planted here in the *height* of the mountains of Israel, i. e., the THRONE.

"And it [that which was planted] shall bring forth boughs, and bear fruit, and be a goodly cedar: and under it shall dwell all fowl of every wing; in the shadow of the branches thereof shall they dwell." The purport of this is so glaringly plain that the most obtuse mind can see that it refers to the mixed population which Israel, of necessity, must have gathered while being sifted through other countries.

The prophet further declares: "And all the trees of the field, i. e., all the people of that kingdom of Israel, shall know that I, the Lord, have brought down the HIGH tree, have exalted the LOW tree, have dried up the green tree, and have made the dry tree to flourish. I the Lord have spoken and DONE it," (Ezek. 17:24).

"Done what?" Brought down the HIGH from the throne, and exalted the LOW to the throne.

"What else?" Made the long-foretold breach, remembered his covenant with David, and kept faith with Jeremiah.

For, since these trees are the royal cedars, and the male heirs of the former reigning line have been dethroned in favor of him that was low, who also is the "spreading vine of LOW stature" of the riddle, and who is now exalted by being enthroned, and since a royal princess found her way to the land of the "*vine of low stature*" and united her interests with his, "that *he* might water the furrows of *her* plantation," we are safe in saying that God has taken the crown from off the head of Zedekiah, the high, who was of the Pharez line, and has placed it on the head of a prince of Zarah, the low, to whom Zedekiah's daughter, the heir to crown and sceptre, made her way, in company with Jeremiah, who had charge of the royal paraphernalia, and who was divinely commissioned to plant and build anew the plucked-up and overthrown kingdom of David.

Christ came through the family line of Judah, David, Josiah, and Jeconiah, not through the breach; the breach ran through Judah, David, Josiah and Zedekiah. So, the two branches of the Judo-Pharez-David line diverge at Josiah. One of these lines eventually gave birth to the Messiah; and, as we shall prove, the other line, after having been united to the brother line of the Scarlet Thread, are still holding that preserved throne and sceptre, and raising up seed unto their fathers, Judah and David; so that there shall never be a lack of some one

of David's children to sit upon that throne as rulers over the seed of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, and that the sceptre may not depart from Judah till SHILOH COME.

Thus it is that one of these lines holds that sceptre, and wears that crown as a fact, but the Judo-David house has a greater son to whom they belong by "RIGHT." When he comes, as Shiloh, God will give it to him, for unto him shall the gathering of the people be. At that time the breaches will be healed, and he shall be called "The Restorer of the BREACH."

The question now is to find where that sceptre and throne are today, for we are not only confronted with the question of "Lost Israel," or the "*Lost Birthright*," which involves the whole house of Joseph and the many nations into which they were to develop; but we are also confronted with the question of THE LOST SCEPTRE which involves the Zedekiah branch of the house of David and all its Heraldic Blazonry."

In chapter 1 we read about the time when Jacob blessed his sons in Genesis 48 and 49; where the United Kingdom was identified as Ephraim and the USA as Manasseh. We know that the crown spoken about in Genesis 49: 26 and Deuteronomy 33: 16 refers to the United Kingdom, with Queen Elizabeth II presently occupying the throne. We read in Irish History that before 700 BCE a strong colony of the tribe of Dan came to Ireland by ship. Later in the days of king David, a colony of the line of Zerah arrived in Ireland. In the years 569 BCE, an elderly patriarch came to Ireland. As explained above this was none other than Jeremiah the prophet. With him came the princess daughter of a Hebrew king, named Tea-Tephi as well as a scribe named Shimon Baruch.

This royal party included the king of Ireland who was in Jerusalem at the time of the siege. He got to know Tea-Tephi and married her shortly after the fall of Jerusalem in 585 BCE. Jeremiah brought an ark, a harp and the so-called '*stone of destiny*' with him to Ireland. Many kings of Ireland, Scotland and England, including Queen Elizabeth II, have been coronated sitting over this stone. It is believed that YHVH will one day give this throne to Shiloh or Yahshua when He returns. In this way the throne of Israel was always occupied, in preparation for Yahshua at His return. Even though the crown resides with Joseph (Ephraim) at present, the priestly role or Oracles remained with Judah, as may be deduced from both Genesis 49: 10⁴⁵ and more specifically from Psalm 108: 8, as follows: "***Gilead is Mine, Manasseh is Mine; Ephraim also is the helmet of My head; Judah is My lawgiver.***" Nevertheless, when Yahshua returns, He will control both the functions of King and High Priest over the United Israel, as we read in Zechariah 6: 12 & 13, as follows: '***Then say to him 'Thus says YHVH of hosts, "Behold, a man whose name is Branch, for He will branch out from where He is; and He will build the temple of YHVH. (13) "Yes, it is He who will build the temple of YHVH, and He who will bear the honor and sit and rule on His throne. Thus, He will be a priest on His throne, and the counsel of peace will be between the two offices."***'

11.2 Why are so many so 'obsessed' with watching the moon?

Now that we know that YHVH who cannot lie, and has preserved David's throne for Yahshua our Messiah, over the past centuries, let's continue our discussion about the importance of the New moon. Until Yahshua returns one day we will keep the Feast of Trumpets on the first day of the seventh month (the new moon at the beginning of the seventh month). This is the same day that our Jewish brothers refer to as the Head of the Year or Rosh Hashana. The civil New Year is counted from Yom Teruah and the ten days of awe concluding at Yom Kippur, also starts from it. We read about Yom Teruah in Psalm 81: 3, transliterated in Hebrew, as follows: '*Tiqu va'chodesh shofar ba'kesh le'yom chagenu*', meaning '***Blow the shofar at the moon's renewal; at the time of concealment of our festive day.***' Yom Teruah is the only Feast Day of Elohim that falls on a new or concealed moon, since we do not know exactly when Yahshua will return.

However, we are certain that He will return on the Feast of Trumpets or Yom Teruah one day, as is also confirmed in 1 Thessalonians 4: 13 – 17, like this: "***But we do not want you to be uninformed, brethren, about those who are asleep, that you may not grieve, as do the rest who have no hope. (14) For if we believe that Yahshua died and rose again, even so Elohim will bring with Him those who have fallen asleep in Yahshua. (15) For this we say to you by the word of the Master, that we who are alive, and remain until the coming of the Master, shall not precede those who have fallen asleep. (16) For the Master Himself will descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trumpet of Elohim; and the dead in Messiah shall rise first. (17) Then we who are alive and remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds (not heaven) to meet the Master in the air, and thus we shall be with the Master. (18) Therefore comfort one another with these words.***" It is by keeping the annual Feast Days of Elohim that we get to know His plan of salvation for all mankind.

⁴⁵ '*The scepter shall not depart from Judah, nor the ruler's staff from between his feet, until Shiloh comes, and to Him shall be the obedience of the people.*' A Scepter is a symbol of sovereignty, similar to a crown, whereas the ruler's staff has to do with setting the standard or giving judicial decisions regarding Scriptural Law. The fact about Judah being Elohim's lawgiver is also confirmed in Psalm 60: 7.

The renewed moon cannot be seen by the 'naked' eye and only becomes visible as a crescent moon 1½ to 2 days after concealment. Yes the new moon is in concealment for ±2 days (See 1 Samuel 20: 5, 27 & 34), and is only 'watched' to determine the date for Trumpets. If Atonement will be on a Friday or a Sunday, Trumpets is moved one day on, ensuring that Atonement is never on the day before or after a weekly Sabbath. Concealment takes up to 2 days, which ensures that even in the event of such a postponement, Trumpets will still occur during concealment of the moon. The people watching for the crescent moon, by which they declare a 'new month' is usually a day and a half to two days later than the Hebrew calendar. We read in 1 Samuel 20: 5, ***'So David said to Jonathan, "Behold, tomorrow is the new moon, and I ought to sit down to eat with the king. But let me go, that I may hide myself in the field until the third evening."*** The question is: Why did David want to hide himself in the field until the third evening. The reason is that King Saul kept the New Moon for two days, by having a special meal on both the evenings during which the moon was not visible. This is confirmed in verses 27 & 28 of 1 Samuel 20, as follows: ***'And it came about the next day, the second day of the new moon, that David's place was empty; so Saul said to Jonathan his son, "Why has the son of Jesse not come to the meal, either yesterday or today."***

Both the First Day of Unleavened Bread and the First Day of the Feast of Tabernacles should occur on the fifteenth day of either the first or the seventh months of the year. The moon is usually full on both of these two days. But, if we determine the new month by watching for the first sliver of the crescent moon to become visible, it will always be at least a day or two after the full moon. Yes the next 'month' will be about 30 days later, to the next crescent moon, but these two Feast Days will always be a day or two too late. The Feast Days of YHVH our Elohim given in Leviticus 23, are His Set-apart Days and not that of the Jews (only). The Sabbath occurs every seventh day of the week. However, notice in verse 4 the phrase 'which you shall proclaim'. This is to say that Moses (or the people sitting in his seat) was responsible for proclaiming the calendar. YHVH does not expect each individual to determine the annual Set-apart calendar for themselves. Many self-appointed calendar experts claim that their calendar is the right one. Did YHVH intend the calendar to be proclaimed by an authoritative body – or is it every man for himself? Increasingly we see people simply doing what is right in their own eyes. Is YHVH the Author of such Spiritual anarchy? To whom did YHVH give responsibility for the calendar? YHVH told Moses in verse 2 of Leviticus 23, saying: ***"Speak to the sons of Israel, and say to them, '(YHVH)'s appointed times which you shall proclaim as set-apart convocations – My appointed times are these."*** But who was to do the proclaiming?

The Hebrew term for convocation is *'miqra'*, which refers to an officially called assembly. In Numbers 10: 2 Moses was told that two silver trumpets were to be made and one of their major uses was ***"for summoning the congregation"***. But who was responsible to use these trumpets? We read the answer from verse 8 of Numbers 10, as follows: ***"The priestly sons of Aaron, moreover, shall blow the trumpets; and this shall be for you a perpetual statute throughout your generations."*** Continuing in verse 10 we read: ***"Also in the day of your gladness and in your appointed feasts, and on the first days of your months, you shall blow the trumpets over your burnt offerings, and over the sacrifices of your peace offerings; and they shall be as a reminder of you before your Elohim. I am YHVH your Elohim."***

The noun *'miqra'* is derived from the verb *'qara'*, rendered as ***"proclaim"*** in Leviticus 23:2 and 4. What exactly does it mean? It is the same word used in Genesis 1: 5 where we read: ***'And Elohim called the light day, and the darkness He called night. And there was evening and there was morning, one day.*** A further example where the Hebrew word *'qara'* is translated as called may be read from Genesis 1: 8 & 10, where Elohim ***"called"*** the expanse heaven (v 8) and the dry land He ***"called"*** earth, and the gathering of the waters He ***"called"*** seas (v 10). Later we learn that YHVH Elohim brought before Adam the animals He had created to see what he would call them. We read in the second part of Genesis 2: 19, ***"and whatever the man called (qara) a living creature ('nephesh' or soul), that was its name."*** So we see that *qara* also means to "call", or to name or to designate, and YHVH assigned the responsibility to name or designate all the different animals, to Adam.

How does this relate to the set-apart days? In Leviticus 23, we learned that a certain group was responsible for naming or proclaiming the days on which the congregation was to assemble before YHVH. Numbers 10 explains that this refers to the Priesthood and shows that it means YHVH gave them the responsibility to announce the arrival of new moons and annual Feast Days. It was not an individual matter for each Israelite to arrive at by himself; rather it was a collective matter to be proclaimed by an authoritative body. Nevertheless, there is more - most read right over the implications of who was to name, or proclaim, the days that would be considered Elohim's appointed festivals. The Priesthood was given the right to name, or proclaim, those days – in the same way that YHVH gave Adam the authority to name, or designate the animals He had created. YHVH gave the Priesthood guidelines and principles by which they were to proclaim those days, but He did not spell out every single detail. He gave them the principles with which they had to make judgments. We read in the first part of Psalm 103: 7, ***'He made known His ways to Moses.'*** We read further in Psalms 147: 19, ***'He declares His words to Jacob, His statutes and His ordinances to Israel.'*** This is talking about Israel, before the nation Israel split in two and were taken into captivity, because of idolatry.

It is important to notice the difference between the weekly Sabbath and the annual festivals that Elohim gave mankind to keep. YHVH did not tell the Priesthood that they were responsible to name or proclaim the weekly Sabbath. Elohim Himself had proclaimed the weekly Sabbath at the end of the creation week. Mankind was simply told to “remember” and keep set-apart the time that Elohim Himself had previously designated. The annual festivals were different, as we saw in Leviticus 23 verses 2 & 4. While each individual could simply remember to observe the seventh day of the week, this was not possible with the annual festivals. Their exact timing would vary somewhat from year to year, regulated by the principles that YHVH gave Moses in Leviticus 23 and elsewhere. So we see that while the weekly Sabbath is to be remembered by each of us as individuals, the annual festivals are to be proclaimed by an authoritative body, each year, with the only proviso being that it should be in the seasons appointed for them. They were never intended to be an individual matter.

The Hebrew calendar uses 29 days, 12 hours and 793 parts out of 1080 parts (which an hour contains), as the mean time which elapses between one conjunction and the next, or the duration of the lunar month. This works out to 29.53059 days. According to the 15th edition of Encyclopedia Britannica, modern astronomers using satellites and computers have come up with the figure 29.530589 – one-one millionth of a day difference. How did the Hebrew calendar come to use such an accurate figure for the average length of the month? Some argue that the Jews adopted this information from Babylonian astronomers. However, there is a problem with their theory, since the figure used by the Greeks, Babylonians and Egyptians was not as accurate as that used by the Jews. If we accept that Israel of old borrowed the number from one of their neighbors, then why did they modify it? How did they know to modify it correctly, making it more precise than the one used by anyone else? How could an ancient Israelite mathematician arrive at a more precise figure than his contemporaries did? For the answer we need to turn to Exodus 31: 1 -11, where we see that Elohim’s Set-apart Spirit empowered two men, Bezalel and Aholiab, to have special understanding and knowledge to make the items needed for the tabernacle. Could His Set-apart Spirit not also lead someone to have the special ability for making these calculations to fix the calendar? Clearly, someone did make a calculation that remained unsurpassed until the time when the United States put the first man on the moon.

Nevertheless, those who are adamant to determine their own Feast Day calendars, because they assert that when Hillel II corrupted the *‘Scriptural calendar’* during the year 358 – 359 CE when he helped institute a fixed calendar, known today as the Hebrew calendar, should not forget that at that time he was a member of the Sanhedrin. It was according to Scriptures⁴⁶ his right to determine the timing of the Feast Days of Elohim. Whether we like it or not, the Hebrew calendar is for that reason the only legitimate Scriptural calendar, today. The ruling of Hillel II will remain in force until such time as a new Sanhedrin is re-established in Jerusalem. Many of the ‘calendar experts’ insist that the Jewish method whereby the conjunctions or eclipses are used to calculate the length from one new moon to another is not Scriptural. However, we read in Genesis 1: 14 that both the sun and the moon are for signs and seasons.

The Hebrew word for sign is ‘ot’, a word often used to refer to remarkable and dramatic signs. It is used in Exodus 4: 8 – 9, to explain the wonders that YHVH performed in ancient Egypt. Even today, there are not many signs that are more dramatic than solar and lunar eclipses - I recall a few years ago how many people at the University where I worked, bought special glasses to view a solar eclipse. These signs provide the basis of a calculated Hebrew calendar in use today. According to Genesis 1: 14 in the New American Standard Bible, the sun and the moon were for **‘seasons, and for days and years’**. In the Jewish Publication Society (JPS) version of the Tanach, the word ‘seasons’ is referred to as **‘appointed times’** – which comes from the Hebrew word ‘mo’ed’. This same word is used in Psalm 104: 19, where we see that YHVH appointed the moon for seasons (‘mo’ed’). The phase of the moon determines the progression of the month. The Feast Days of YHVH are either linked to the new moon at the beginning of the month or at the full moon in the middle of the month. The correct way of intercalating the year according to the Hebrew method in the Scriptures, is by placing Passover on or after the Spring Equinox⁴⁷. This is established by the literal meaning of Exodus 34: 22 which demands that the intercalation of the Set-apart Days, rather than the whole year be regulated by the equinoxes (‘tekufah’ in Hebrew). In regard to barley, it is important to understand that the command to offer first-fruits on the day after the first annual Sabbath or day of rest, the First Day of Unleavened Bread (or the high day Sabbath, which occurred on the day after Yahshua’s impalement and burial in John 19: 31). Many believers have been misled to believe that this offering was of ‘ripe grain’ rather than of ‘green ears’. It is for this reason that some who determine their own calendar, sometimes keep the Feast of Tabernacles a month late, with the Last Great Day falling as late as the 4th of November. This faulty intercalation system is nothing other than the practice that Jeroboam instituted to cause Israel to keep the Feast of Tabernacles in the eighth month and be taken into captivity because of this apostasy.

⁴⁶ As per Deuteronomy 17: 8 – 12; Numbers 10: 8 & 10; Leviticus 23: 2 – 4; and Malachi 2: 4 – 7.

⁴⁷ The Feast Days of YHVH are always considered with the land of Israel in mind and are observed as seen by people living in the northern hemisphere.

Is it important for us, at this time, to know how the Jews intercalate the Hebrew calendar? I do not believe so. Scriptures tell us that the Jews have the oracles, and for me that is enough. They are Elohim's lawgiver, meaning they have the truth or words of Elohim, regarding the Sabbaths, Kosher Laws and the Hebrew language, even if some of them did not believe. I only need to follow the Scriptures and do not have to be overly concerned with the interpretation of external sources, as to how Elohim should be worshipped. We read in Jeremiah 10 which is specifically addressing us as the lost ten tribes of Israel, saying in verses 1 & 2: **'Hear the word which YHVH speaks to you, O house of Israel. (2) Thus says YHVH, "Do not learn the way of the nations, And do not be terrified by the signs of the heavens Although the nations are terrified by them."**' We need only follow the word of Elohim and forget the things that scare the gentiles. The sun and moon were given to us for signs and seasons; we use the moon as well as the green ears of barley in Israel to confirm the calendar as calculated by our Jewish brothers, and not to determine our own calendar. They are according to the Scriptures responsible to determine the calendar and if it is not totally correct at this time, it is sure to be corrected by Yahshua at His return.

We as Nazarene Israelites who follow the perfect example set for us by Yahshua our Messiah, need to determine which calendar He followed, when He was on earth. The year of Yahshua's impalement and therefore also the Passover, can be confirmed by correlating the prophecy of Daniel 9 with the occurrence described in Ezra 7. Daniel explained that there would be a time period of 70 'weeks' that is to say 490 prophetic days. We are also told that 69 of these 'weeks', i.e. 483 years would run from the time of the decree to rebuilt Jerusalem until the Messiah's appearance. This decree of King Artaxerxes that commences the count of the prophetic 'weeks' is recorded in Ezra 7. Ezra arrived in Jerusalem with the decree in the summer of 457 BCE. Adding 483 years to 457 BCE, brings us to 27 CE. This is the year during which Yahshua was immersed. Yahshua's ministry began at the time when John the Immerser came to an end. Yahshua was about 30 years of age when He was immersed. Most researchers agree that His ministry lasted for 3½ years. He started His ministry in the fall of 27 CE and was impaled in the spring of 31 CE. We know that Yahshua was impaled on the 4th day of the week and resurrected three days and three nights later, at the end of the weekly Sabbath. This means that the Passover of 31 CE, the scripturally established time of His impalement, had to occur on the fourth day of the week. (For interest sake: Yahshua was cut off in the middle of the week, or after a ministry of only 3½ years. It is also believed that He will cut the 7 year period of the Great Tribulation (short) in half, at His return; thereby accounting for the difference of one week (7 years) between the 69 and 70 'weeks' prophesied in Daniel 9.)

Both the British and U.S. Naval Observatories confirm that, that particular Passover occurred on the fourth day of the week (or Wednesday) that year. This agrees with the prophecy in Daniel 9: 27, which predicted that Yahshua would be cut off in the middle of the week. He was in the grave for three full days and three full nights according to His claim in Matthew 12: 40 and as witnessed of His resurrection in Matthew 28: 1 – 6. Titus a Roman general overpowered Jerusalem on the 7th of September 70 CE. His soldiers burned the Temple against his orders, with the result that the gold in the Temple melted down into the temple stones. It took another seven months to remove the melted gold from the destroyed Temple building, bringing us to the about the same time in 71 CE, when Yahshua was impaled 40 years earlier. Titus returned to Rome in the spring of 71 CE. Yahshua predicted the destruction of the Temple in Matthew 24: 1 & 2, and added in Matthew 24: 34, saying: **"Truly I say to you, this generation will not pass away until all these things take place."** In Scriptural times a generation was said to be 40 years as may be read from Psalm 95: 10 and Hebrews 3: 9 – 10; from the spring of 31 CE to spring of 71 CE is exactly 40 years, which is in total agreement with what Yahshua said.

Yahshua kept the Feast Days on the same days that the Jews of His day kept it, except for the Passover, which He kept in the night part of the fourteenth of Aviv. When studying the four gospels, it becomes clear that Yahshua kept all the other Feast Days including Chanukah (see John 10: 22), according to the Hebrew calendar. Yahshua only made one correction to the Hebrew calendar, and since He is our example of how to follow the way of Elohim, we do as He did. I have been asked by a few, how one would watch for the real New Moon, which any meteorologist will tell you is a complete dark moon, as may be seen on calendars, showing the four phases of the moon. Nowhere in the Scriptures are we told that people watched for the new moon, however, my reply to such a question is usually another question, i.e. How do you watch for the crescent moon? Followed by: *'I watch for a new moon exactly the same way that you watch for the crescent moon - I watch for the (opposite) crescent of the outgoing moon, knowing that the night when it disappeared, it is the new (or dark) moon.'* According to the Hebrew calendar the very next day will be the New Month, unless a postponement is necessary. It is this very same calendar that the current state of Israel, consisting of millions of citizens, use to 'run' the nation by: they do not only organize an assembly or congregation of a few hundred members by every crescent moon, (where the equinoxes are not even considered) as some do.

The moon is very important to YHVH, as see from Psalm 19: 1 - 6, **'The heavens are telling of the glory of Elohim; and there expanse is declaring the work of His hands. (2) Day to day pours forth speech, and**

night to night reveals knowledge. (3) **There is no speech, nor are there words; their voice is not heard.** (4) **Their line has gone out through all the earth, and their utterances to the end of the world. In them He has placed a tent for the sun,** (5) **Which is as a bridegroom coming out of his chamber** (talking about Yahshua, the bridegroom coming back for His bride, His ecclesia of called out believers on Yom Teruah, one day!); **it rejoices as a strong man to run his course.** (6) **Its rising is from one end of the heavens, and its circuit to the other end of them; and there is nothing hidden from its heat.'** But, the sun is equally important.

11.3 Are like-minded believers descendants of the Waldenses?

Many of the modern day Sabbath keepers insist that they are descendants of the Waldenses⁴⁸. Apparently the Waldenses were converts of the apostles and kept their faith until the nineteenth century. The Waldenses were also known as Puritans, Kettlers, Circumcised, and Abigenses. They did not observe the holidays propagated by the Catholic Church, but kept the Passover and the Feast of Tabernacles. One of their Passover songs reflect their beliefs about the Catholic holidays, as follows:

**'All pageantry from the Bible Word
Most certainly arrives from Italy.
Of this truth we bear witness, hearts bestirred,
As far as Rome itself, the Pope's city.**

**Just ask the Pope! He shall himself confess
His celebrations do not come from G-d,
The Jewish statutes G-d alone will bless,
Where Popes unholy refuse to trod.'**

If they are truly descendants of the Waldenses, as some claim, why do they have to determine their own calendar by watching for the crescent moon like the Moslems do? Why do they not follow the Jewish calendar like the Waldenses apparently did? We see clearly according to Zechariah 12: 7, that: **'YHVH also will save the tents of Judah first in order that the glory of the house of David and the glory of the inhabitants of Jerusalem may not be magnified above Judah.'** It is true that Yahshua our Messiah is the door and that all who want to enter the Kingdom of Elohim will have to go through Him. We read Yahshua's own words in this regard in John 10: 9, as follows: **'I am the door; if anyone enters through Me, he shall be saved, and shall go in and out, and find pasture.'** In addition we read in Philippians 2: 9 - 11, **'Therefore also Elohim highly exalted Him** (meaning Yahshua), **and bestowed on Him the name which is above every name,** (10) **that at the name of Yahshua EVERY KNEE SHOULD BOW, of those who are in heaven, and on earth and under the earth,** (11) **and that every tongue should confess that Yahshua Messiah is Master** (MarYah – meaning YHVH in Aramaic), **to the glory of Elohim the Father.'**

What about our Jewish brothers; when will they be saved? We have already seen the answer in Romans 11: 26, i.e. after all those of us whom YHVH is calling at this time have come in. The timing of this blessed event will be as explained in Zechariah 12: 10, on the Yom Teruah (Rosh Hashana) one day soon. This will be a new age for the world, when Messiah will return to rule us from Jerusalem, for the next thousand years. Jews, who will be assembled in the Synagogue on that day, will see Yahshua's hands, like His disciple Thomas did after His resurrection and exclaimed: **"My Master and my Elohim!"** There is no doubt in my mind that YHVH will at that time save our Jewish brothers as part of all the first fruits consisting of both houses of Israel who will then rule under Yahshua as kings and priests. Israel.

In conclusion, we read Rav Shaul's admonishing words in Hebrews 5: 12, about those who are overly concerned about amongst other, such things as which calendar to follow (whilst Yahshua Himself acknowledged⁴⁹ the one used by the Jews), as follows: **'For though by this time you ought to be teachers, you have need again for someone to teach you the elementary principles of the oracles of Elohim, and you have come to need milk and not solid food.'**

⁴⁸ The information in this paragraph as well as the song is quoted from a book by Richard and Melody Drake, entitled **'Armageddon and the International Sunday**

⁴⁹In Matthew 23: 2 & 3.

Chapter 12 - Do you believe in Yahshua our Jewish Messiah?

We believe in a Savior called Yahshua the Messiah, who is according to Colossians 1: 15 and other Scriptures, the visible image of the invisible Elohim. As Nazarenes, we may be defined as Jews who believe that Yahshua is the Messiah who came to save the people that He created (as the word of Elohim), from their sin. In fact we are no different to the original believers in Yahshua, who were almost all Jews. As mentioned before, the original followers of Yahshua were called a Sect of the Pharisees, known as the Nazarenes, as is recorded in Acts 24: 5, 14 & 15, in this way: ***“For we have found this man a real pest and a fellow who stirs up dissension among all the Jews throughout the world, and a ringleader of the sect of the Nazarenes. (14) But this I admit to you, that according to the Way which they call a sect I do serve the Elohim of our fathers, believing everything that is in accordance with the Law, and that is written in the Prophets; (15) having a hope in Elohim, which these man cherish themselves, that there shall certainly be a resurrection of both the righteous and the wicked.”***

We read in Acts 8: 18 - 20 about the beginning of another religion by Simon Magus a person who wanted to buy the Set-apart Spirit from the apostle Peter, as follows: ***‘Now when Simon saw that the Spirit was bestowed through the laying on of the apostles’ hands, he offered them money, (19) saying, “Give this authority to me as well, so that everyone on whom I lay my hands may receive the Set-apart Spirit.” (20) ‘But Peter said to him, “May your silver perish with you, because you thought you could obtain the gift of Elohim with money!’*** Simon Magus is the father of a major counterfeit religion. The movement which Yahshua continued, based on the congregation that started in the wilderness, is still composed of a small group of people who keep the commandments of Elohim and have faith in Him (Yahshua). However, most major religions, including Christianity has grown to include every tribe and nation on the earth. The Christian faith has crossed over every cultural line and social barrier. Within the Christian faith, there are to be no ethnic divisions or racial walls. The Christians believe in a Christ who looks more like your average Westerner and to them he is everything but a Jew. He is portrayed as having long blond hair, with a refined effeminate little nose. Christianity sets their savior Jesus against Judaism. But the anti-Semitic Jesus is not the Scriptural Yahshua. The Messiah who is the center of our Nazarene faith was and is Yahshua, a Jew by birth.

He was born of a Jewish mother, into a Jewish family. Like all Jewish sons, He was circumcised on the eighth day. In keeping with Jewish tradition, He was given His Hebrew name on the same day on which He was circumcised. He was named Yahshua: Yahshua means ‘Salvation’; He was named Salvation, because as it says in Matthew 1: 21 ***“for it is He who will save His people from their sins.”*** His people are the descendants of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob: the Israelites. We know that the Israelites consist of 12 tribes, one of which is Judah, known as the Jews. Yahshua was raised as a Jew within an Orthodox Jewish community. In accordance with Jewish tradition, He probably had His first hair cut when He was 3 years old. Nazareth of His day was a thoroughly Jewish village (but I am told that today it has become an Arab town and it is dangerous for Jews and Christians to enter it). Yahshua kept the festivals and the Sabbath, given in Leviticus 23. He ate only kosher foods, He ate unleavened bread during the Passover season and he fasted on the Day of Atonement.

After His immersion at around age 30, He became a Torah teacher. He taught His Jewish disciples and other people from the Tanach (an acronym for the Torah, Prophets, and Writings), known as the Old Covenant to Christians. His disciples called Him teacher or Rabbi in Hebrew. A first century Rabbi was not like an ordained minister or a clergyman of today. First century Rabbis were not on the payroll of a synagogue, instead they practiced a trade to support their own teaching ministries. For example, Rav Shaul (also known as Paul) chose to be a tent maker rather than to accept donations from his students (or disciples). Other teachers (or Rabbis) like Yahshua, gave themselves full time to the work of studying and teaching their disciples about the coming Kingdom of Elohim. Such Rabbis relied on donations of the community and his students – we read this in Luke 8: 3, as follows: ***‘and Joanna the wife of Chuza, Herod’s steward, and Susanna, and many others who were contributing to their support out of their private means.’***

Being Jewish, Yahshua taught in local synagogues, as may be read from Luke 4: 16, as follows: ***‘And He came to Nazareth, where He had been brought up; and as was His custom, He entered the synagogue on the Sabbath and stood up and read.’*** Most of Yahshua’s ministry was spent traveling between Galilee and Jerusalem. We see in the first four books of the Renewed Covenant known as the Gospel or Good News that Yahshua taught in the Temple courts during the Festivals. The Rabbi-Disciple model or method of teaching the Torah and the knowledge of Elohim from one generation to the next. was instituted by Moses when he taught Joshua. The teachers of each generation were delegated to raise-up disciples and future teachers for the next generation. Yahshua was dedicated to teaching the Torah or teachings of Elohim; He explained the Torah in practical terms and conveyed the knowledge of Elohim to future generations. Although Yahshua’s interpretation of Torah was at times at odds with other Rabbis of His day, He never did away with the Torah teachings of Elohim.

Yahshua compared himself to a shepherd and Israel to His sheep. We know that where He said that in John 10 from verse 11 on, He was essentially claiming and understood to be saying, to be one with the Father (see verse 30). We know from Psalm 23 that king David wrote in verse 1 that: ***‘YHVH is my shepherd’***. Yahshua was claiming to be the ***‘good shepherd’***, but also saying in verses 17 & 18 of John 10, that no one is responsible for His death (neither the Jews nor the Gentiles took away His life), as follows: ***“For this reason the Father loves Me, because I lay down My life that I may take it again. No one has taken it away from Me, but I lay it down on My own initiative. I have authority to lay it down, and I have authority to take it up again. (18) This commandment I received from my Father.”*** As He specified in verse 11: ***“the good shepherd lays down His life for the sheep.”***

The job functions of a first century Rabbi included raising-up disciples; be careful in his judgments and interpretation of Torah; and building a fence around Torah.

1. A Rabbi was to pass his teachings to his students, which were known as his disciples Without doing this, the knowledge of righteousness would disappear within a short time. The Rabbi raised-up disciples who would later become teachers, to immerse and teach new believers or disciples to observe all that their Master taught and commanded them. This ensured that there will always be people who could teach new generations, and that the Torah would not be lost. Yahshua raised-up many disciples during His ministry of three and a half years. He raised-up the original twelve disciples and many others who were immersed by the apostles after His resurrection and ascension to heaven. This is also the commission that Yahshua gave His disciples after His resurrection in Matthew 28: 18 – 20: ***‘And Yahshua came up and spoke to them, saying, “All authority has been given to Me in heaven and on earth. (19) Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations, immersing them in the name of the Father and the Son and the Set-apart Spirit, (20) teaching them to observe all that I commanded you; and lo I am with you always, even to the end of the age.”’***
2. A Rabbi had to be very careful when giving a judgment regarding Torah, or when he interpreted any section of the Scriptures. In Yahshua’s circumstances He had to be extremely careful when interpreting Torah, especially when it came to healing the sick on the Sabbath. We see an example of this in Luke 6: 6 – 11, as follows: ***‘And it came about on another Sabbath that He entered the synagogue and was teaching; and there was a man there whose right hand was withered. (7) And the scribes and the Pharisees were watching Him closely, to see if He healed on the Sabbath, in order that they might find reason to accuse Him. (8) But He knew what they were thinking, and He said to the man with the withered hand, “Rise and come forward!” And he rose and came forward. (9) And Yahshua said to them, “I ask you, is it lawful on the Sabbath to do good, or to do harm, to save a life, or to destroy it?” (10) And after looking around at them all, He said to him, “Stretch out your hand!” And he did so; and his hand was restored. (11) But they themselves were filled with rage, and discussed together what they might do to Yahshua.’***
3. A Rabbi had to erect a ‘fence’ around the Torah in order to protect his disciples from breaking the commandments, as well as to protect the Torah. An example of this may be found in Matthew 5: 27 & 28, where Yahshua said: ***“You have heard that it was said, ‘YOU SHALL NOT COMMIT ADULTERY’; but I say to you, that everyone who looks on a woman to lust for her has committed adultery with her already in his heart.”*** As people who teach fellow disciples today, we also teach, that men should never be alone with a woman that is not their wife – even if it is to prevent people from spreading falsehoods about them. A Rabbi was never to give the impression that he was doing away with the Torah teachings of YHVH our Elohim. We also know that Yahshua protected the Torah by stating in Matthew 5: 17 -18: ***“Do not think that I came to abolish the Law or the Prophets; I did not come to abolish, but to fulfill (or make it more binding). (18) For truly I say to you, until heaven and earth pass away, not the smallest letter or stroke shall pass away from the Law, until all is accomplished.”***
4. From the examples mentioned here, it is clear that Yahshua was fully engaged in His work as a first century Rabbi. Like the Rabbis before Him, Yahshua used parables to teach His disciples. However, we know that even though Yahshua’s method of teaching was similar to His first century contemporaries, He was markedly different from them in the following ways:
 - (a) Yahshua taught in His own name, and not like the other Rabbis of His day did. They taught in the name of their teachers and predecessors in order to establish the authority of their teachings. He called upon His Father to confirm His teachings. We see in Matthew 5: 21 & 22 that Yahshua merely said: ***“You have heard that the ancients were told, ‘YOU SHALL NOT COMMIT MURDER’ and ‘Whoever commits murder shall be liable to the court.’ (22) “But I***

say to you that everyone who is angry with his brother shall be guilty before the court; and whoever shall say to his brother, 'Raca,' shall be guilty before the supreme court; and whoever shall say, 'You fool,' shall be guilty enough to go into the fiery hell." The fact that Yahshua did not invoke other Rabbis before Him showed that He taught with ultimate authority. We read accordingly in Matthew 7: 28 & 29 as follows: **'The result was that when Yahshua had finished these words, the multitudes were amazed at His teachings; (29) for He was teaching them as one having authority, and not as their scribes.'**

- (b) Yahshua's message was primarily focused on the coming Kingdom of Elohim. Even though other Rabbis did discuss the Kingdom of Heaven, Yahshua came proclaiming it, as may be seen in Mark 1: 14 & 15.
- (c) Yahshua's teachings were usually accompanied by miracles which validated his claim to be one with the Father. Instead of saying, be healed, Yahshua at times said as in Matthew 9: 2 & 3: **'And behold, they were bringing to Him a paralytic, lying on a bed; and Yahshua seeing their faith said to the paralytic, "Take courage, My son, your sins are forgiven."** (3) **And behold, some of the scribes said to themselves, "This fellow blasphemes."** They said this because they knew that only YHVH, and not any man, is able to forgive sins. Miracles were the norm of Yahshua's ministry.

After immersion and the laying-on of hands, a new believer receives a portion of the Set-apart Spirit, but that is only the beginning of his/her walk with Messiah. From then on, the believer is required to grow in grace and knowledge as we are told in 2 Peter 3: 18, **'but grow in grace and knowledge of our Master and Savior Yahshua Messiah. To Him be the glory, both now and the day to eternity. Amen.'** New believers grow in knowledge by getting regular teachings from the teacher who immersed them. We read an example of what those who were recently immersed should do in Acts 2: 42, in this way: **'And they (the new believers) were continually devoting themselves to the apostles' teaching and to fellowship, to the breaking of bread and prayer.'** After having spent a number of years in the truth Yahshua expects us, to like His original disciples become teachers. He expects us to become teachers, in order to ensure that His ecclesia will continue, until He returns one day.

To get back to the question at the beginning, what does it mean to believe in Yahshua? Basically it means that we should do as He taught, whilst He was on earth. We read His warning regarding this from Luke 6: 46, **"And why do you call Me, 'Master, Master,' and do not do what I say?"**

12.1 Examples of our fathers in the faith:

Having faith means more than believing that YHVH our Elohim exists, it also means believing that He is involved in our lives, as we are told in Hebrews 11: 6, in this way: **'And without faith it is impossible to please Him, for he who comes to Elohim must believe that He is, and that He is a rewarder of those who seek Him.'** Similar to the ancient nation of Israel who was on their way to the Promised Land, so are we on our way to the Kingdom of Elohim. However, the Israelites' journey through the wilderness was a prime example of how we should not do it. They lacked faith despite the many miracles on the way. We are reminded about their lack of faith in Hebrews 3: 19, as follows: **'And so we see that they were not able to enter because of unbelief.'** The warning to us is clear; without faith we cannot inherit the Kingdom of Elohim, as we read from verses 1 & 2 of Hebrews 4, **'Therefore, let us fear lest, while a promise remains of entering His rest, any one of you should seem to have come short of it. For indeed we have had good news preached to us, just as they also; but the word they heard did not profit them, because it was not united by faith in those who heard.'**

The biggest mistake that the ancient Israelites made was when they were about to enter the Promised Land, and their faith in Elohim failed them. Moses sent twelve spies into the Promised Land and the Israelites were waiting for them to return. Each of the spies was a leader of his respective tribe. Upon their return the spies testified that the land was very lush and fruitful, but, they also reported that there were major obstacles to overcome before the nation could settle in the Promised Land. For example they saw that the inhabitants of the land were very strong and that the cities were large and very well protected. They also saw the descendants of Anak who were giants as well as the Hittites, Jebusites and the Amorites living in the hill country, and the Canaanites living by the sea and by the side of the Jordan (Numbers 13: 28 & 29). Ten of the twelve spies gave bad reports about the land (Numbers 13: 32), and only two spies, namely Joshua from the tribe of Ephraim and Caleb from the tribe of Judah, gave good reports. Caleb was certain that the Israelites will easily overcome the obstacles as we read from Numbers 13: 30, **'Then Caleb quieted the people before Moses, and said, "We should take possession of it, for we shall surely overcome it."** The Israelites immediately started grumbling against Moses and Aaron, but also against Elohim. They chose

to believe the bad reports and based their decision on what they heard and as a result their faith in YHVH disappeared.

As human beings, we also base most of our decisions on what we hear and see. In most instances what we hear and see tells us that whatever we are trying to do is impossible. Because we are physical, when we 'spy out' our surroundings, we see, smell, hear, taste and feel only the physical reality. The problem is that we normally understand things through our five senses and totally neglect our sixth sense, namely faith (which is spiritual). The only way to remedy this problem is to strengthen our faith. But how do we do that? As much as we study the Scriptures to discover what not to do, should we strengthen our faith by studying the Scriptures to find examples of people who had faith in Elohim.

There are many examples of believers who had faith in Elohim and His promises in the Scriptures and we should review these examples on a regular basis, in order to strengthen our faith. . We read fittingly from Romans 10: 17, **'So faith comes from hearing and hearing by the word of Messiah.'**

A typical example of people with living faith in the Scriptures, comes from the sixth chapter of the book of Daniel. In this chapter we read the account where Daniel's fellow government officials in king Darius' kingdom, became jealous of Daniel. The reason for his jealousy was that Daniel possessed an extraordinary spirit, and the king planned to appoint him over the entire kingdom. Daniel's colleagues tricked the king into signing a decree which outlawed anyone from making a petition to any man or god besides king Darius; else such a person would be thrown into the lion's den. This was a severe test for Daniel, as it was his habit to pray to YHVH three times a day, whilst kneeling by an open window facing Jerusalem. This decree meant that it became unlawful for Daniel to worship YHVH in prayer. Even so, this did not stop Daniel from praying to YHVH as may be read in the second part of Daniel 6: 10: **'and he continued kneeling on his knees three times a day, praying and giving thanks before his Elohim, as he had been doing previously.'** His colleagues caught him praying and reported him to the king. The king was deeply distressed and he tried saving Daniel. However, the decree was in accordance with the law of the Medes and Persians, meaning that no injunction or statute which the king established may be changed, so Daniel was duly thrown into the lion's den. In addition, the den was sealed by a stone, which the king sealed with his signet ring. However, we see that when the king entered his palace he started fasting for his servant Daniel. Later when he could not fall asleep, he went to the lion's den. We read what happened next from verse 20 of Daniel 6, **'And when he (the king) had come near the den to Daniel, he cried out with a troubled voice. The king spoke and said to Daniel, "Daniel, servant of the living Elohim, has your Elohim, whom you constantly serve, been able to deliver you from the lions?"'**

We read about the end result of Daniel's faith, from verses 21 - 23 of Daniel 6, as follows: **'Then Daniel spoke to the king, "O king, live forever! (22) My Elohim sent His angel and shut the lions' mouths, and they have not harmed me, inasmuch as I was found innocent before Him; and also toward you, O king, I have committed no crime." (23) Then the king was very pleased and gave orders for Daniel to be taken up out of the den, and no injury whatever was found on him, because he had trusted in his Elohim.'** Daniel's faith in Elohim saved his life. We read further about the faith that saved Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego, Daniel's three friends, on a previous occasion. We read from Daniel 3, that king Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon made an image of gold of himself. Next he assembled all the rulers of the land and proclaimed that as soon as the people living in the land hear the sound of the horn, flute, lyre, psaltery, bagpipe, and all kinds of music, they had to fall down and worship the image of the king. However, the decree also stated that whosoever, does not worship the image will be thrown into a furnace of blazing fire.

We see as the account unfolds that Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego refuse to worship the image that the king made and in verse 19 - 21 of Daniel 3 we see that the king became furious, **'Then Nebuchadnezzar was filled with wrath, his facial expression was altered toward Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego. He answered by giving orders to heat the furnace seven times more than it was usually heated. (20) And he commanded certain valiant warriors who were in his army to tie up Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego, in order to cast them into the furnace of blazing fire. (21) Then these men were tied up in their trousers, their coats, their caps and their clothes, and were cast into the midst of the furnace of blazing fire.'** We are told that because the fire was so extremely hot, it slew the men who threw Shadrach Meshach and Abednego into the fire. Even so, Daniel's three friends fell into the midst of the furnace, still tied up. The king was astounded when he saw four men walking about in the fire and according to him the fourth had the appearance of **'a son of the gods!'** When the king ordered the three men to come out of the fire, he and those with him saw that the fire did not harm the three men at all. In verse 28 of Daniel we see Nebuchadnezzar's response, as follows: **'Nebuchadnezzar responded and said, "Blessed be the Elohim of Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego, who has sent His angel and delivered His servants who put their trust in Him, violating the king's command, and yielding up their bodies so as not to serve or worship any god except their own Elohim."'**

Again we see that the faith of these men saved their lives. What is faith? We find the answer to this question in Hebrews 11: 1 – 3 ***‘Now faith is the assurance of things hoped for, the conviction of things not seen. For by it the men of old gained approval. By faith we understand that the worlds were prepared by the word of Elohim, so that what is seen was not made out of things which are visible.’*** In Malachi 4: 5 & 6 we read about Malachi’s prophesy about our work at the end of the age, as follows: ***“Behold I am going to send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and terrible day of YHVH. And he will restore the hearts of the fathers to their children, and the hearts of the children to their fathers, lest I come and smite the land with a curse.”*** This is essentially telling us of an end time work (in the spirit of Elijah), which will teach people before the great and terrible day of YHVH, that our El (Elohim) is Yah (YHVH) and also to restore the hearts (the faith) of the fathers (the fathers in the faith – Abraham, Isaac and Jacob - which is belief in Yahshua and Torah), to the children. O Yes, it is also telling fathers to love their children and become more involved in teaching them truth. It is incumbent upon us as a Nazarene fellowship to perform the job function given us by Malachi, lest YHVH will smite the land (of Israel) with utter destruction.

Let us at this point consider the faith of those fathers of ours (in the faith). We read about them in Hebrews 11: 8 -10, as follows: ***‘By faith Abraham, when he was called, obeyed by going out to a place which he was to receive for an inheritance; and he went out, not knowing where he was going. By faith he lived as an alien in the land of promise, as in a foreign land, dwelling in tents with Isaac and Jacob, fellow heirs of the same promise; for he was looking for the city which has foundations, whose architect and builder is Elohim.’*** This tells us that our fathers in the faith were fully aware of the coming Kingdom of Elohim. They believed in the Gospel of Elohim and believed that they will be part of it. My question is: Do we believe the Gospel of Elohim as preached by Yahshua? As mentioned earlier the Gospel that Yahshua preached is recoded for us in Mark 1: 14 & 15, and is about the coming Kingdom of Elohim.

Apart from believing the Gospel of Elohim, our father Abraham also knew about and believed in the saving work that Yahshua was going to do in what was the future for him. We read part of Yahshua’s answer to the Jews in John 8: 56 – 58, as follows: ***“Your father Abraham rejoiced to see My day, and he saw it and was glad.” ‘The Jews therefore said to Him, “You are not yet fifty years old, and have You seen Abraham?”’ ‘Yahshua said to them, “Truly, truly, I say to you, before Abraham was born, I am.”’*** We know that Yahshua was telling the Jews here that He was the Eternal (I am). He is using the same name used by YHVH to identify Himself to Moses in Exodus 3: 14 & 15. We also know that Abraham believed in the resurrection as may be read in Hebrews 11: 17 – 19: ***‘By faith Abraham when he was tested, offered up Isaac; and he who had received the promises was offering up his only begotten son; it was he to whom it was said, “In Isaac your descendants shall be called.” He considered that Elohim is able to raise men, even from the dead; from which he also received him back as a type.’*** As we have seen before Abraham knew that Yahshua was going to be impaled and resurrected in what was future to him, he received Isaac back as a type of Yahshua.

Lastly our father Abraham also obeyed YHVH as we see on Genesis 26: 5 ***“because Abraham obeyed Me and kept My charge, My commandments, My statutes and My laws.”*** Nevertheless, we see that Abraham and the other fathers in the faith have not received what was promised yet. This is recorded in Hebrews 11: 39 & 40, as follows: ***‘And all these, having gained approval through their faith, did not receive what was promised, because Elohim had provided something better for us, so that apart from us (the first fruits called during this age) they should not be made perfect.’***

To return to the faith of Abraham means that like him we believe in :-

- The coming Kingdom of Elohim and ultimately the New Jerusalem, when YHVH will come and tabernacle with us – He shall dwell among us and we shall be His people. This entails that we also believe in the first resurrection (*of those called as first fruits during this age to become kings and priests ruling under Yahshua during His Millennial rule and on into eternity*) and the second resurrection (*when those who never heard about Yahshua’s saving name, as well as the wicked are raised from the dead. The wicked and those who refuse to accept Yahshua as their Passover will be burned to become ashes under the feet of the righteous (as per Malachi 4: 3), whilst the rest will be saved as the second harvest or fruits into the Eternal Kingdom of YHVH our Elohim.*)
- Yahshua our Messiah – believing in both His saving name and what He taught His disciples whilst He was on earth.
- Obeying YHVH our Elohim, by keeping His teachings or Torah.

Chapter 13 - The great falling away.

From the commencement of Nazarene Judaism, evil forces aimed to destroy it and because of sustained attacks, the movement almost vanished by the fourth century. Even so, it never disappeared totally, as there have always been Torah observant individuals who believed in Yahshua the Messiah. The forces against us are the same forces that are against our Jewish brothers, namely anti-Semitism, which is in actual fact lawlessness. Rav Shaul in his address to the Ephesian elders said in Acts 20: 29 & 30, ***“I know that after my departure savage wolves will come in among you, not sparing the flock; (30) and from among your own selves men will arise, speaking perverse things, to draw the disciples after them.”*** In fact the great falling away is an essential part of the end time events that will proceed the return of Yahshua our Messiah, as we read from 2 Thessalonians 2: 1 – 3: ***‘Now we request you, brethren, with regard to the coming of our Master Yahshua Messiah, and our gathering together to Him. (2) that you may not be quickly shaken from your composure or be disturbed either by a spirit or a message or a letter as if from us, to the effect that the day of YHVH has come. (3) Let no one in any way deceive you, for it will not come unless the apostasy (falling away) comes first, and the man of lawlessness is revealed, the son of destruction.’***

We read about the great falling away, during the last days in both the Tanach and the Renewed Covenant. The falling away will be mainly due to deception, by the Priests in Israel. We read in Micah 3: 5 – 7: ***‘Thus says YHVH concerning the prophets Who lead my people astray; When they have something to bite with their teeth, They cry, “Peace,” But against him who puts nothing in their mouths, They declare holy war. (6) Therefore it will be night for you - without vision, And darkness for you – without divination. The sun will go down on the prophets, And the day will become dark over them. (7) The seers will be ashamed And the diviners will be embarrassed. Indeed they will all cover their mouths Because there is no answer from Elohim.’*** We might have an idea when the end is near, but only YHVH knows the exact time of the events that will soon overtake the world, as Yahshua indicated in Matthew 24: 36, as follows: ***“But of that day and hour no one knows, not even the angels of heaven, nor the Son, but the Father alone.”*** We have even in our time seen the embarrassment of many prophets who set dates about the return of Yahshua in the recent past – so the prophesy in Micah 3 has already come true in our time. If we want to rule under Yahshua in the Kingdom of Elohim, we need to remain loyal; we need to believe and study the word of YHVH and proclaim the coming Kingdom of Elohim. It is only by so doing that we will become kings and priests, as Yahshua confirmed in Matthew 24: 46 & 47, saying: ***“Blessed is that slave whom his master finds so doing when he comes. (47) Truly I say to you, that he will put him in charge of all his possessions.”***

In the Renewed Covenant we read about the great apostasy from Matthew 24: 10 - 12, Yahshua saying: ***‘And at that time many will fall away and will deliver up one another and hate one another. (11) And many false prophets will arise, and will mislead many. (12) And because of lawlessness is increased, most people’s love (for Torah truth) will grow cold.’*** After having been called, we need to bear fruit; we need to do our part in proclaiming the good news of the coming Kingdom of Elohim. In the parable of the seed in Luke 8: 15 – 18, Yahshua warns: ***“And the seed in the good soil, these are the ones who have heard the word in an honest and good heart, and hold it fast, and bear fruit with perseverance. (16) Now no one after lighting a lamp covers it over with a container, or put it under a bed; but he puts it on a lampstand, in order that those who come in may see the light. (17) For nothing is hidden that shall not become evident, nor anything secret that shall not be known and come to light. (18) Therefore take care how you listen; for whoever has, to him shall more be given, and whoever does not have, even what he thinks he has shall be taken away from him.”*** We also read about the great apostasy from 1 Timothy 4: 1 – 2, as follows: ***‘But the spirit explicitly says that in the latter times some will fall away from the faith, paying attention to deceitful spirits and doctrines of demons, (2) by means of hypocrisy of liars seared in their own conscience as with a branding iron.’*** Many of those whom YHVH has called in the past have left again, to follow people who contradict YHVH and Yahshua (the word of Elohim): People stopped believing in the Oneness of Elohim and others contradict the word of Elohim, denying that Judah is the Lawgiver of Elohim, as may be read from Psalm 60: 7. Others left because we are performing our function as watchmen (Nazarenes); writing warning sermons to warn believers against wrongdoing, impending troubles, and proclaiming the good news.

Our commission is to proclaim the coming Kingdom of Elohim, as Yahshua did immediately after His immersion and temptation by the Adversary. Ask yourself: Why am I here? Am I here to save my own skin, or am I here to do what Yahshua did, i.e. proclaiming the good news of the coming Kingdom of Elohim, despite the consequences? We do not proclaim the Kingdom of Elohim to anyone by moving into a secluded little town, living out the rest of our lives as hermits. That is much like we’ve read in Luke 8, about hiding our light under a bushel. We need to reflect the Kingdom of Elohim (be it in a limited and imperfect way) and do the work of believing in the One whom He has sent, here and now. We read Yahshua’s words in this regard from Matthew 16: 24 & 25, as follows: ***“If anyone wishes to come after Me, let him deny himself, and take up***

his cross, and follow Me. (25) For whoever wishes to save his life shall lose it; but whoever loses his life for My sake shall find it.” We also read from Luke 12: 31: **“But seek for His kingdom, and these things shall be added to you.”** When we are busy about our Father’s business, He will both protect us and provide in our every need.

Yes, life is going to become very hard in the near future, but we have the commission to keep telling people about the better world that is coming soon; we have to proclaim the Kingdom of Elohim to all the world, then the end will come (Matthew 24: 14). We do not go out on street corners and shout for people to repent, because we know according to John 6: 44, that YHVH does the calling. However, the internet is a very good tool to get the message of the coming Kingdom of Elohim out into the world. But we need sound doctrine, proven by at least two or three Scriptural witnesses to get Scriptural truth into the world. Only the naïve do not realize that the time to do the end time work is getting short. Soon there will be a famine of the word, when people will not hear the word of YHVH any longer, as we read from Amos 8: 11 – 12: **“Behold, days are coming,” declares YHVH Elohim, “When I will send a famine on the land, Not a famine for bread or a thirst for water, But rather for hearing the words of YHVH. (12) And people will stagger from sea to sea, And from north even to the east; they will go to and fro to seek the word of YHVH, But they will not find it.”**

We read from 1 Timothy 4: 1 that **‘some will fall away from the faith.’** What does it mean to fall away from the faith? Which faith? There is only one faith according to Ephesians 4: 5, which was once delivered to the saints – the called out ones (as per Jude 3). If we want to make it into the Kingdom of Elohim, we need to continue in that faith to the end as we read in Revelation 14: 12: **‘Here is the perseverance of the saints who keep the commandments of Elohim and their faith in Yahshua.’** Yes, Torah cannot be removed from faith as is confirmed in Psalm 119: 29 & 30, **‘Remove the false way from me, and graciously grant me thy Law (Torah). (30) I have chosen the faithful way; I have placed thine ordinances before me.’**

When Yahshua was on trial before Pilate, He answered in John 18: 37, **“You say correctly that I am a king. For this I have been born, and for this I have come into the world, to bear witness to the truth. Everyone who is of the truth hears My voice.** In verse 38 of John 18, Pilate asked: **“What is truth?”** The answer to Pilate’s question may be found in Psalm 119: 142, as follows: **“Thy righteousness is an everlasting righteousness, And Thy Law (Torah) is truth.”** In other words Yahshua came to bear witness to the Torah. Those who hear Torah, hear His voice. Yahshua furthermore stated in John 8: 31 & 32: **‘Yahshua therefore was saying to those Jews who had believed Him, “If you abide in My word, then you are truly disciples of Mine, (32) and you shall know the truth and the truth shall make you free.”’** Rav Shaul spoke in Romans 1: 25 about those who exchanged the truth for a lie. Yahshua came to bear witness to the truth, as much as Satan and his agents came to speak lies. We read from John 8: 44, Yahshua talking about Satan and his agents as follows: **“You are of your father the devil and you want to do the desires of your father. He was a murderer from the beginning, and does not stand in the truth, because there is no truth in him. Whenever he speaks a lie, he speaks from his own nature; for he is a liar, and the father of lies.”**

If Torah is truth, then what is Satan’s lie? His lie is simply that Torah has been done away with. As opposed to the true faith, once delivered to the saints (i.e. Nazarene Judaism – those who keep the Torah of Elohim and their faith in Yahshua), Christianity believe that their savior has done away with his father’s law. The faith of our father’s in the faith Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, was Yahuda-ism (Judaism) – those who praise/worship YAH (see Genesis 29: 35). Father Abraham kept the Torah of YHVH as is recorded in Genesis 26: 5, as follows: **‘because Abraham obeyed Me and kept My charge, My commandments, My statutes and My Laws.’** According to Yahshua’s own words in John 8: 56, Abraham also believed in Him, as follows: **‘Your Father Abraham rejoiced to see My day, and he saw it and was glad.’** Father Abraham did not only keep Torah, but he also believed in Yahshua, the salvation of YHVH, like we do today. According to the Psalms we know that king David also kept Torah (Psalm 119) and believed in Yahshua (see Psalm 110: 1 – 4).

Now that we know what it is to **‘fall away from the faith’**, let us continue to read about the great falling away, recorded in 2 Timothy 3: 1 – 7, as follows: **‘But realize this, that in the last days difficult times will come. (2) For men will be lovers of self, lovers of money, boastful, arrogant, revilers, disobedient to parents, ungrateful, unholy, (3) unloving, irreconcilable, malicious gossips, without self-control, brutal, haters of good, (4) treacherous, reckless, conceited, lovers of pleasure rather than lovers of Elohim; (5) holding to a form of godliness (faith or religion), although they have denied its power; and avoid such men as these. (6) For among them are those who enter into households and captivate weak woman weighed down with sins, led on by various impulses, (7) always learning and never able to come to the knowledge of truth.’** Rav Shaul writes to Timothy telling him that the great falling away has to do with Torah observance, by those who are always learning and never coming to the knowledge of the truth or Torah. This might well be that they are always looking for answers outside of Torah. I have seen books

written about Feast Days that run into hundreds of pages, by people who believe that YHVH took the Oracles away from our Jewish brothers, and gave it to them.

We read further in 2 Timothy 4: 3 – 4 , ***‘For the time will come when they will not endure sound doctrine; but wanting to have their ears tickled, they will accumulate for themselves teachers in accordance to their own desires; (4) and will turn away their ears from the truth, and will turn aside to myths (lies).’*** It is clear from these Scriptures that the great falling away has to do with the rejection of Torah. Rav Kepha also writes about the great falling away that will occur during the last days in 2 Peter 2: 1 & 2, as follows: ***‘But false prophets also arose among the people, just as there will also be false teachers among you, who will secretly introduce destructive heresies, even denying (contradicting) the Master who bought them, bringing swift destruction upon themselves. (2) And many will follow their sensuality, and because of them the way of truth will be maligned.’*** Nazarene Judaism is under attack of Lawlessness, but also anti-Semitism.

We are told in Revelation 18: 4 to come out of the Babylon of confusion – where people teach against Torah observance. Teaching believers to get out of only some of their pagan practices, is dishonest. I listened to a CD recording of a Christian minister about the many pagan symbols and practices found amongst their congregants. Even though this minister taught that the Xmas tree, wooden masks and animals made by the indigenous people of Africa, are pagan and should not be in our homes – he stressed at the beginning of the teaching, that the Torah was abolished by Yahshua, and their people need not keep it any longer. In addition he did not say anything about Xmas being wrong at all. I applaud the fact that Christians are waking up to truth, but must say that they are even now teaching Satan’s lies. It is agreed that milk is normally very good for us. But, when arsenic is added to the milk, it becomes lethal. In fact it is just as serious for us, as is a bit of untruth, in a teaching of Torah. Poison in milk may result in (physical) death, but a little bit of untruth could result in our spiritual demise known as the second death.

We need to take our calling very seriously, and make sure we keep on keeping on. We need to heed the warning in Hebrews 6: 4 - 6 ***‘For in the case of those who have once been enlightened and have tasted of the heavenly gift and have been made partakers of the Set-apart Spirit, (5) and have tasted the good word of Elohim and the powers of the age to come, (6) and then have fallen away, it is impossible to renew them again to repentance, since they again crucify to themselves the Son of Elohim, and put Him to open shame.*** Let’s get rid of all falsehood, and teach others the Torah truth found in the word of YHVH. Let us focus our efforts on proclaiming the good news of the coming Kingdom of Elohim into the entire world. Then our needs will be provided for, and the end shall come. Let us also remember that the only thing that we are able to take into the Kingdom of Elohim is a perfect character. The near future looks bleak, but fortunately we have Yahshua’s own promise in the last part of Matthew 24: 22, about the coming tribulation, stating: ***“but for the sake of the elect those days shall be cut short.”*** HalleluYah!

Bibliography and other sources of information.

I wish to thank the following for providing me with valuable information used in this book and in my spiritual edification over the past of 35 years:

1. **'New American Standard Bible' quoted throughout, unless otherwise indicated.**
2. **The Tribes by Yair Davidy (ISBN 965-90255-0-5).**
3. **'Judah's Sceptre and Joseph's Birthright' by J H Allen. Originally published 1902 19th Edition re-typeset A.D. 2000.**
4. **'A Concise Encyclopedia of Judaism' by Dan Cohn-Sherbok (ISBN 1-85168-176-0).**
5. **'Come out of her My people' by C J Koster.**
6. **'The Testimony of the Moon' by Shauna Manfredine. Lighted Way Publishing. www.lightedway.org**
7. **www.nephes.com**
8. **OvadYah Avrahami's webpage www.revelations.co.za**
9. **Trimm, James Dr. "Nazarene Judaism" (Hurst, Texas: Society for the Advancement of Nazarene Judaism (SANJ).**
10. **Chumney. Eddie. "What about Acts 15?" Hebraic Heritage Ministries International.**
11. **www.mechon-mamre.org/jewfaq/kashrut.htm Kashrut: Jewish Dietary Laws.**
12. **Some information researched over an extended period using the now defunct magazine, entitled: 'The Plain Truth.'**

This book is published on behalf of the Nazarene Israelite Two House Congregation of Port Elizabeth an Internet ministry based in Port Elizabeth South Africa. Postal Address: P O Box 15935, Emerald Hill. 6011. Port Elizabeth. South Africa.

The book was not written to criticize fellow believers in the Messiah, but to clear up many misconceptions and to convince like-minded believers to return in obedience to the Word of Elohim.

Additional study material is available on our web site and the annual Torah and Haftarah portions may be obtained on request, as e-books in A4 size.

Our web site is at: www.nazarene2house.weebly.com

<p>This book is for educational purposes only and is not to be sold.</p>

The biggest secret ever unveiled.

The same way as knowledge about a car that runs on air, is a threat to the Babylonian financial systems of the world – so is the knowledge about the narrow road given in this book, a threat to the finances of the many religions of the world. But even more so – because the world does not obey our Creator and indeed without the Set-apart Spirit cannot obey Him. Even if this knowledge is given to people; if they find it too incredible to believe, the god of this world, blinds the minds of the unbelieving (as per 2 Corinthians 4: 4).